



FRANCES BAARD DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

Review Of The Frances Baard District
Municipality Spatial Development Framework

Final Spatial Development Framework Report

June 2021

CONTACT US

TSHANI CONSULTING C.C.



9 Princes Road, Vincent, East London, 5217



Postnet Suite 98, Private Bag X9063, East London



043 722 1198



067 868 9309



086 435 7631



darshika@tshani.co.za

Table of Content

Table of Content.....	i	Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act 41 of 2003.....	21
List of Tables	iv	The Inter-governmental Relations Framework Act 13 of 2005.....	21
List of Plans	iv	The Environmental Conservation Act No. 73 of 1989	21
Glossary	v	The National Environmental Management Bio-Diversity Act No. 10 of 2004.....	21
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY	3	The National Heritage Resource Act No. 25 of 1999.....	22
CHAPTER ONE: INTRODUCTION.....	4	The National Environmental Management Act No. 107 of 1998 (NEMA).....	22
CHAPTER TWO: STATUS QUO	5	The National Water Act No. 36 of 1998.....	22
CHAPTER THREE: SWOT ANALYSIS AND KEY ISSUES	7	National Development Plan 2030	22
CHAPTER FOUR: STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK.....	8	National Spatial Development Framework, 2018.....	24
CHAPTER FIVE: SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK.....	9	The White Paper on Wise Land Use Spatial Planning and Land Use Management.....	27
SECTION E: LAND USE MANAGEMENT FRAMEWORK.....	9	Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act No, 16 of 2013	27
CHAPTER SIX: IMPLEMENTATION PLAN	10	Local Government – Back to Basics Strategy 2015.....	31
CHAPTER 01: INTRODUCTION.....	11	Integrated Service Delivery Model 2016.....	31
INTRODUCTION.....	12	1.G. Provincial Consideration	32
1.A. Background	12	Provincial Growth and Development Strategy	32
1.B. Project Phasing	13	The National Environmental Management Bio-Diversity Act No. 10 of 2004.....	33
1.C. Locality.....	13	Northern Cape Provincial Spatial Development Framework.....	33
Provincial Locality	13	1.H. Local Perspective	35
District Locality	14	Dikgatlong Spatial Development Framework.....	35
Local Municipal Locality	15	Magareng Spatial Development Framework.....	37
1.D. Report Structure.....	16	Sol Plaatjies Spatial Development Framework.....	39
1.E. Project Consultation & Advertising.....	17	Phokwane Spatial Development Framework	40
LEGAL FRAMEWORK.....	19	CHAPTER 2.....	42
1.F. National Consideration	20	2 A Socio Economic Framework.....	43
The Constitution of South Africa Act No. 108 of 1996.....	20	2 A.1 Demographic Assessment	43
The Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000	20	Age Structure	43
Promotion of Administrative Justice Act 3 of 2000	20	3A1.2 Population Group.....	43
		Gender Split.....	44
		Employment Status	44
		Individual Monthly Income.....	45

Education Level.....	45	3.B. Key Issues	83
Household Dynamics	45	Key Issues – Frances Baard District Municipality	83
Implications	46	Key Issues – Sol Plaatjes Local Municipality	85
2 A.2 Tourism Profile	47	Key Issues – Dikgatlong Local Municipality	86
2 A.3 District Health Analysis.....	47	Key Issues Magareng Local Municipality	87
2 A.4 Disaster Analysis.....	49	Key Issues – Phokwane Local Municipality	88
2 A.5 Status Quo Assessment: Basic Service Delivery	49	CHAPTER 04: STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK.....	90
2 A.6 Local Economic Development Local Economic Development	50	STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK.....	91
2 B. Social Facilities Assessment.....	52	4.A. Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 2013 Principles	91
2.B.1. Primary Schools	53	4.B. FBDM Guiding Principles.....	95
2.B.2. Secondary Schools	54	1. Development of Sustainable Human Settlements.....	95
2.B.3 Early Childhood Development	55	2. Ensuring a Sustainable and Functioning Environment	95
2.B.4 Libraries	56	1. Managing and Maintaining Safe and Accessible Infrastructure Provision	96
2.B.5 Clinics.....	57	2. Access to and Affordable Public Transportation and Accessible Linkages Between Settlements.....	96
2.B.6 Hospitals.....	58	3. Thriving economy which is well positioned within the province and within the country.....	97
2.B.7 Police Stations.....	59	4. Sustainable Rural Development	97
2.B.8 Place of Worship	60	5. “Smart City” and Information Technology	98
2.B.9 Overall	61	6. Effective Governance	98
2.C Built Environment Assessment	62	VISION.....	100
2.C.1. Urban Settlements.....	62	OBJECTIVES AND STRATEGIES.....	101
2.C.2. Ownership	64	SPATIAL SCENARIOS.....	102
2.C.2. Rural Settlements	65	4.C. Scenario 1: Uncontrolled development / Business as Usual	102
2.C.3 Spatial Analysis: Patterns and Trends.....	65	4.D. Scenario 2: Accelerated growth	102
2.C.4. Transportation.....	67	4.E. Scenario 3: Tempered Growth	102
2 D. Biophysical Assessment.....	69	4.F. Scenario 4: Optimistic Outlook.....	103
2.D.1. Vegetation	69	4.G. Preferred Scenario.....	103
2.D.2. Agriculture	71	4.H. Growth Projections.....	104
2.D.3. Mining	71	4.I. Conceptual Framework	105
2.D.4 Environmental Conservation Areas.....	72	SPATIAL STRUCTURING ELEMENTS.....	106
2.D.5 Institutional Development & Transformation Environmental Management	74	4.J. Nodes / Settlement Classification.....	106
CHAPTER 03: SWOT ANALYSIS AND KEY ISSUES	76	4.K. Corridors.....	109
SWOT ANALYSIS AND KEY ISSUES.....	77	1. Primary Existing Corridors.....	109
3.A. SWOT Analysis	77	2. Secondary Existing Corridors.....	109
SWOT Analysis - Sol Plaatjes Local Municipality and Dikgatlong Local Municipality.....	79	3. Future Development Corridor.....	109
SWOT Analysis – Magareng Local Municipality and Phokwane Local Municipality.....	81		

4.L. Urban / Settlement Edge	111	5.T. NSDF – North-western Transformation Corridor	144
4.M. Water bodies	116	5.U. Smart Growth	145
4.N. Gateways	116	5.V. How can the Smart City Concept be applied in the FBDM Context	145
4.O. Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs)	116	SOCIO ECONOMIC FRAMEWORK.....	147
4.P. Urban Revitalisation Areas Marginalized Townships	116	5.W. Tourism Framework.....	147
CHAPTER 05: SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK	117	Gong Gong Tourism Opportunity	150
SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK.....	118	Heritage Resources	151
BIOPHYSICAL FRAMEWORK.....	119	Township Tourism	151
5.A. Conservation areas.....	119	Promoting the Tourism Sector	151
5.B. Critical Biodiversity Areas.....	121	Tourism Initiatives.....	152
5.C. Climate Change	122	5.X. Economic Framework.....	154
5.D. Disaster Management.....	123	Renewable Energy	154
5.E. Water Courses	124	Agro-processing	154
5.F. Topography, Slopes & Visual Amenity	125	Knowledge Economy	154
5.G. Geology	125	Rural Economic Strategy.....	155
5.H. Vegetation.....	125	Small Town Revitalisation.....	156
5.I. Agriculture	128	Public Private Partnerships.....	157
5.J. Promoting Agriculture as an economic sector within FBDM	129	Mining Activity	157
5.K. Rural Development Focus Regions	129	5.Y. Social Amenities	161
5.L. Agri-Parks.....	131	5.Z. Governance Framework	161
BUILT ENVIRONMENT FRAMEWORK.....	135	5.AA. Financial Profile.....	163
5.M. Settlements	135	OVERALL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK.....	164
5.N. Movement and Transportation.....	137	CHAPTER 06:LAND USE MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES	166
5.O. Housing	138	LAND USE MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES	167
5.P. Growth Management Strategy	140	CHAPTER 07: IMPLMENTATION PLAN.....	178
5.Q. Densification	140	IMPLEMENTATION PLAN.....	179
5.R. Mixed use strategy.....	141	5.BB. Capital Expenditure Framework.....	196
5.S. Infrastructure Framework	142		
1. Green Infrastructure	142		
2. Broadband Connectivity	142		
3. Water/ Infrastructure.....	143		
4. Telecommunications.....	143		
5. Solid Waste Management	143		

List of Tables

Table 1: Project Phasing	13
Table 2: Frances Baard DM Municipal Composition	15
Table 2: Frances Baard DM Municipal Composition	Error! Bookmark not defined.
Table 4: Municipal Total Population	43
Table 5: Northern Cape Total Population.....	43
Table 6: Gender Split Comparison	44
Table 4: Frances Baard DM SWOT Analysis – issues still prevalent from 2014 SDF	78
Table 8: SPLUMA Development Principles and a Strategic Approach for the FBDM SDF	94
Table 6: Municipal Growth Projection	104
Table 7: Settlement classification and function	107
Table 8: Water bodies	116
Table 9: CBA categories	122
Table 10: Climate Change - Key Risks	123
Table 11: Potential Impacts of climate change	123
Table 12: Water courses	124
Table 13: Key informants	137
Table 17: Implementation Plan	195
Table 15: MIG Programme Performance.....	196

List of Plans

Plan 1: Provincial Locality	13
Plan 2: District Locality	14
Plan 3: Local Municipalities	15
Plan 4: Social Facilities – Primary Schools	53
Plan 5: Social Facilities – Secondary Schools	54
Plan 6: Social Facilities – Early Childhood Development	55
Plan 7: Social Facilities – Libraries	56

Plan 8: Social Facilities – Clinics.....	57
Plan 9: Social Facilities – Hospitals	58
Plan 10: Social Facilities – Police Stations	59
Plan 11: Social Facilities – Places of worship	60
Plan 12: Social Facilities – Overall.....	61
Plan 13: Ownership	64
Plan 14: Road Network.....	67
Plan 15: Vegetation	70
Plan 16: Critical Biodiversity Areas	73
Plan 17: Concept Plan	105
Plan 18: Nodes/Classification Settlements Plan	108
Plan 19: Corridors Plan	110
Plan 20: Urban Edge plan – Kimberly	113
Plan 21: Urban Edge plan – Ritchie	113
Plan 22: Urban Edge plan – Modderivier.....	113
Plan 23: Urban Edge plan – Barkley-West	113
Plan 24: Urban Edge plan – Delpoortshoop.....	114
Plan 25: Urban Edge plan – Warrenton	114
Plan 26: Urban Edge plan – Winsorton.....	114
Plan 27: Urban Edge plan – Hartswater	114
Plan 28: Urban Edge plan – Jan Kempdorp.....	115
Plan 29: Environmental Framework Plan	127
Plan 30: Agricultural Framework Plan	133
Plan 31: Agricultural Framework Plan.....	134
Plan 32: Built Environment Framework Plan	146
Plan 33: Tourism Framework Plan	153
Plan 34: Economic Framework Plan	159
Plan 35: Mining Framework Plan	160
Plan 36: Social Facilities - Overall	161
Plan 37: Spatial Development Framework	165
Plan 38: Capital Investment Framework	197

Glossary

The following abbreviations are used in the text of this report:

° C	Degrees Celsius	DTI	Department of Trade and Industry
ABP	Area Based Plan	e.g.	Example
AIDS	Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome	EA	Environmental Authorisation
ASGISA	Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa	EAP	Economically Active Population
BLMCs	Biodiversity Land Management Classes	ECD	Early Childhood Development
CBA	Critical Biodiversity Area	ECDC	Eastern Cape Development Corporation
CEA	Critical Environmental Areas	EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
CEO	Chief Executive Officer	EMF	Environmental Management Framework
CFCs	Chlorofluorocarbons	EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
CLRA	Communal Land Rights Act 11 of 2004	ESA	Ecological Support Area
CO ₂	Carbon Dioxide	FBDM	Frances Baard District Municipality
CoGTA	Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	FMR	Future Metro Regions
COO	Chief Operating Officer	GDP	Gross Domestic Product
CSIR	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research	GDS	Growth and Development Summit
DAC	District AIDS Council	GHGs	Green House Gases
DAFF	Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries	GVA	Gross Value Add
DARD	Department of Agriculture and Rural Development	ha	Hectare
DEDEA	Department of Economic Development and Environmental Affairs	HDI	Human Development Index
DM	District Municipality	HIV	Human Immunodeficiency Virus
DoA	Department of Agriculture and Rural Development	ICT	Information and Communications Technology
DoHS	Department of Human Settlements	IDC	Industrial Development Corporation
DRDLR	Department of Rural Development and Land Reform	IDP	Integrated Development Framework
DRM	Disaster Risk Management	IGR	Inter-Government Relations
DRPW	Department of Public Works	IPCC	Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change

ISDM	Integrated Service Delivery Model 2016	RDP	Reconstruction Development Programme
ITP	Integrated Transport Plan	REDS	Regional Economic Development Strategy
km	kilometer	RSA	Republic of South Africa
km ²	square kilometers	SA	South Africa
LED	Local Economic Development	SAHRA	South African Heritage Resources Agency
LHR	Liberation Heritage Route	SALA	Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act
LM	Local Municipality	SANP	South African National Parks
LUMS	Land Use Management Scheme	SDAs	Special Development Areas
m	meters	SDBIP	Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grant	SDF	Spatial Development Framework
mm	millimeters	SEA	Strategic Environmental Assessment
MSA	Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000	SEDA	Small Enterprise Development Agency
MTEF	Medium-Term Expenditure Framework	SETA	Services Sector Education and Training Authority
NC	Northern Cape	SEZ	Special Economic Zone
NDP	National Development Plan 2030	SLA	Service Level Agreement
NSDF	National Spatial development Framework	SMMEs	Small Medium and Micro Enterprises
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act	SPLUMA	Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013
NGO	Non-Governmental Organisation	STR	Small Town Regeneration
NSDP	National Spatial Development Plan	SWOT	Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities and Threats
OHS	Occupational Health and Safety	TPO	Town Planning Ordinance 15 of 1986
PDA	Planning and Development Act 28 of 2008	TSAD	Tourism, Satellite Accounting
PDP	Provincial Development Plan	UNFCCC	United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change
PEDS	Provincial Economic Development Strategy	VLP	Village Link Persons
PGDP	Provincial Growth and Development Plan	WSIG	Water Services Infrastructure Grant
PSDF	Provincial Growth and Development Framework		
PWSIMP	Provincial Water Services Infrastructure Master Plan		
R	Rand		
R&D	Research and Development		
RBIG	Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant		

The graphic features a central dark navy blue square containing the text 'EXECUTIVE SUMMARY'. This square is framed by a thick orange line that forms a stylized arrow pointing to the right. The background is white, with large, light blue-grey triangular shapes in the corners. The orange line also extends into these blue-grey areas, creating a sense of movement and direction.

EXECUTIVE

SUMMARY

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The Spatial Development Framework (SDF) for Frances Baard District Municipality was reviewed and adopted by Council in 2014. It was reviewed in compliance with the provisions of section 26(e) of the Municipal Systems Act (MSA) 2000 and Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA) 2013. The SDF is due for review and the final reviewed SDF must comply with the provisions of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA) 2013, MSA and the Department of Agriculture Land Reform & Rural Development (DALRRD) SDF's Guidelines of 2017.

Tshani Consulting CC has been successfully appointed to review the Spatial Development Framework for the Frances Baard District Municipality for 2020/21.

The Structure of the Frances Baard District SDF 2020

In line with the new system of spatial planning brought into being in 2014 by SPLUMA, government policies increasingly emphasise the need to pursue strategic outcomes that would lead to a change in the entrenched but unsustainable Apartheid-based segregated spatial patterns of development that prevail in almost all South African municipalities, including FBDM. For this reason, a key focus of the new SDF during this review has been to highlight the Key Sectors for growth and spatial transformation so that a more spatially just, efficient, resilient and sustainable spatial pattern of development can be achieved to underpin economic growth and social progress over time.

Accordingly, the focus of the 2020 Municipal SDF is to make spatial development and land use management proposals that:

1. Comply with the legal and policy guidance provided by global treaty and governance agreements, national and provincial policy and legislation, and the strategic objectives set by the Provincial Growth and Development Plan and the Northern Cape Provincial Spatial Development Framework;
2. Ensure that the biophysical environment is protected and wisely managed to maintain biodiversity and ecosystem goods and services such as water, fertile soils and clean air, so that the essential conditions for sustainable human development endure over the long term.
3. Facilitate the creation of more efficient and compact towns and cities by enabling the densification and intensification of prevailing and new land uses in localities that are well-connected to existing developed areas and infrastructure.
4. Promote higher-density residential uses as well as mixed residential and economic land uses within urban areas and at identified nodes or strategic localities along identified public transport corridors;
5. Prioritise the development of improved linkages between places of residence and places of employment and to strengthen connectivity between settlements and communities across the FBDM.
6. Build on and facilitate key economic development initiatives that are being driven by national, provincial and local government in partnership with the private sector and civil society by ensuring that spatial proposals support the requirements of these initiatives for strategic connections to workforces and markets; and
7. Promote the implementation of a Land Reform and Settlement Programme in the rural areas of the FBDM

The SDF is aligned to the Rural Development guidelines for Developing as SDF and includes the following

CHAPTER ONE: INTRODUCTION

This section introduces the 2020 District SDF Review and addresses:

- The area where the new DSDF will apply
- The legal status and purpose of the District SDF (what it seeks to achieve)
- Outline of the Report
- Outline of the Consultation that has taken place throughout the review process

CHAPTER TWO: STATUS QUO

This section includes the current status of sectors within the FDBM and has been developed through alignment with the SPLUMA Pillars of Biophysical, Built Environment and Socio Economic.

The following Legislation and Plans were analysed to ensure alignment:

National Consideration

- The Constitution of South Africa Act No. 108 of 1996
- The Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000
- Promotion of Administrative Justice Act 3 of 2000
- Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act 41 of 2003
- The Inter-governmental Relations Framework Act 13 of 2005
- The Environmental Conservation Act No. 73 of 1989
- The National Environmental Management Bio-Diversity Act No. 10 of 2004
- The National Heritage Resource Act No. 25 of 1999
- The National Environmental Management Act No. 107 of 1998 (NEMA)
- The National Water Act No. 36 of 1998
- National Development Plan
- National Spatial Development Framework, 2018
- The White Paper on Wise Land Use Spatial Planning and Land Use Management
- Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act No, 16 of 2013
- Local Government – Back to Basics Strategy 2015
- Integrated Service Delivery Model 2016

Provincial Consideration

- Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
- The National Environmental Management Bio-Diversity Act No. 10 of 2004
- Northern Cape Provincial Spatial Development Framework

Local Perspective

- Frances Baard District Rural Development Plan
- Frances Baard District Development Model
- Frances Baard District Environmental Management Plan
- Frances Baard District Infrastructure Development Plan
- Dikgatlong Spatial Development Framework
- Magareng Spatial Development Framework
- Sol Plaatjies Spatial Development Framework
- Phokwane Spatial Development Framework

Socio Economic Assessment

The main Economic sectors of the District are as follows:

- Community Services: 28%;
- Finance: 22%.
- Trade: 15%.
- Transport 12%.
- Mining 10%.
- Agriculture: 4%;

- Manufacturing: 4%;
- Construction 3%; and
- Electricity 2%.

According to Statistics South Africa, Community Survey 2011, the total population of the Municipalities were as follows: -

Municipality	2011
Sol Plaatjies Local Municipality	248 041
Dikgatlong Local Municipality	46 841
Magareng Local Municipality	24 204
Phokwane Local Municipality	63 000

The demographics illustrates a population pyramid that constitutes of a predominately young population, which remains chronically unemployed. Furthermore, the demographics illustrate a relatively learned population, however almost half of this population does not have any source of income. This is one of the contributing factors to a declining population which results in an outward migration. The SDF will therefore have to analyse the aforesaid, as well as other factors which may contribute to curbing outward migration, alleviating poverty, ensuring job creation, and promoting sustainable development.

The Socio Economic Assessment also Spatially depict the social amenities distribution within the district. This relates to clinics, schools, community halls, police stations, libraries.

Built Environment Framework

Kimberley developed in 1870 in response to the diamonds found initially at the big hole and then in other mines such as de Beers, du Toits Pan, and Bratefontein. This section outlines the towns within the FDBM though summarising key features and movement routes.

The Built Environmental Framework also addresses the current Status relating to Infrastructure, transportation, Settlement patterns, etc.

Biophysical Assessment

This assessment unpacks the critical biodiversity areas within the district as well as the natural ecosystems present within the district.

The Conservation Areas in the Frances Baard are as follows:

- Benfontein near Kimberley
- Rooipoort hunting farm (De Beers Consolidated Mines)
- Kamfers Dam Flamingo Reserve; and
- Wanebaai

Vaalbos National Park has been de-proclaimed as a conservation area.

This section also discusses the current situation in relation to the Agriculture sector. There is no moderate to high land in terms of agricultural production potential in the District which means that what agricultural resources there are must be carefully conserved.

The identification, evaluation, control as well as prevention through education of all those factors in the total environment which exercise a detrimental effect on individual physical, mental and social well-being, and development. It also implies continuous efforts to educate and prevent individuals from affecting the environment in such a way that it becomes detrimental to their well-being and development.

CHAPTER THREE: SWOT ANALYSIS AND KEY ISSUES

Spatial planning directives from the National and Provincial level as well as the district sector plans and local Municipal plans aims to unpack the state of the area or the sector within its location. Through a detailed analysis of these plans, we are able to create a picture of the positive and negative aspects of each sector within the areas that either fall within the district or surrounding the district which has equal impact on how the district functions.

The following section will highlight the SWOT Analysis and Key Issues pertaining to the Frances Baard District. These have been developed through two means:

1. As captured from the 2014 FBDM SDF – the aspects that have remained as is.
2. Workshopping sessions with the Local Municipalities and Internal and External Municipal Departments

The following are the key issues pertaining to the Frances Baard District.

Key Environmental Issues

Environmental issues are defined as problems with the planet's systems (air, water, soil, etc.) that have developed as a result of human interference or mistreatment of the planet.

- Mining threatens the biodiversity
- Loss of habitat due to destruction and invasion
- Poor rainfall leads to the degradation of veld
- Prevent the pollution of rivers and streams by agricultural activities
- Measure and control air pollution by factories and mines
- Environmental and other pollution takes place because of the lack of surrounding fencing to avoid paper and plastic littering
- Air pollution is created and is a high risk for veld fires;
- Surrounding vegetation is often used for energy sources

- Mining activities in many cases severely impacts on the environment
- Increasing demand for groundwater consumption and the drilling of boreholes, result in decreasing the level of the water table.

Key Infrastructure Issues

Infrastructure issues are defined as problems with transportation systems, communication networks, sewage, water, and electric systems, etc.

- Poor rail facilities within the district
- Over capacity of existing wastewater treatment works
- Professional management and operation of waste disposal sites is a concern
- No power supply to some marginalised areas
- Growing demand on bulk services due to population increase
- Upgrading of stormwater management systems in all urban areas throughout the district

Key Land Issues

Land issues are defined as problems associated with land tenure, land reform and availability of land, etc.

- Demand for housing due to population increase
- High residential densities are situated along rivers
- Urban sprawl and encroachment on surrounding agricultural land is occurring within the district
- Poor land and property ownership in rural settlements
- There is a need to address apartheid residential planning

Key Economic Issues

Economic issues refer to any such problem in the economy that is concerned with the production of goods and services to satisfy the unlimited wants of the economy through the utilization of scarce resources.

- Local municipalities have limited revenue sources and are heavily grant-dependent
- High unemployment rate
- Municipalities generally are experiencing an inability to spend their approved budgets timeously
- Decline and lagging in the Primary and Secondary economic sector
- Support is needed for the LED sector
- There is a need to support the tourism sector
- Job creation in the local market
- There is a need to address the secondary and tertiary sectors

Key Social Issues

- Social issue refers to issues that relate to society's perception of people's personal lives.
- Population growth in being seen in the district
- High elderly population
- Many poverty-stricken households
- Limited social facilities to serve the population
- Adult literacy and education should be targeted
- Health care provision with-in rural areas needs to be addressed



- District population is highly dependent on social grants
- Need for improvement in education facilities
- There is a need for maintenance and development of recreational facilities in rural and urban areas

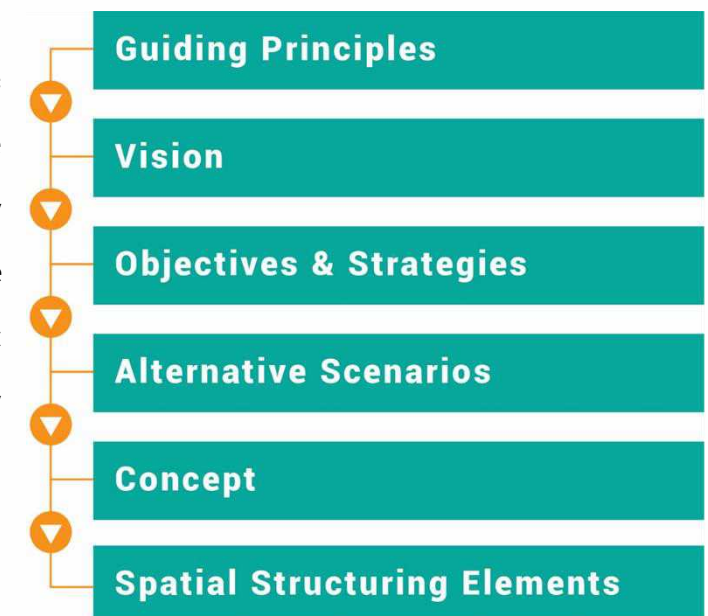
Key Movement Issues

Movement issues refer to issues related to the movement of objects or people from one location to another.

- Lack of Public sector managed public transportation
- Generally low-density development throughout the district which make accessibility, linkages between settlements difficult

CHAPTER FOUR: STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK

The "Strategic Framework" in relation to a Spatial Development Framework refers to the strategic background and guidelines which will underpin the development of the Spatial proposals. It aims to identify the strategic spatial focus of and the municipality. The development strategy includes meaningful target measures and objectives that help focus on the key efforts that implement the strategy.

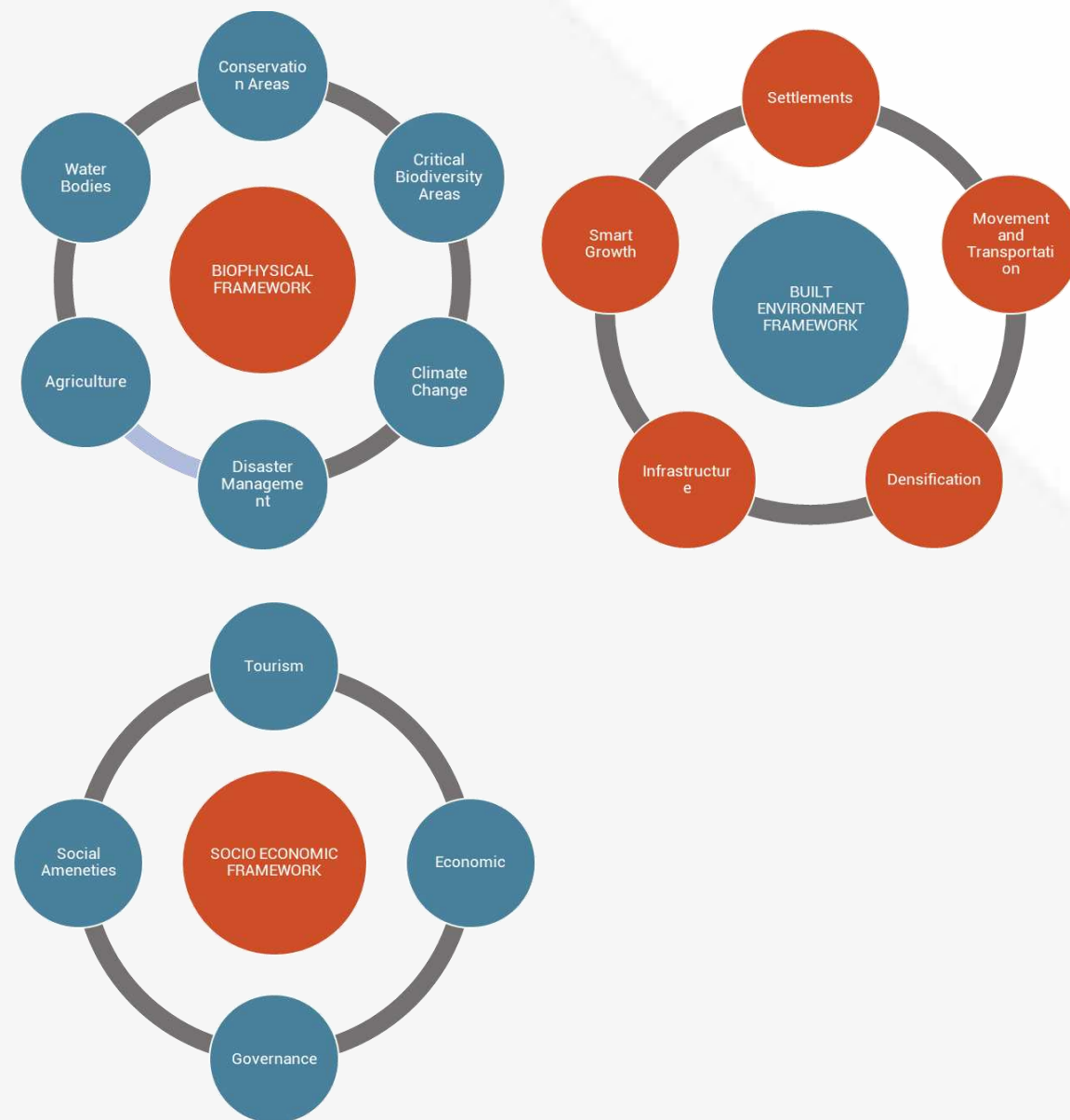


CHAPTER FIVE: SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

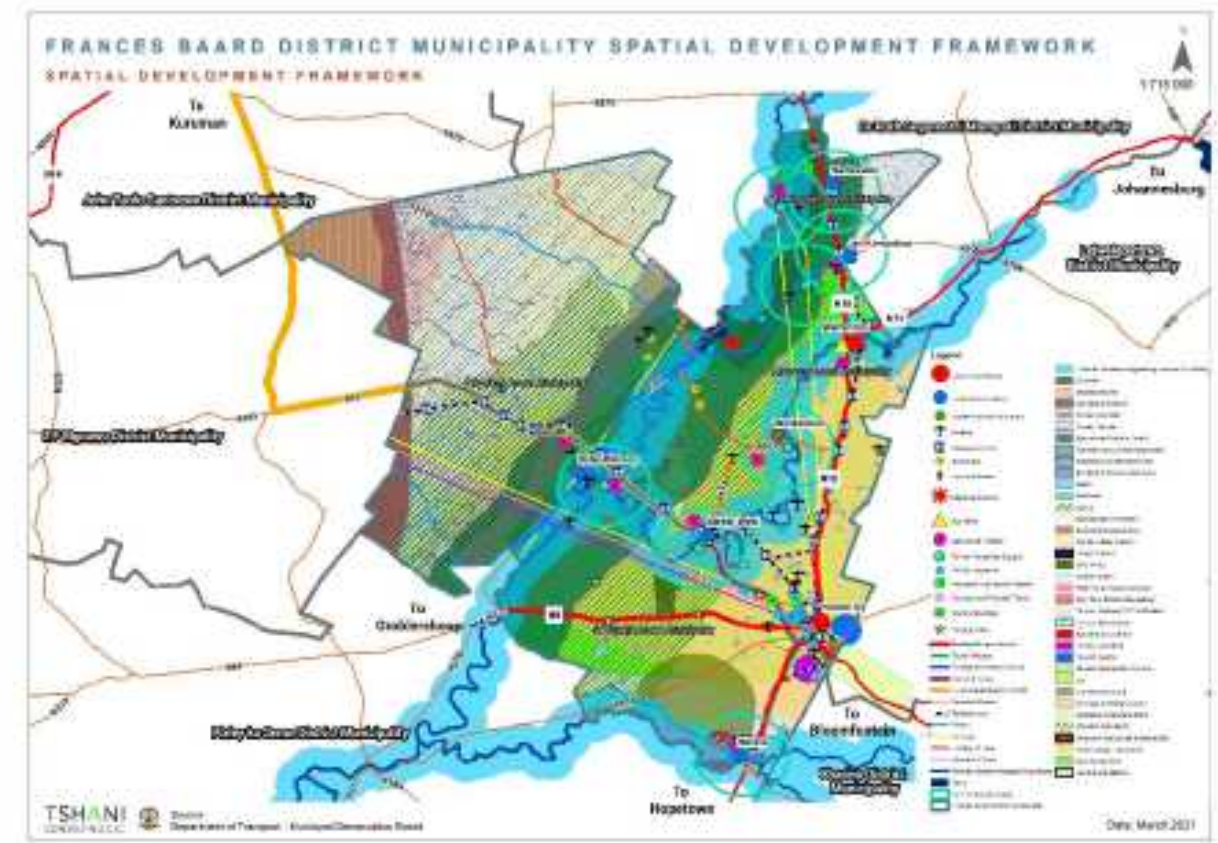
A Spatial Development Framework is a framework that seeks to guide overall spatial distribution of current and desirable land uses within a municipality, in order to give effect to the vision, goals and objectives of the municipal IDP

The development of the Spatial Development Framework is derived from the outcome of the Spatial Analysis and the feedback from the workshopping sessions regarding the key issues faced by various departments who operate within the space.

This section sets out the detailed DSDF proposals, arranged under 9 Themes in the following format:



Overall Spatial Development Framework



SECTION E: LAND USE MANAGEMENT FRAMEWORK

This section outlines the Land use Management within the district and how this should be undertaken within the district through the implementation of SPLUMA and the Spatial Planning Categories.

Spatial Planning Categories:

- Spatial Planning Category A & B: Core and Buffer Areas
- Spatial Planning Category C: Agriculture Areas
- Spatial Planning Category D: Urban and Rural Areas
- Spatial Planning Category E: Industrial Areas
- Spatial Planning Category F: Surface Infrastructure and Buildings

CHAPTER SIX: IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

The Implementation Plan depicts the projects reviewed and identified as part of this review process. Each project includes the following info:

1. Description of the Project
2. Location
3. Total budget
4. Phased budget
5. Source of Funding
6. Priority

The NC Provincial Growth and development Plan outlines the following Catalytic Programmes:

- Driver 1: Economic Transformation, Growth and Development
- Driver 2: Social Equity and Human Welfare
- Driver 3: Environmental Sustainability and Resilience
- Driver 4: Accountable and effective Governance



CHAPTER 01

Introduction

INTRODUCTION

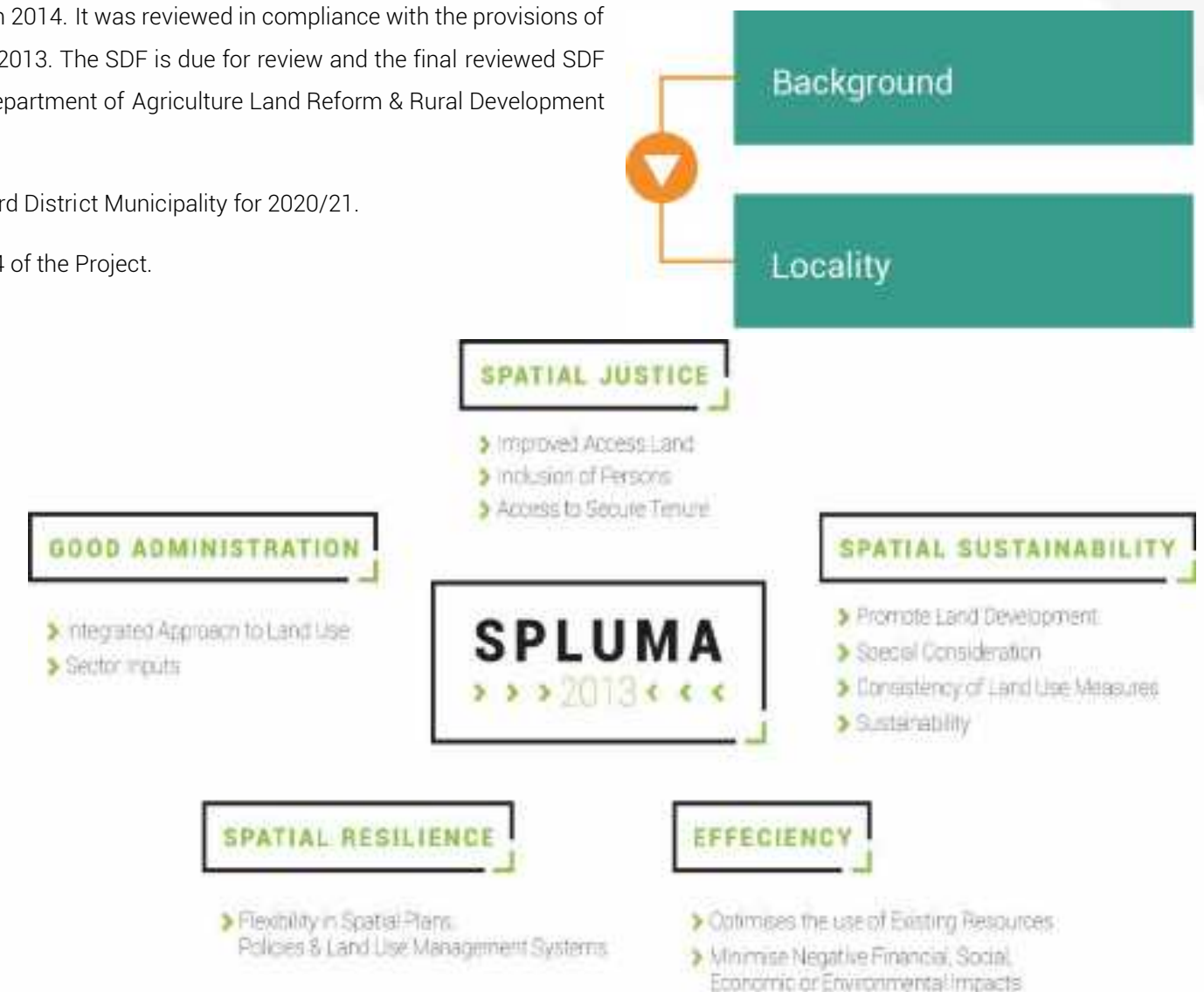
The Spatial Development Framework (SDF) for Frances Baard District Municipality was reviewed and adopted by Council in 2014. It was reviewed in compliance with the provisions of section 26(e) of the Municipal Systems Act (MSA) 2000 and Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA) 2013. The SDF is due for review and the final reviewed SDF must comply with the provisions of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA) 2013, MSA and the Department of Agriculture Land Reform & Rural Development (DALRRD) SDF's Guidelines of 2017.

Tshani Consulting CC has been successfully appointed to review the Spatial Development Framework for the Frances Baard District Municipality for 2020/21.

This report serves as a Draft Spatial Development Framework Report prepared by Tshani Consulting CC as part of Phase 4 of the Project.

1.A. Background

The overarching goal to review and update the Frances Baard District Municipality's Spatial Development Framework is to ensure that the principles of biophysical, socio-economic, and built environment of the district and its resources can be realised, in alignment with SPLUMA.



SPLUMA also outlines the spatial guiding principles as summarised in the diagram above.

1.B. Project Phasing

The following project phases are outlined as follows: -

PHASE 1:	Inception Report;
PHASE 2:	Issues and Spatial Vision;
PHASE 3:	Spatial Analysis and Synthesis;
PHASE 4:	The Draft SDF document;
PHASE 5:	Achieving support for the Draft SDF;
PHASE 6:	Finalization and Approval;
PHASE 7:	Publish the notice in the Provincial Gazette; and
PHASE 8:	Implementation plan

Table 1: Project Phasing

1.C. Locality

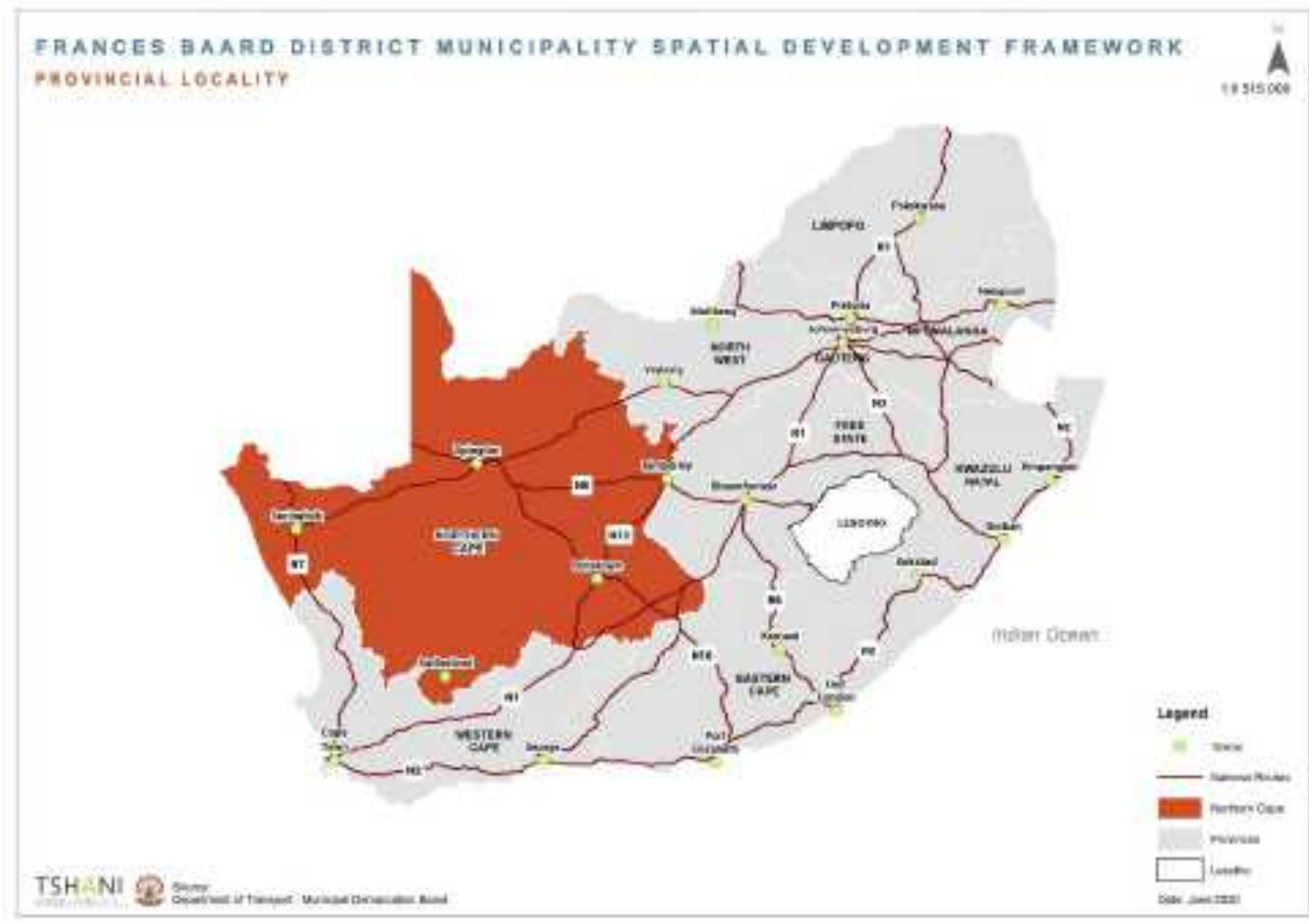
The section below highlights the locality of the Frances Baard District from a provincial to a local context.

Provincial Locality

The Frances Baard District Municipality is located within the eastern portion of the Northern Cape Province within South Africa. The Northern Cape Province is the largest and most sparsely populated province of South Africa's Nine (9) provinces.

The Frances Baard District shares a boundary with the Northwest Province, located on the northern boarder and the Free State Province on the east. The province of the Northern Cape is further bounded by the Eastern Cape as well as the Western Cape.

The below plan depicts the above-mentioned information.



Plan 1: Provincial Locality

District Locality

The Frances Baard District Municipality is the smallest district within the Northern Cape Province in terms of its geographic area. It measures a size of **12 836 km²** and comprising of **3% of the total area of the province**.

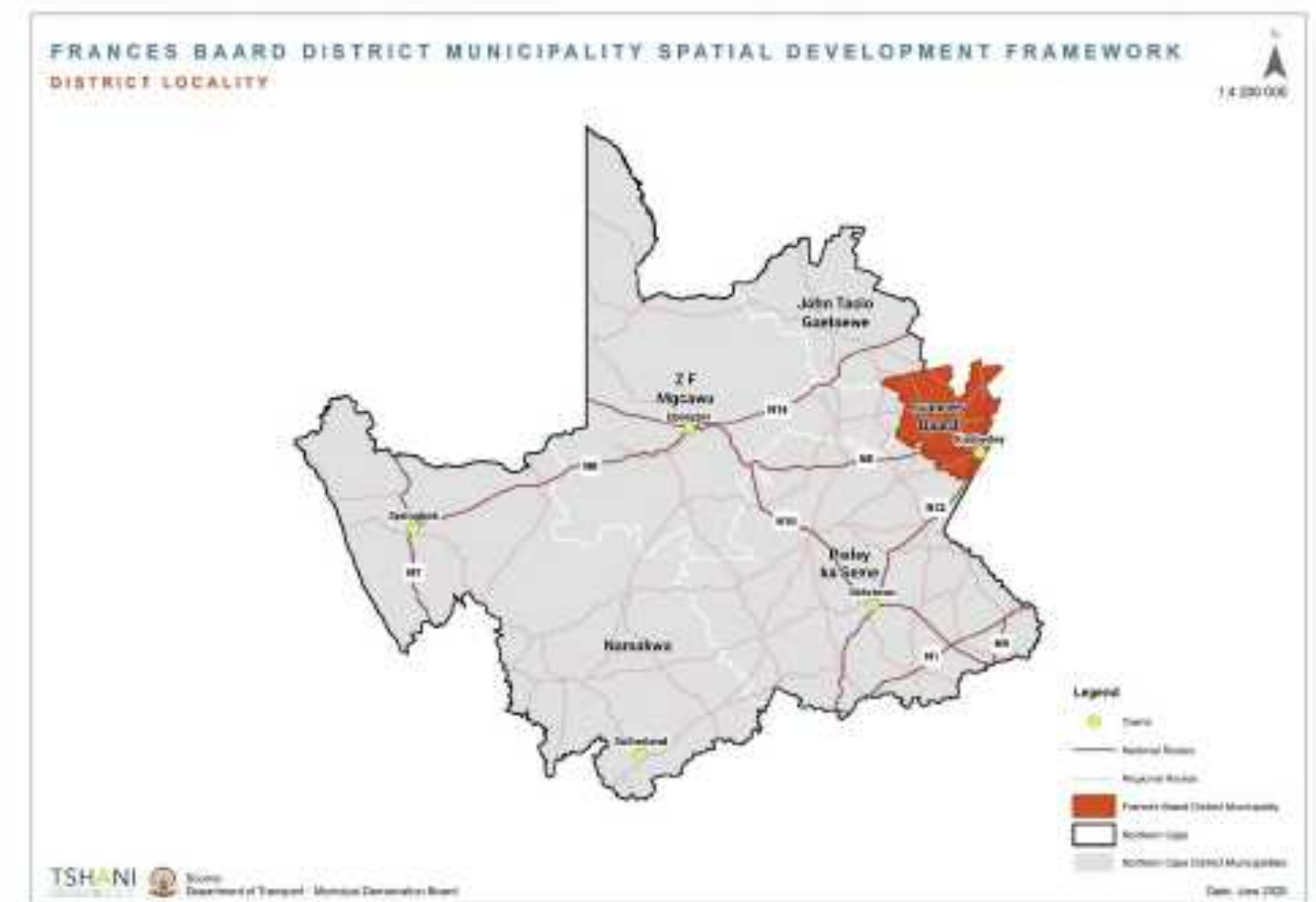
The district is home to the district municipal offices.

The municipality shares common boundaries with Dr Ruth Segomotsi Mompati District (North West Province) in the north, John Taolo Gaetsewe in the north west, Lejweleputswa in the east (Free State Province), Pixley ka Seme in the south, Xhariep in the south-west (Free State Province), and ZF Mgcawu (DC8) in the west.

The following five (5) district municipalities are located within the Northern Cape Province:-

- *Frances Baard District Municipality*
- John Taolo District Municipality
- ZF Mgcawu District Municipality
- Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality
- Namakwa District Municipality

The District locality of Frances Baard District is depicted in the plan below.



Plan 2: District Locality

Local Municipal Locality

The table below highlights the local municipalities that make up the Frances Baard District Municipality

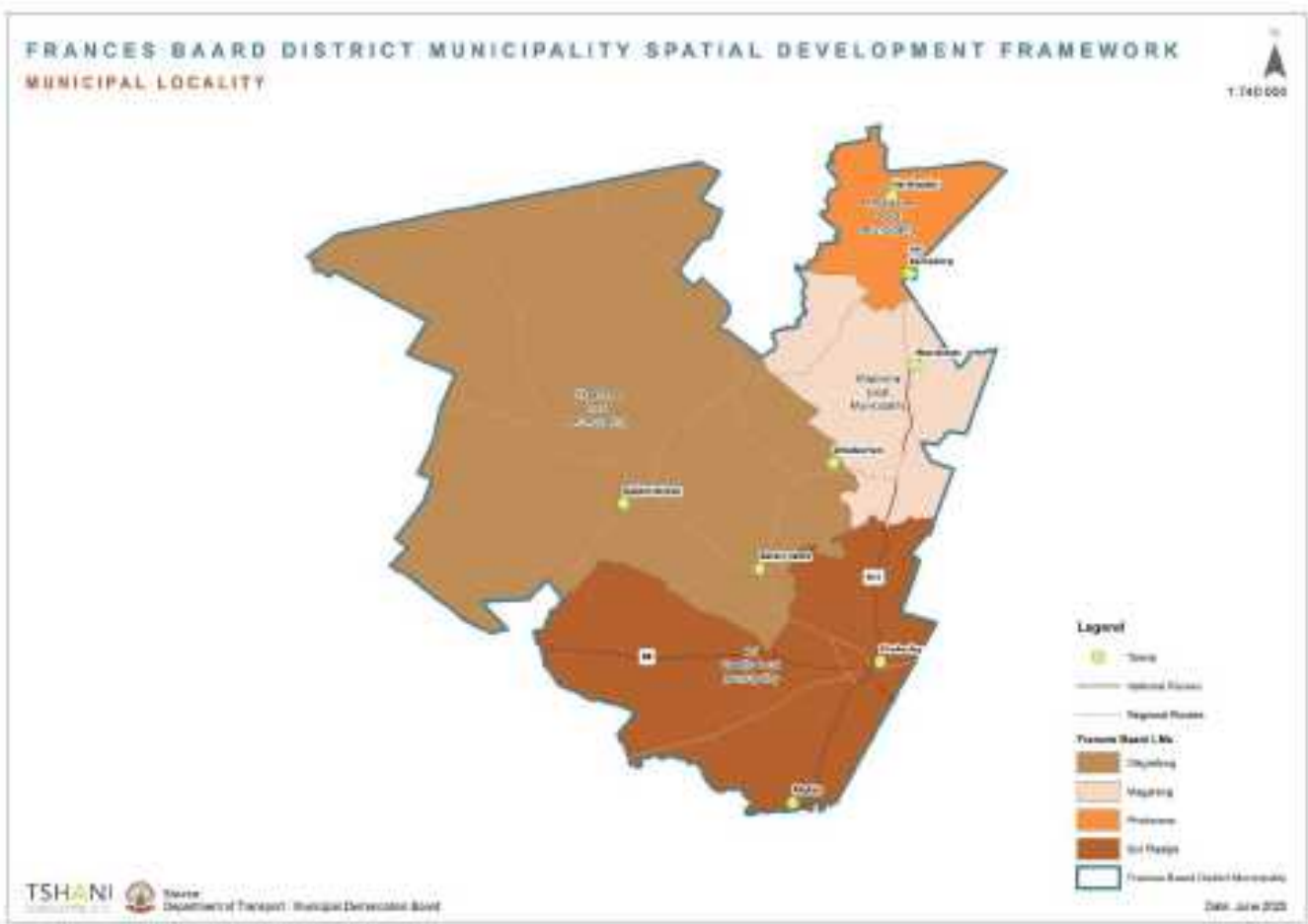
The following four (4) local municipalities are located within the Frances Baard District:-

- Sol Plaatjes Local Municipality
- Phokwane Local Municipality
- Dikgatlong Local Municipality
- Magareng Local Municipality

Municipality	Main Towns	% of the District	No. of Wards	Area (km²)
Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	<div><div>Kimberly</div><div>Ritchie</div></div>	24.5%	31	3 145
Phokwane Local Municipality	<div><div>Hartswater</div><div>Jan Kempdorp</div></div>	6.5%	10	828
Dikgatlong Local Municipality	<div><div>Delportshoop</div><div>Barkley West</div><div>Windsorton</div></div>	57%	7	7 316
Magareng Local Municipality	<div><div>Warrenton</div></div>	12%	5	1 546
Frances Baard District Municipality	-	100%	53	12 836

Table 2: Frances Baard DM Municipal Composition

SOURCE: <http://francesbaard.gov.za/our-regions/>



Plan 3: Local Municipalities

1.D. Report Structure

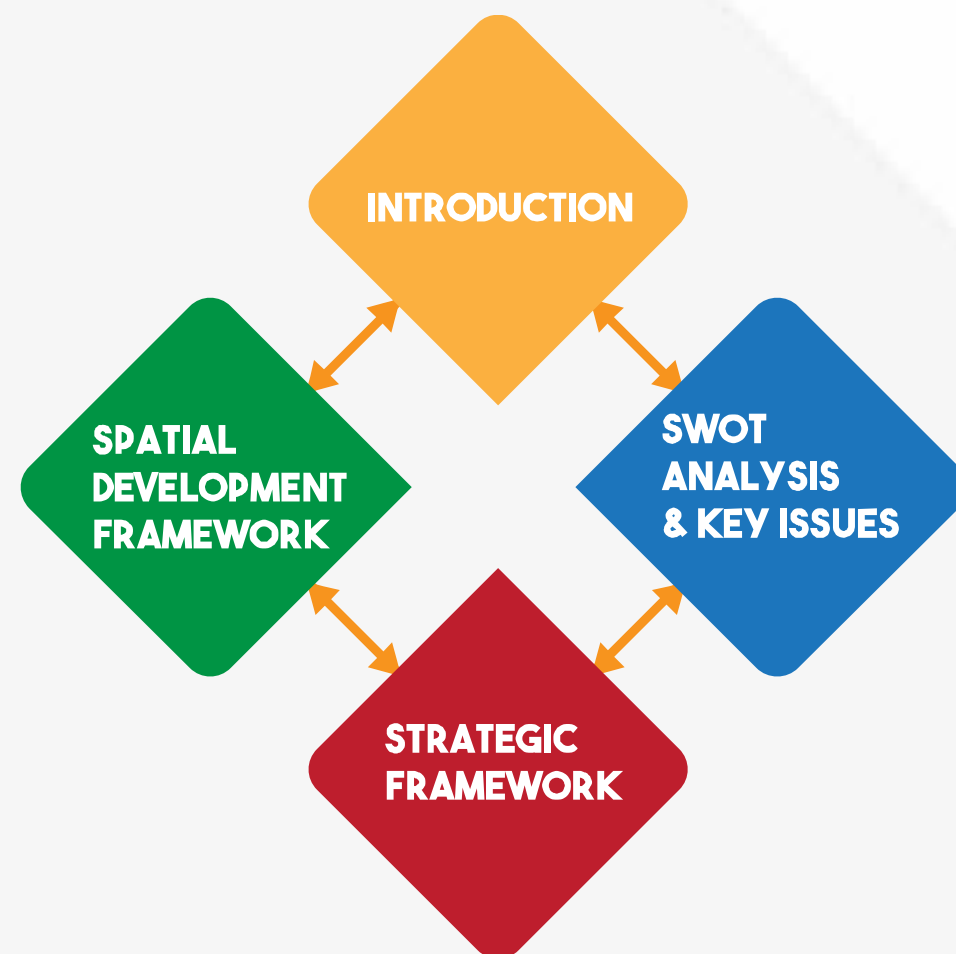
The following report stems from and is based on the Spatial Analysis Report (Phase 3) which analyses the current situation of the District Municipality. This report is attached as an annexure.

This report will thus aim to outline the key issues pertaining to each local municipality within the district though developing a SWOT Analysis per Local Municipality.

Through this analysis, a draft vision for the district has been developed.

It is essential to ensure that the district SDF plan aligns to the goals and objectives of the Northern Cape Provincial plan from a top-down planning approach as well as the Local Municipal alignment of the local municipalities SDF to ensure bottom-up planning. Further, it is also important to address the neighbouring Districts in terms of their Spatial plans as to ensure alignment and linkages between the districts.

The purpose of this report is to gain an understanding of the underlying issues pertaining to the District and the LMs within the district and further outlining what the guiding principles will be for the development of the district SDF.



1.E. Project Consultation & Advertising

The success of a project of this nature and magnitude relies heavily on a well-balanced process involving technical analysis and evaluation, supported, and informed by a focused participation and consultative process. These two processes need to constantly inform each other, thereby ensuring that the final product is technically feasible, financially sustainable and that it has the buy-in of all relevant role players/ stakeholders.

The following consultation has been held for the review of the SDF: -

Date	Consultation Type
15 June 2020	Introductory Technical Task Team Inception Meeting
16 June 2020	DFA Advert in English and Afrikaans notifying Stakeholders of the Review process and that they can register as an interested and affected member
27 August 2020	Technical Working Committee Meeting 2: Presentation on Phase 2: Issues and Spatial vision and Initial findings of Phase 3: Spatial Analysis and Synthesis
15 September 2020	Stakeholder Presentation on the Spatial Analysis and Workshop: Sol Plaatjie and Dikgatlong Local Municipalities
15 September 2020	Stakeholder Presentation on the Spatial Analysis and Workshop: FBDM Internal and External Municipal Departments
16 September 2020	Stakeholder Presentation on the Spatial Analysis and Workshop: Magareng and Phokwane Local Municipalities
30 September 2020	Project Steering Committee Meeting 2 to present the outcomes of the Workshop session
12 October 2020	Gazette Notice notifying Stakeholders of the Review process and that they can register as an interested and affected member

04 December 2020	Technical Team Meeting 3 to present the Draft SDF
08 February 2021	Project Steering Committee Meeting 3 to present the Draft SDF
09 March 2021	Meeting to present to the Local Municipalities
29 March 2021	Technical Team Meeting 4 to present 2nd Draft SDF
31 March 2021	Project Steering Committee Meeting 4 to present 2nd Draft SDF
06 April 2021	Presentation to the Committee + Councillors to present the Draft SDF
12 April 2021	Gazette Notice Published for 60 days for comment
14 June 2021	Technical Team Meeting 5 + PSC Meeting 5

Stakeholders of the Technical Task Team included: -

- Project Consultant Team
- FBDM Project Managers
- FBDM GIS team
- FBDM Housing Manager
- IDM Manager, Town Planner, LED Officer and Housing Manager from each of the Local Municipalities
- SALGA
- COGTA
- Office of the Premier
- National Department of Agriculture Land Reform & Rural Development

The project has also been advertised in two languages in the local newspaper. The excerpt below are the adverts placed in the local news paper dated 26th March 2020.



REVIEW OF THE FRANCES BAARD DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY'S SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

The Frances Baard District Municipality hereby gives notice in terms of Section 20 (3)(a) and 24 (1) of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA) 2013 (Act 16 of 2013) and Section 28 (3) of the Municipal Systems Act (MSA) of its intention to review its 2014 Spatial Development Framework (SDF).

The purpose of the Spatial Development Framework is to develop a strategic and policy framework that will address spatial, social, environmental and economic issues faced by the Municipality. The SDF will provide on-going direction as a sector plan of the Municipal Integrated Development Plan (IDP). It will also be used as a policy framework tool to guide decision making, aimed at the creation of sustainable, integrated and economically viable settlement within the Frances Baard District Municipality.

Generic spatial planning guidelines of Frances Baard District Municipality will be provided to all interested and affected parties. The proposal will be developed in close consultation with all stakeholders.

Public participation meetings will be held with key stakeholders together with the community at large. These public participation meetings will be held to present and workshop the outcomes of Phases 2 to 5, during April 2020 to July 2020.

Estimated completion date and process

The estimated month of completion of the Frances Baard District Spatial Development Framework Review is October 2020.

FREDDY NETSHIVHODZA

Manager: Town and Regional Planning
Tel No: (053) 838-0929 or Cell No 067-930-1218
E-mail: freddy@fbdm.co.za
Postal: Frances Baard District Municipality
51 Drakensberg Avenue, Kimberley
Fax (053) 861-1538



HERSIENING VAN DIE FRANCES BAARD DISTRIK MUNISIPALITEIT SE RAAMWERKPLAN VIR RUIMTELIKE ONTWIKKELING

Hiermee wens die Frances Baard Distrik Munisipaliteit kennis te gee van die voorneme om die Munisipaliteit se Raamwerkplan vir Ruimtelike Ontwikkeling van 2014 te hersien, ingevoegde Seksie 20 (3)(a) en 24 (1) van die Ontwikkelings Wet van 1998 (Wet 16 van 2013) en Seksie 28 (3) in ooreenstemming met die Wet op Ruimtelike Ontwikkeling en Grondgebruik (Wet 16 van 2013).

Die uitsluitlike doel van die Raamwerkplan vir Ruimtelike Ontwikkeling is om 'n strategie daar te stel vir ruimtelike, sosiale, omgewings en ekonomiese ontwikkeling binne die grense van die munisipaliteit. Die Raamwerkplan vir Ruimtelike Ontwikkeling sal ook die voortgesette riglyne bepaal vir die Geïntegreerde Ontwikkelingsplan (IDP) van die munisipaliteit en sal ook dien as beleidsdokument vir munisipale besluitneming met die oog op volhoubare, geïntegreerde en ekonomies haalbare ontwikkeling in die Frances Baard Distriks Munisipaliteit.

Generiese ruimtelike beplanningsriglyne vir die Frances Baard Munisipaliteit sal aan alle belanghebbendes en geaffekteerde partye voorsien word en die voorstelle sal in noue konsultasie met al die betrokke rolspelers gehanteer word.

Openbare deelname vergaderings/werkswinkels sal met sleutel rolspelers en die groter plaaslike gemeenskappe gehou word. Hierdie gemeenskapsvergaderings sal gehou word met die doel om die resultate en insette van fases 2 tot 5, met die gemeenskap te bespreek en te verduidelik gedurende April 2020 tot Julie 2020.

Geraamde voltooiingstydperk en proses vir die projek

Die geraamde datum vir die voltooiing van die Raamwerkplan vir Ruimtelike Ontwikkeling vir Frances Baard Distriks Munisipaliteit is Oktober 2020.

FREDDY NETSHIVHODZA

Bestuurder: Stads en Streeks Beplanning
Tel: (053) 838-0929 of Sel: 067-930-1218
Epos: freddy@fbdm.co.za
Pos adres: Frances Baard Distrik Munisipaliteit
51 Drakensberg Laan, Kimberley
Fax: (053) 861-1538

LEGAL FRAMEWORK

In general terms, spatial planning is bound by a new approach and principles in South Africa. During the Apartheid era (pre–1994), spatial planning was commonly used as a tool to achieve the **"separate development"** ideology of the Apartheid Government. In those terms, spatial planning entailed prescriptive, inflexible, and control-orientated measures that sought to manipulate the physical environment in order to achieve racially separate land areas.

Consequently, fragmented and unequal socio-economic and spatial development patterns resulted across South Africa, which is a legacy that will require concerted effort on the part of all actors in society to overcome. Since 1994, the post-Apartheid Government has sought to change the imbalances and inequalities of the past and has aimed at:

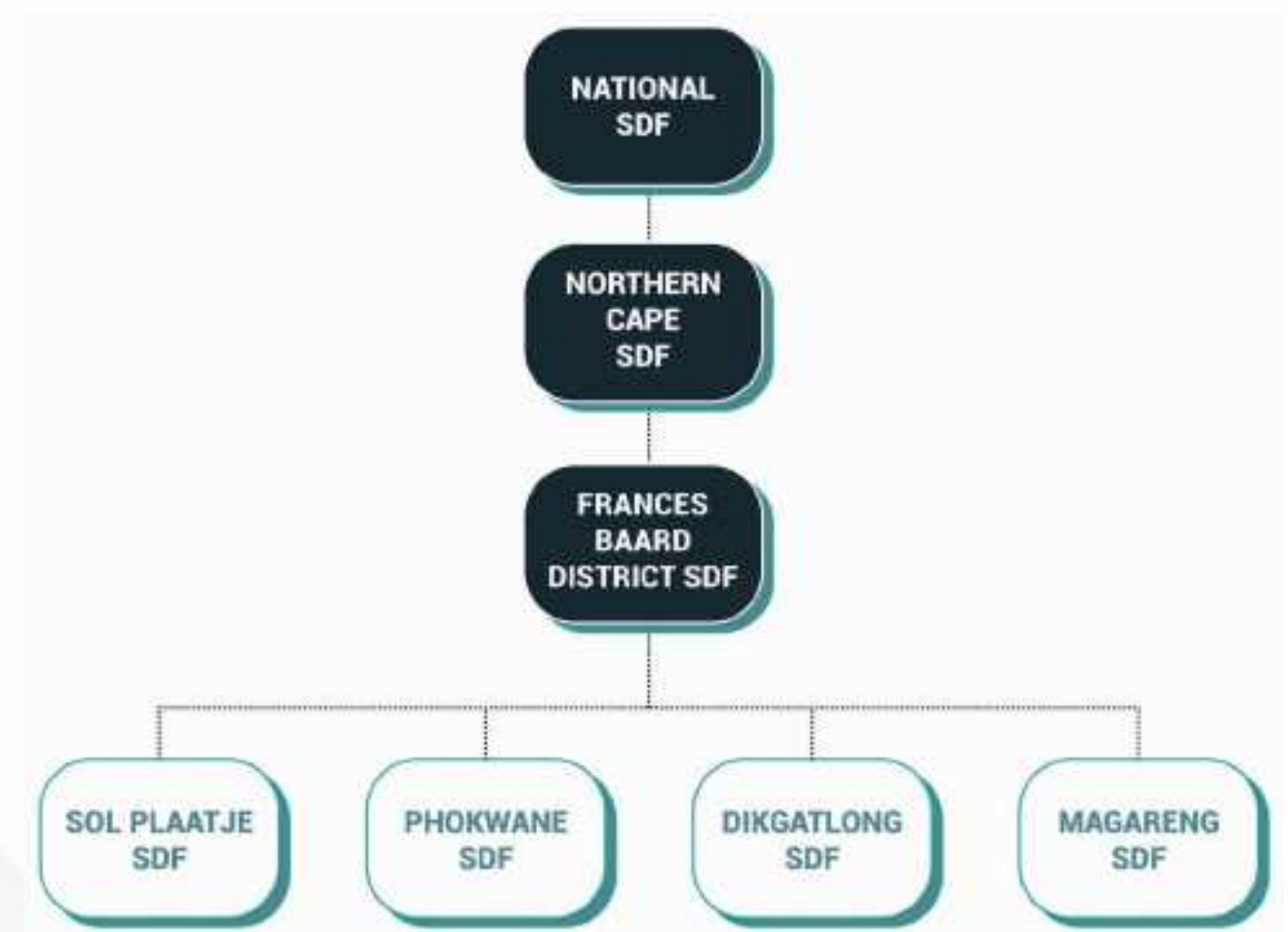
- Promoting the restructuring of spatially inefficient settlement forms;
- Encouraging wise and sustainable land use;
- Channelling resources to areas of greatest need and development opportunity;
- Stimulating economic development opportunities in both rural and urban areas; and
- Supporting equitable protection of rights to and in land.

Accordingly, the Government has adopted a range of legislation and policies, which allows for a more flexible, participative planning methodology that is principle-led and rights-based. For the Chris Hani District Spatial Development Framework Review, the key legislative informants of the new approach to spatial planning are derived from: -

- The Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000) – specifically Chapter 5, read with
- The White Paper on Wise Land Use: Spatial Planning and Land Use Management (March 2001)
- The Spatial Planning & Land Use Management Act (Act 16 of 2013) - SPLUMA

The above laws and legislative policy documents now provide the foundations for establishing the parameters of any Spatial Development Framework.

As such, these are the principle informants on matters of spatial planning policy for the Frances Baard DM and its constituent Local Municipalities. In the case of the enacted laws, the Municipality is legally obliged to apply their provisions when engaging in spatial planning and guiding and supporting its Local Municipalities in performance of their assigned land use management/land use regulation functions.



1.F. National Consideration

The emphasis for the review is on **“Developmentalism”** and **“governance”** as opposed to **“government”**. The aim is thus not solely about giving substance to new laws, policies, and proposals, but also about improving and incorporating a developmental approach to planning. Taking such an approach to the development of the Chris Hani SDF Review thus calls for the reconnecting of governance with its roots namely people and communities. Such an approach necessitates the need for taking guidance from policies such as:

- The Constitution of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996)
- The Promotion of Administrative Justice Act (Act 3 of 2000)
- Traditional Leadership & Governance Framework Act (Act No 41 of 2003)
- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act 13 of 2005
- National Development Plan, (2030)
- The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act No. 16 of 2013
- The Municipal Systems Act, 2000
- The Local Government Back to Basics Strategy
- Integrated Service Delivery Model 2016 which compliments the Concept of “Masiphatisane” and Ward Based Planning;

The Constitution of South Africa Act No. 108 of 1996

This Act defines the relationship between government institutions through the introduction of three (3) overlying planning processes and sets plans, each relating to each sphere of Government. In order to enable the state to respect, protect, promote, and fulfil this right and to ensure that the quality of life of each citizen is improved, the Constitution awarded major developmental responsibilities to local government.

Section 153 states that as part of the development duties, a municipality must:

- Structure and manage its administration, budgeting, and planning processes to give priority to the basic needs of the community.
- Promote the social and economic development of the community; and
- Participate in national and provincial development programmes.

Schedule 4 of the Constitution provides for functional areas of concurrent National and Provincial legislative competence in terms of regional planning and development, urban and rural development; and municipal planning while Schedule 5 makes provision for provincial planning.

The development of this SDF must therefore, take into consideration the provision of the basic community needs of the people, promotion the social and economic development of the Eastern Cape Province and at the same time aligning to the national and other provincial development programmes and projects.

The Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000

The Municipal Systems Act (MSA – Act 32 of 2000, as amended) gives substance to the provisions in the SA Constitution relating to the developmental roles and functions of local government, included in which is the function of Municipal Planning.

In this regard, Chapter 5 of the MSA requires all municipalities to prepare Integrated Development Plans (IDPs) and, furthermore, Section 26(e) of the Act lists an SDF as a core component of an IDP.

Promotion of Administrative Justice Act 3 of 2000

This Act gives effect to Section 33 of the Constitution (Just Administrative Action). It intends changing the way Government interacts with the people it serves as it ensures that decisions that affect the public must be taken in a way that is procedurally fair.

The Act seeks to protect the public from unlawful, unreasonable and procedurally unfair administrative decisions and gives people affected by administrative decisions the right to request reasons for administrative actions and decisions and also to have such actions reviewed in a court of law.

Among the gaps in this Act is that there are situations where officials do not inform citizens of their right to some administrative decisions that are taken by them and nothing is done to them. Also, awareness-raising activities often do not create awareness of the need to provide reasons for decisions. It should also be stressed that while the need for administrative decisions are communicated to be fair they do not explain what it means in practice.

From the above, it is clear that the SDF must ensure that stakeholders are accessible to procedures and mechanisms that will promote administrative justice and also protect the public from unlawful, unreasonable and procedurally

unfairness administrative decisions. It must give people affected by administrative decisions the right to request for reasons for administrative actions and decisions taken against them. The SDF must also ensure a targeted and strategic efforts to increase awareness of relevant stakeholders to promote understanding of the limited and vague conditions of the Act.

Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act 41 of 2003

This Act gives effect to Chapter 12 (Section 211 and 212) of the Constitution (Traditional Leaders) and ensures the establishment of traditional councils, which amongst others, should perform the following functions:

- Administering the affairs of the traditional community in accordance with customs and tradition;
- Supporting municipalities in the identification of community needs;
- Facilitating the involvement of the traditional community in the development or amendment of the integrated development plan of a municipality in whose area that community resides;
- Participating in development programmes of municipalities as well as development of policy and legislation at local level;
- Promoting the ideals of co-operative governance, integrated development planning, sustainable development and service delivery; and
- Promoting indigenous knowledge system for sustainable development and disaster management.

The Act stipulates that there should be a partnership between municipalities and traditional councils in terms of service delivery agreement.

Despite these important functions to be performed by the traditional councils, the normal situations often seen are conflicts between municipalities (mostly councillors) and traditional councils (traditional leaders) and these retard development projects in some areas in the province. Therefore, the SDF should ensure that the partnership between the municipalities and traditional councils should be guided by and based on the principles of mutual respect and recognition of status and roles of the respective parties as well as the principles of co-operative governance. Additionally, the SDF should address the socio-cultural, economic, spatial and environmental realities of the province of Eastern Cape. National policies and Strategies

The Inter-governmental Relations Framework Act 13 of 2005

According to this Act, its objective is:

- To provide within the principles of co-operative government as set out in Chapter 3 of the Constitution a framework for the national government, provincial governments and local governments, and all organs of state within those governments.
- To promote and facilitate co-ordination in the implementation of policy and legislation, with regard to: coherent government; effective provision of services; monitoring implementation of policy and legislation; and realisation of national priorities.
- To provide for mechanisms and procedures that assist in the facilitation the settlement of intergovernmental disputes and other matters connected therewith.

The development of the SDF must ensure co-ordinate interventions of various role players in line with development vision of the SDF by playing a co-ordinating and integrating role among different sectors within government as well as between the public and private sectors. This in effect means that the public participation process should be central to the development of the SDF. There is also a need for monitoring and evaluation of the implementation of the SDF's programmes and projects as well as its policies and legislation and provision should be made to ensure effective intergovernmental conflicts resolution.

The Environmental Conservation Act No. 73 of 1989

The Act provides for the listing of activities that require certain environmental impact assessment procedures to be complied with before implementation. This Act is of particular note for the activities of settlement planning and land use management, as it requires environmental approvals to be granted before land use changes that are listed may be approved by the land use regulating body.

The National Environmental Management Bio-Diversity Act No. 10 of 2004

The Act makes provision for the management and conservation of South Africa's biodiversity within the framework of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998; the protection of species and ecosystems that warrant national protection; the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources; the fair and equitable sharing of benefits

arising from bio-prospecting involving indigenous biological resources; and the establishment and functions of a South African National Biodiversity Institute.

The National Heritage Resource Act No. 25 of 1999

The Act provides for the creation of the South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA). SAHRA and provincial heritage resources authorities are obliged to identify those places that have special national and/or provincial significance in terms of heritage assessment criteria. Once declared, a heritage resource site is protected in law from certain actions, including alteration, subdivision and/or a change in the planning status unless the relevant heritage resources authority issues a permit for such action.

The National Environmental Management Act No. 107 of 1998 (NEMA)

The Act establishes in law certain principles that provide a framework for environmental management in South Africa. In addition, NEMA makes provision for the formulation of Environmental Implementation Plans by Provinces. These Implementation Plans are the vehicle for implementing the NEMA principles, and municipalities are required to adhere to them.

The National Water Act No. 36 of 1998

The Act provides that no person or authority shall establish a township unless the Layout Plan or Site Development Plan indicates in a clear manner (that is acceptable to the approving authority) the maximum level likely to be reached by floodwaters on an average once in 100 years (i.e. the 1 in 100-year flood line). However, in practice, development is sometimes permitted up to the 1 in 50-year flood line, as this was previously the norm. In addition, the Act provides for a range of protective and preventative measures against the pollution of wetlands, watercourses and estuaries, coastlines/shorelines etc. Finally, of importance for spatial planning is the fact that the Act makes provision for river flow management and allows the Minister of Water Affairs to regulate land-based activities that impact on stream flow.

National Development Plan 2030

“The NDP reminds us that South Africa needs to invest in a strong network of economic infrastructure designed to support the country's medium- and long-term economic and social objectives”. The National Development Plan 2030 was developed by the National Planning Commission in the office of the President in 2012. The Plan sets out an integrated strategy for accelerating growth, eliminating poverty, and reducing inequality by 2030. The NDP, supported by the New Growth Path and other relevant programmes, provides a platform to look beyond the current constraints to the transformation imperatives over the next 20 to 30 years. Its 2030 goals are to eliminate income poverty and reduce inequality. The NDP's human settlement targets, as set out in Chapter 8, focuses on transforming human settlements and the national space economy. They include: more people living closer to their places of work; better quality public transport; and more jobs in proximity to townships. To achieve these targets the NDP advocates strong measures to prevent further development of housing in marginal places, increased urban densities to support public transport, incentivising economic activity in and adjacent to townships; and engaging the private sector in the gap housing market.

The National Development Plan 2030 (NDP) is the official document setting out the present government's long-term VISION and strategic approach towards its various activities with the stated overall aim of eliminating poverty and reducing inequality by 2030.

It is understood that government sees the NDP as representing the platform for building cooperation and collaborative partnerships between different sectors of society so as to encourage faster economic growth that is more inclusive in nature and the document has explicitly been referenced by the National Treasury as forming the pillar of its economic policies going forward (Medium Term Budget Policy Statement, October 2013).

Over the course of its 15 chapters, the NDP sets out its basic objectives and proposed actions in relation to a wide range of fundamental development challenges, from developing the country's economy and increasing employment to fighting corruption and achieving nation building and social cohesion.

For the purposes of the Chris Hani DM, key policy direction is provided across the span of the document but, in regard to spatial development, the NDP applies most directly in chapter 8 of the NDP, which deals with transforming human settlement and the national space economy. Other goals relevant to achieving the desired spatial form and a more viable space-economy are:

- Building of safer communities through developing community safety centres to prevent crime, and improvement of education,
- Training and innovation through strengthening youth service programmes and introducing new,
- Community-based programmes to offer young people life skills training, as well as entrepreneurship training and opportunities to participate in community development programmes while expanding the number of further education and training (FET) colleges.



Figure 1: NDP Chapter 8



Figure 2: The Key Spatial Directives - Chapters of the National Development Plan

Chapter 5 of the NDP focuses on environmental sustainability and resilience through an equitable transition to a low-carbon economy, which will also have implications on the way the spatial planning and development in South Africa is approached.

Chapter 6 sets out specific targets and goals towards establishing a more inclusive rural economy through integrated rural development. The focus here is on increased investment in new agricultural technologies, research, and the development of adaptation strategies for the protection of rural livelihoods and expansion of commercial agriculture.

Chapter 8, which focuses on the country's spatial planning system, requires that: all municipal and provincial SDFs are translated into 'spatial contracts that are binding across national, provincial and local governments'; the current planning system should 'actively support the development of plans that cross municipal and even provincial boundaries', especially to deal with biodiversity protection, climate-change adaptation, tourism and transportation;

and every municipality should have an 'explicit spatial restructuring strategy' which must include the identification of 'priority precincts for spatial restructuring'.

Within the context of aiming to transform the space economy and the unsustainable human settlement patterns of the past, the NDP proposes that specific focus areas for intervention should include: -

- Responding in a systematic and sustained way to dysfunctional spatial patterns of settlement that were entrenched in the past (i.e. it is crucial to break with the past way of fragmented and sprawling spatial development)
- Using housing development processes as tools to assist in the re-structuring of urban settlements, over time.
- The improvement of planning systems and, particularly, the strengthening of collaborative approaches towards development planning and management between different spheres and agencies of government.
- In the latter regard, a priority is the progressive development of capacity of responsible agencies of government to administer their functions, including planning. This is most pertinent to the DM in its role of facilitating and supporting Local Municipalities
- Crucially – with reference to SPLUMA – reaffirming of a principle-led approach to planning that steers away from previous deterministic and control-oriented approaches to planning.

The implication of these guiding principles is far reaching from a spatial development perspective. It is believed that Principle 2 has sustained and possibly fuelled the large scale of peri-urban sprawl which has occurred in municipalities. The reason being that public sector funding is directed across the province to provide basic infrastructure in response to burgeoning settlement growth. It is believed that because of this, opportunities and influence development into corridors and nodes has largely been lost as a result. Therefore, as part of this SDF, the following will have to be determined:

- Where are the areas with economic potential and what local valuable resources exist that could help overcome the poverty in the area?
- How can the SDF assist in focusing efforts and funding programmes to maximize the potential which is underdeveloped?
- Where are the transport activity corridors, development nodes and special development areas where development could be directed?

The NSDPs "Shared Impact" approach, to achieve greatest impact and return on investment in common spatial areas, will enable focused investment by all spheres of government, according to economic potential, activity corridors and nodes, and prioritized intervention areas, is of critical importance.

National Spatial Development Framework, 2018

GUIDELINES

Consolidate and direct the rapid population growth in the eastern half of the country to national urban nodes, clusters and corridors by (1) creating quality human settlements and (2) centres of human capital excellence, innovation, trade, inclusive green economies and regional enterprises, and in the process reaping the urban dividend.

Consolidate settlement growth in (1) growth regions in emerging and fast-growing urban nodes, and (2) distressed and sparsely populated areas and areas that are becoming increasingly more arid in existing large urban nodes.

NATIONAL NETWORK OF REGIONAL DEVELOPMENT ANCHORS

Identify, support, and strengthen strategically located regional anchor towns through (1) targeted settlement planning and development, (2) higher-order social infrastructure provision, (3) focused support for small and medium-sized enterprise development, industrialisation and economic diversification.

- Use the investment and enhanced social service provision in regional anchors to encourage officials working in these rural regions to stay in these settlements and contribute to the local economy, instead of commuting to larger towns or cities on a daily or weekly basis.
- Clearly identify the role of specific settlements as gateways and interchanges on the regional public transportation network and incorporate these as such into the planning of functional rural regions.
- Strengthen the connectivity of traditional areas and rural settlements with (1) higher-order urban settlements, and (2) economic systems in functional rural regions by making use of road and rail network and regional corridor development.
- Plan social infrastructure provision within a regional-rural setting using the 'social services wheel', and use such investment to establish and create well-functioning, compact, lively, rural settlements, and regional rural systems

Kimberley has also been defined as a National Urban Node within the NSDF where the plan has outlined Kimberley as a distressed and sparsely populated areas and areas that are becoming increasingly more arid, consolidate settlement growth in (1) existing large urban nodes, and (2) emerging and fast-growing urban nodes.

NATIONAL TRANSFORMATION CORRIDORS

Three National Transformation Corridors have been outlined in the NSDF, the North-western Corridor which traverses the FBDM is one of the 3 identified National Transformation Corridors.

The NSDF has identified these areas to be categorised to have (1) large, youthful populations, (2) shared histories of deep deprivation and neglect as former Apartheid Bantustans, (3) high levels of poverty and unemployment, and (4) dense and sprawling rural settlement forms. They are also areas of high ecological value to the country as there is known to be enormous source of groundwater, in the case of the North western Transformation Corridor. It has further been noted that the North western Transformation Corridor includes crucial cattle and irrigation farming activities.

The corridor is set to experiences very harsh climatic conditions in the not-too-distant future however, due to intensive irrigation, farming has become established as a regionally and nationally important economic activity, and mining has a become a earner of foreign exchange for the country.

The NSDF aims to ensure the following for North western Corridor:

- Extend and improve the transportation networks, ensure regular maintenance and upgrading of existing infrastructure, notably roads, increase investment in high-speed ICT infrastructure and enhance urban-rural and rural-rural connectivity;
- Develop a network of (1) strong and vibrant existing and emerging cities and large towns to fulfil the role of fully-fledged national urban nodes, (2) viable regional development anchors, and (3) well capacitated rural service centres;
- Ensure effective city and town management to prevent sprawl, ensure innovative settlement planning and urban land reform, well-managed land-use, enabling infrastructure investment.

- Provide catalytic, innovative, and contextually suitable sustainable infrastructure, social and basic services to support enterprise development, well-being, and inclusive growth with both an ecological and human-focussed approach.
- Prioritise human capital and people-centred enterprise development, e.g. arts and culture, tourism, knowledge creation, education and innovation;
- Optimise the agricultural opportunities in the region and support the establishment of small-scale farming activities, agri-enterprises and agri-led industrialisation, to foster productive rural regions, enhance national food security, and strengthen national water security;
- Develop the tourism sector and creative industries in the region, with an emphasis on small-and-medium-sized farming activities, and agri-eco production;
- Ensure the protection and management of ecological infrastructure and national resources and protected areas, including SWSAs and high-value agricultural land; and
- Establish strong regional growth and development compacts, including all role-players, i.e. the three spheres of government, traditional leaders, communities (notably youth), the private sector, CBOs, NGOs and organised labour, and ensure regional, cross provincial and cross-municipal boundary collaborative spatial development planning and governance.

The Plan below highlights the Northwestern Corridor as outlined in the NSDF:

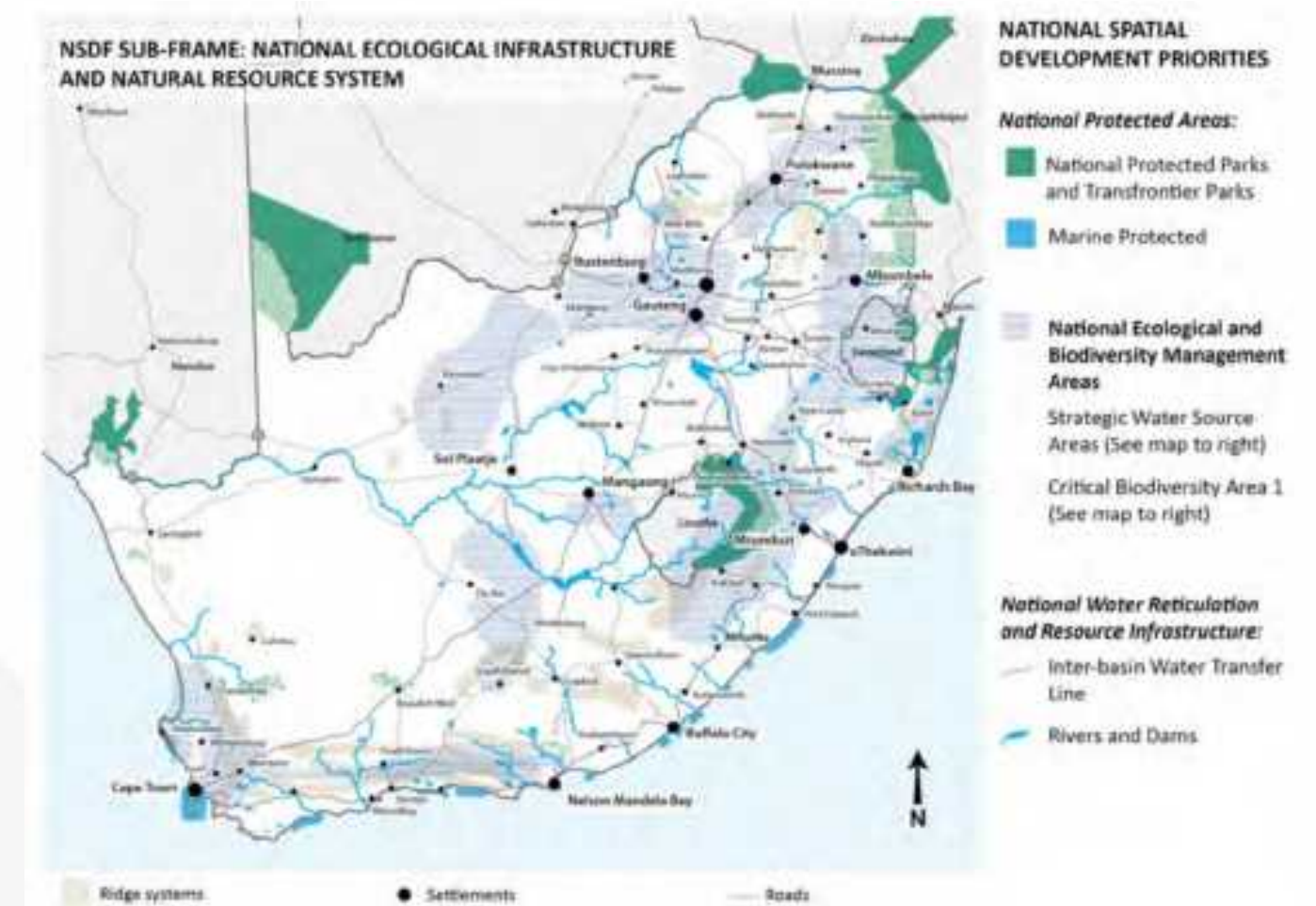
NORTHWESTERN TRANSFORMATION CORRIDOR



NATIONAL ECOLOGICAL INFRASTRUCTURE AND NATURAL RESOURCE SYSTEM

Areas within the FBDM have been defined as National Ecological Biodiversity areas. These are Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) and Strategic Water Source Areas (SWSAs). They could also be used for the socio-economic benefit of people, cities, and economies in the regions in which they are located. The NSDF mentions that 'Developmental co-benefits' must be created through effective management and use of strategic ecological and biodiversity management areas, to support rural livelihoods, especially with regards to custodianship and tourism opportunities.

There are also various National Protected areas located within the district. These are Protect national ecological resources and national heritage areas. National spatial development is well-planned and well-managed to enable protection, as well as the effective use and beneficiation of national protected areas in accordance with the relevant regulations.



Within this Corridor, Sol Plaatjes has been identified as an Urban Core and Barkley West, Hartswater, Jan Kempdorp, Pampierstad and Ritchie.

The overall NSDF plan is highlighted below.



The White Paper on Wise Land Use Spatial Planning and Land Use Management

This White Paper, released in 2001, intends to show practical ways in which spatial planning and land use management in South Africa can move towards Integrated Planning for Sustainable Management of Land Resources. Overall, this is seen as planning that ensures:

- That development and developmental programmes are holistic and comprehensive so that all factors in relation to land resources and environmental conservation are addressed and included. In considering competing needs for land, and in selecting the "best" use for a given area of land, all possible land-use options must be considered.
- That all activities and inputs are integrated and coordinated with each other, combining the inputs of all disciplines and groups.
- That all actions are based on a clear understanding of the natural and legitimate objectives and needs of individual land users to obtain maximum consensus.

Whilst the White Paper also suggests the minimum elements that must be included in a Spatial Development Framework, it is submitted that the national Spatial Planning & Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA – Act 16 of 2013), though it is not yet implemented, will provide greater direction in that regard. In the interim, it is again reaffirmed in the White Paper that any Spatial Development Framework should operate as an indicative plan, whereas it is clear that a Land Use Scheme should deal with the detailed administration of land development and land use changes.

Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act No, 16 of 2013

The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act No. 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA) was assented to by the President of the Republic of South Africa on 5 August 2013. SPLUMA is a framework act for all spatial planning and land use management legislation in South Africa. It seeks to promote consistency and uniformity in procedures and decision-making. Other objectives include addressing historical spatial imbalances and the integration of the principles of sustainable development into land use and planning regulatory tools and legislative instruments.

SPLUMA requires national, provincial, and municipal spheres of government to prepare SDFs that establish a clear vision which must be developed through a thorough inventory and analysis based on national spatial organization principles and local long-term development goals and plans.

SDFs are thus mandatory at all three spheres of government. Sub-section 12(2) confirms that all three spheres must participate in each other's processes of spatial planning and land use management and each sphere must be guided by its own SDF when taking decisions relating to land use and development.

Chapter 4 Part A. of SPLUMA sets out the focus and general requirements that must guide the preparation and compilation of SDF products at the various scales. Chapter 4 is divided into six parts of which Part A provides an extensive introduction to the purpose and role of SDFs and sets out the preparation requirements and expectations of the SDF process.

Section 12 (1) sets out general provisions which are applicable to the preparation of all scales of SDFs. These provisions require that all SDFs must:

- Interpret and represent the spatial development vision of the responsible sphere of government and competent authority;
- Be informed by a long-term spatial development vision;

- Represent the integration and trade-off of all relevant sector policies and plans;
- Guide planning and development decisions across all sectors of government;
- Guide a provincial department or municipality in taking any decision or exercising any discretion in terms of this act or any other law relating to spatial planning and land use management systems;
- Contribute to a coherent, planned approach to spatial development in the national, provincial and municipal spheres;
- Provide clear and accessible information to the public and private sector and provide direction for investment purposes;
- Include previously disadvantaged areas, areas under traditional leadership, rural areas, informal settlements, slums and land holdings of state-owned enterprises and government agencies and address their inclusion and integration into the spatial, economic, social and environmental objectives of the relevant sphere;
- Address historical spatial imbalances in development;
- Identify the long-term risks of particular spatial patterns of growth and development and the policies and strategies necessary to mitigate those risks;
- Provide direction for strategic developments, infrastructure investment, promote efficient, sustainable, and planned investments by all sectors and indicate priority areas for investment in land development;
- Promote a rational and predictable land development environment to create trust and stimulate investment;
- Take cognizance of any environmental management instrument adopted by the relevant environmental management authority;
- Give effect to national legislation and policies on mineral resources and sustainable utilisation and protection of agricultural resources; and
- Consider and, where necessary, incorporate the outcomes of substantial public engagement, including direct participation in the process through public meetings, public exhibitions, public debates and discourses in the media and any other forum or mechanisms that promote such direct involvement.

Section 12 (2) stipulates that:

- The national government, a provincial government and a municipality must participate in the spatial planning and land use management processes that impact on each other to ensure that the plans and programmes are coordinated, consistent and in harmony with each other.

- A spatial development framework adopted in terms of this Act must guide and inform the exercise of any discretion or of any decision taken in terms of this Act or any other law relating to land use and development of land by that sphere of government.

The SDF will be informed by aligning to the following SPLUMA development principles

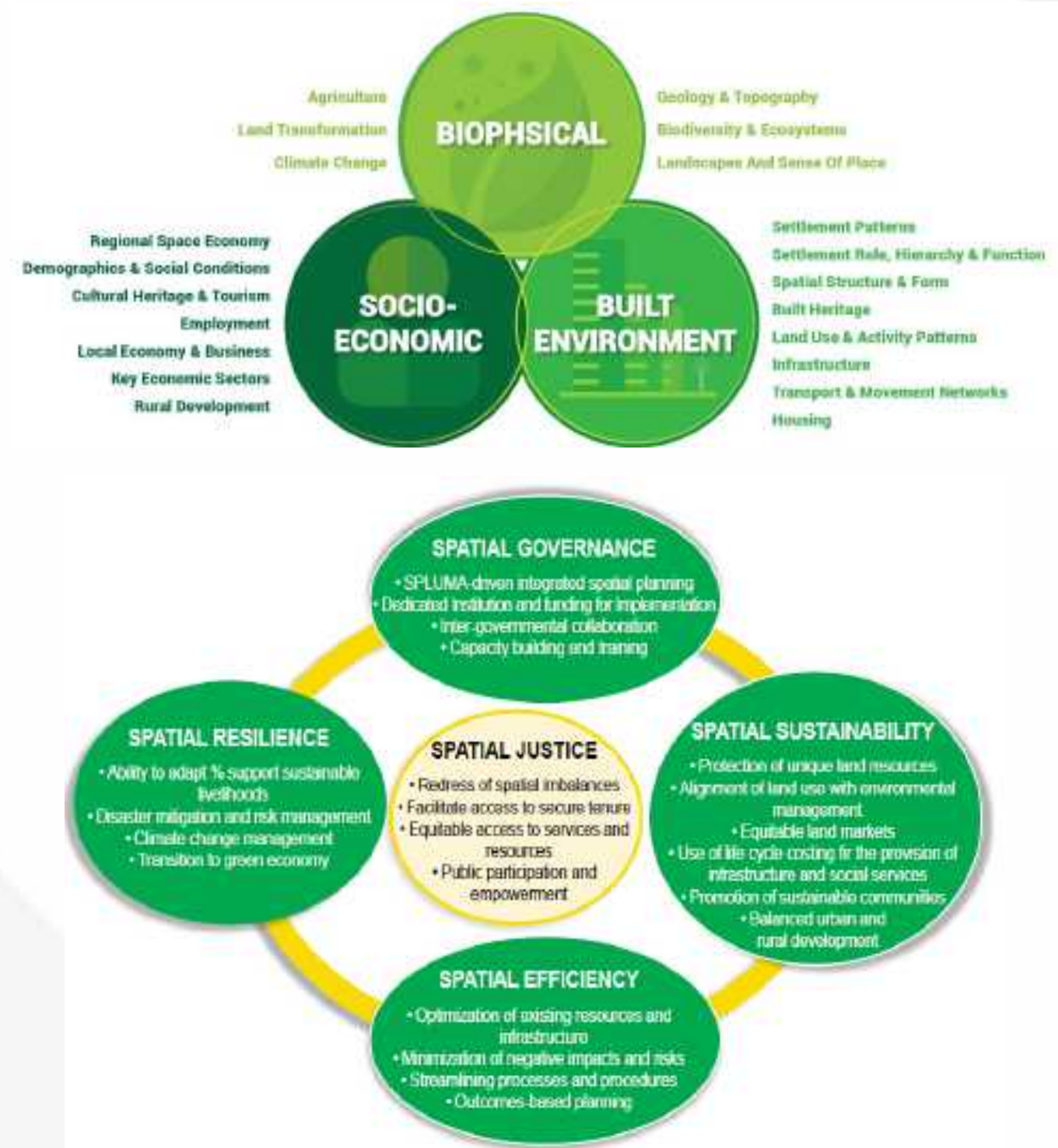


Figure 3: SPLUMA Principles

The SPLUMA Principles are detailed as follows: -

Spatial Justice

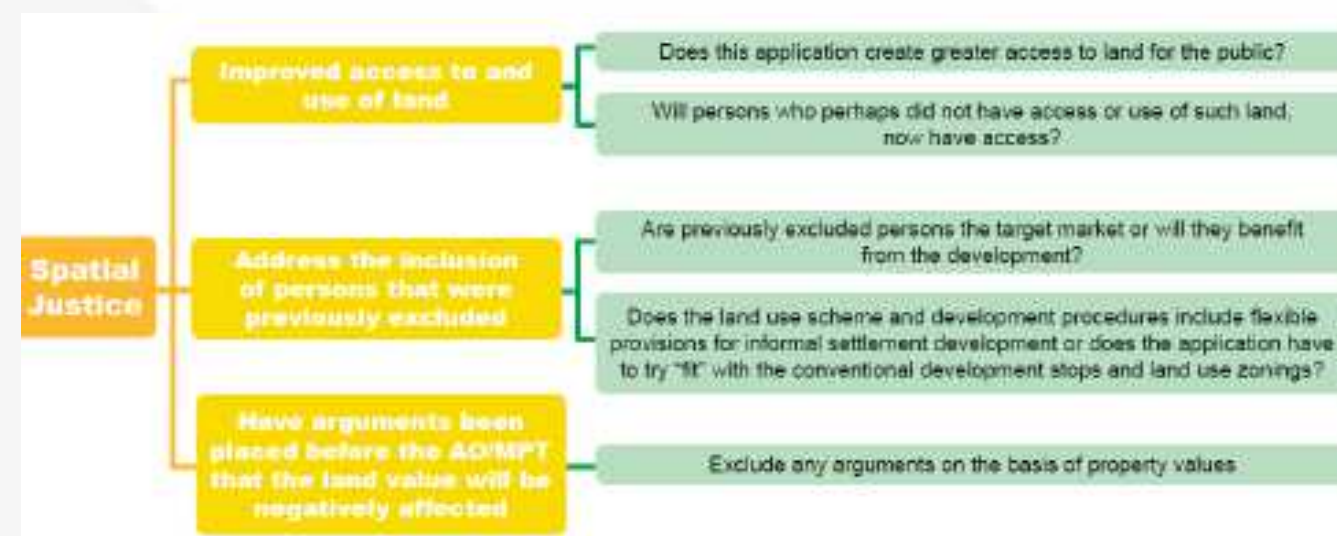


Figure 4: SPLUMA Principles: Spatial Justice

Each development application must be assessed to determine whether it will contribute to a more just and equitable spatial outcome. Spatial justice incorporates important active intentions, such as:

- Inclusivity – actively promoting the inclusion, rather than the exclusion, of disadvantaged groups and areas;
- Redress – to make up for past imbalances and injustices;
- Increased access – by disadvantaged groups and also spatially through well located developments;
- Incorporation of disadvantaged areas – to create a more just spatial form, and
- Flexible mechanisms with applicability in previously excluded areas – inclusion of incremental development procedures for upgrading informal settlements for example and developing suitable zoning and regulations for slums or informal areas or traditional areas where existing procedures made the development and use of land illegal and criminalized residents.

Spatial Sustainability

This principle looks at the longer-term view of development and embraces the concepts of environment, social and economic sustainability.

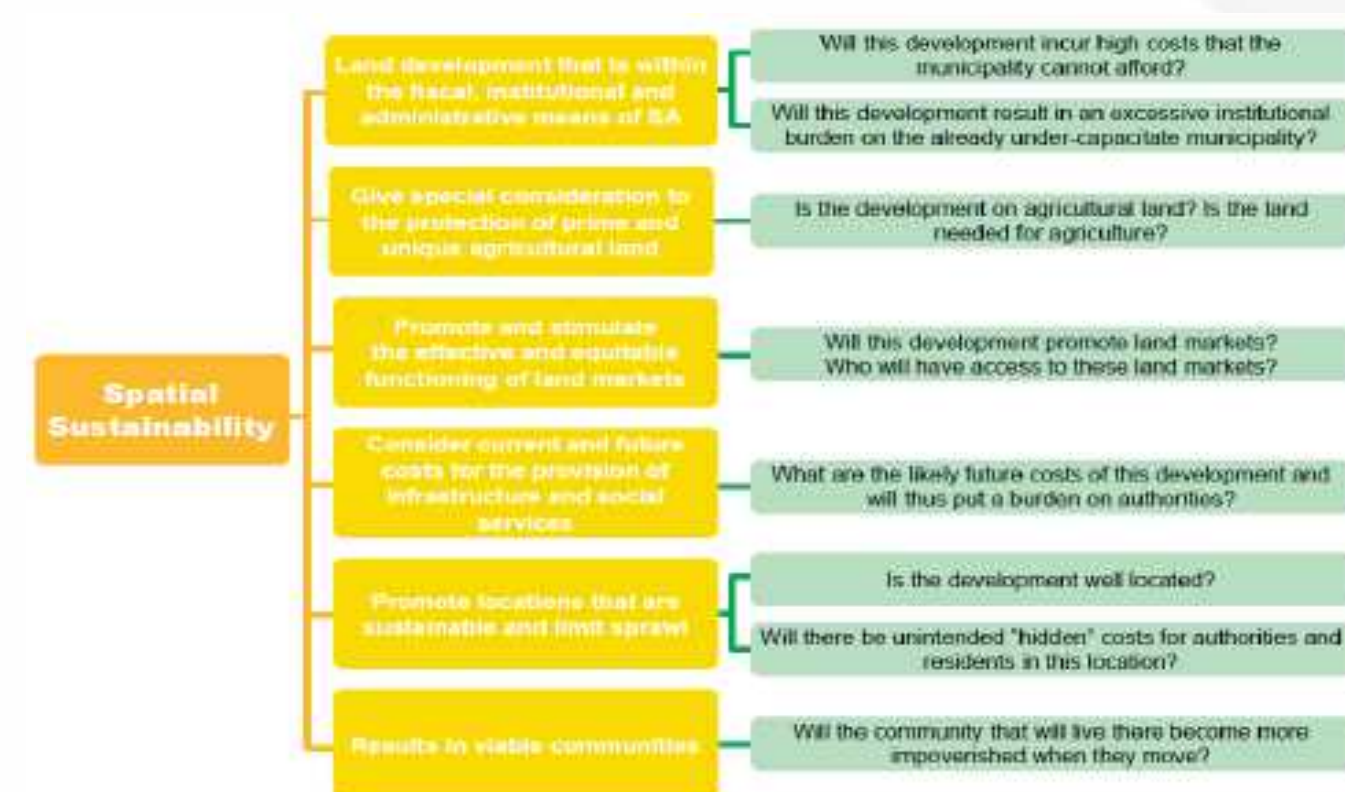


Figure 5: SPLUMA Principles: Spatial Sustainability

Spatial Efficiency

This principle embodies the notion that we need to use our resources efficiently and not be wasteful of them and of our time and capacity as we have resource constraints. We must make the best and most efficient use possible with the limited resources available.



Figure 6: SPLUMA Principles: Spatial Efficiency

Spatial Resilience

This principle embodies the notion that communities that live in vulnerable spatial locations have less ability to withstand economic and social shocks so spatial plans and policies need to be flexible to enable them to continue to have sustainable livelihoods.

When assessing an application in terms of this principle one could ask:

- Will this development make this marginal or vulnerable community more vulnerable?
- Will it deprive them of certain resources necessary to support their livelihoods?

Spatial Governance

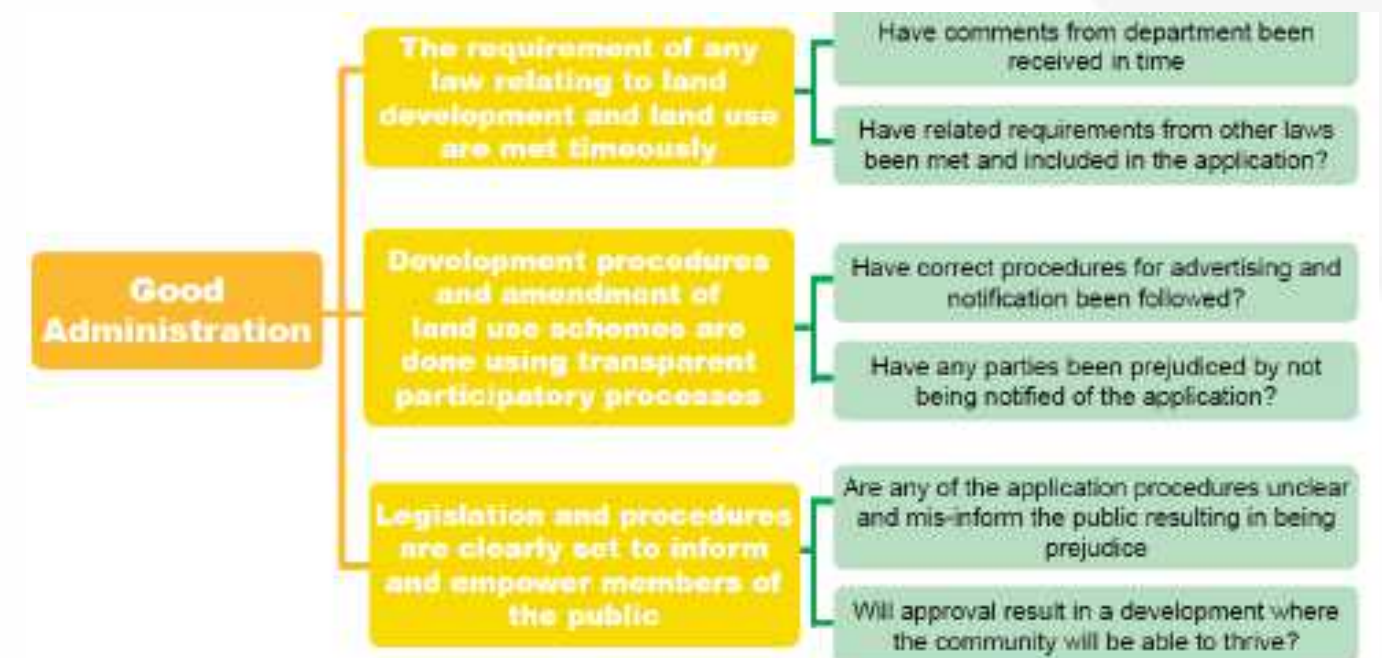


Figure 7: SPLUMA Principles: Spatial Governance

Local Government – Back to Basics Strategy 2015

Back to Basics – serving our communities better” is simply a programme aimed at building a responsive, caring and accountable local government in order to improve the functioning of municipalities to better serve communities by getting the basic right “.

According to the Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs (COGTA), the key performance areas for the “Back-to-Basics” approach include the following:

- Basic services - creating decent living conditions;
- Good governance – the heart of the effective functioning of municipalities;
- Public participation – putting people first;
- Sound financial management; and
- Institutional capacity – building capable institutions and administrations.

The “Back-to-Basics” programme also calls for a collaborative relationship between Traditional Leaders and Municipalities in advancing development and service delivery issues.

It provides for an indicative framework for major infrastructural investment therefore the SDF must ensure that all three spheres of government (national, provincial and local) have an important role to play in promoting that municipalities are well-functioned to fulfil their key performance areas. The SDF should promote an effective and responsive planning in all in governance activities in order to achieve community capacitation, stakeholder engagement (community participation) and sound financial management.

Integrated Service Delivery Model 2016

The province is embarking on a coordinated approach, the Integrated Service Delivery Model (ISDM), dubbed Operation Masiphathisane, to provide comprehensive, integrated, and transversal services to communities through effective and efficient multi-sectoral partnerships. This calls for:

- A shared understanding of the model;
- The reconfiguration of structures to support the roll-out of the operation masiphathisane; and
- The establishment of war rooms.

- Misalignment between IGR structures and other policy implementation platforms resulting into their under utilization
- No vertical and horizontal linkages
- Often very low participation of sector departments at local level
- Current IGR platforms do not create enough space for integrated planning and reporting thus weakening the impact of government work
- Siloistic service delivery resulting into unfulfilled objectives, duplication of efforts and pressure on limited resources
- Lack of community ownership of services rendered hence persistent social unrest
- Lack of proper monitoring and evaluation to track impact of service delivery on the citizens of the Province

What is Operation Masiphathisane?

- Coordinated and integrated service delivery model of action to address the empowerment of Youth and women, social ill of the communities
- Communities participating in governance, bringing Government to the people
- Ward-based initiatives targeting diseases management in the wards with special emphasis on HIV ,TB and poverty a developmental approach to disease prevention, child and maternal health ,infancy mortality rate, orphan and vulnerable child care
- A model where an aggressive behaviour change will vigorously implemented using the existing cadre to focus their efforts on: crime, adolescent health, sexual behaviour ,substance abuse ,road accidents, abuse(gender-abuse and children)

War Room as the Service Delivery Engine

At the centre of the ISDM is the Ward War Room, which is the service delivery engine set up at ward level to deliver a fully coordinated and integrated basket of services by different stakeholders.

ISDM Rationale



Figure 8: ISDM - War Room Stakeholders



Figure 9: ISDM - Interaction of Key Community Structures

Integrated Service Delivery

To implement the integrated service delivery model and for a War Room to be considered fully functional, a number of activities need to be completed on an ongoing basis.



Figure 10: ISDM - Overview of War Room Integrated Service Delivery Activities

1.G. Provincial Consideration

Ensuring that the District SDF aligns to the legislation and plans developed at a Provincial scale is of utmost importance. The section below highlights the provincial policy alignment.

Provincial Growth and Development Strategy

The Provincial Growth and Development Plan (PGDP) developed by the Provincial Government of the Northern Cape, is a document aligned to the NDP and the National Spatial Development Framework. The purpose of a PGDP is to provide the strategic framework, sectoral strategies and projects that will place the Province and its people on a trajectory of growth and prosperity. To achieve this, the PGDP addresses issues of economic growth, social development, environmental protection, employment creation, poverty eradication and good governance concretely with implementable projects to advance the liveability of all in the Province.

The PGDP, with its long-term vision, aims to place the Northern Cape Province on a new development trajectory of sustainable development.

The PGDP outlines that the Northern Cape Province's economy is highly dependent on the primary and tertiary sectors for growth and employment. This concentration implies economic vulnerability on several fronts such as external economic fluctuations, climate change, international commodity price changes and national government policy priorities.

Spatial transformation in the Northern Cape Province implies inclusive and sustainable economic growth. Small towns and rural communities must become Economic Transformation, Growth and Development drivers through diversification, skills development, infrastructure development, optimised resource utilisation, the empowerment of vulnerable groups and investment attraction. In line with the SPLUMA Act 16 of 2013, critical factors in achieving spatial and economic transformation in the Province include:

- Equitable access to economic and employment opportunities
- Equitable access to transport, energy, water, bulk and communications infrastructure
- Equitable access to land and food security
- Equitable access to social services and public amenities
- Equitable access to a healthy natural environment
- Equitable access to housing and municipal infrastructure
- Equitable access to natural resources

The characteristics underpinning the Northern Cape Growth & Development Strategy are centered towards charting towards a new socio-economic trajectory. This trajectory is one that advocates for the social and economic emancipation of the people of the province, from the clutches of colonial repression, through land reform initiatives, through the creation of environments that have a core focus on the reduction of poverty, unemployment and inequality and through initiatives that promote environmental sustainability, good governance and livable environments. The output of the strategy is the overall attainment of social and economic transformation for the province by 2040, which is not only connected to the principles of the Freedom Charter and the National Development Plan, but acts as an important vanguard for district and local development.

The National Environmental Management Bio-Diversity Act No. 10 of 2004

The Act makes provision for the management and conservation of South Africa's biodiversity within the framework of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998; the protection of species and ecosystems that warrant national protection; the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources; the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising from bio-prospecting involving indigenous biological resources; and the establishment and functions of a South African National Biodiversity Institute.

The Northern Cape Agriculture sector is one of the key sectors that drive the economy of the province. Therefore, the PGDP aims for the province to have a productive, sustainable, and healthy agricultural sector it needs to contribute to job creation, social welfare, as well as ensure sustainability of natural resources.

The PGDP further outlines Frances Baard District Municipality (FBDM) as the smallest among the five District Municipalities in the Northern Cape Province. The Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme, is the largest irrigation scheme in South Africa, can be found in FBDM. This water scheme is the primary water source for the agricultural industry in this district municipality and provides water to farmers in Jan Kempdorp, Pampierstad, Warrenton as well as other settlements in the area. Most agriculture land is used for the cultivation of maize. Other crops include wheat, various fruit and vegetables, ground nuts, pecan nuts cotton, canola and Lucerne.

Northern Cape Provincial Spatial Development Framework

The metamorphosis of any area into a 'development state', be it at a national, provincial and/or local context, as enshrined by the constitution, requires a dedicated integrated planning process, which effectively incorporates innovative and best-practice strategies, pertaining to its obligation in achieving social, economic and environmental sustainability. It remains of paramount importance to remain cognizant of the fact, that the Provincial Spatial Development Framework(PSDF), remains an extension of the Provincial Growth and Development Plan, expressing the needs and aspirations of the people of the province in the spatial context, as highlighted in the development drivers of the Provincial Growth and Development Plan (PGDP).

Key Issues Facing the Province

It is cardinal to note that whilst the province is plagued with underlying key issues, many of which have been inherited from the scourge of Apartheid Planning, the effective redress of these inherent challenges, not only has the potential

to change the trajectory of the province, but to birth opportunity in areas of ailments. As such the province is plagued by the following key issues;

- Human settlements characterized by high levels of poverty and limited job creation, which result in an exponential increase in urbanization and informal settlements, as well poor accessibility, thereby rendering it extremely difficult to provide crucial health and social services to isolated rural communities
- Infrastructure development- numerous areas and towns are experiencing water shortages and inadequate electricity supply, with many villages relying on contaminated groundwater, unsuitable for human consumption.
- Connectivity and mobility- the vast distances within the province lead to high transport costs, which tend to trap the previously, marginalized into poverty traps, as well as a limited number of roads are paved, thereby limiting overall connectivity and mobility,
- Provincial resources- a high level of water use and environmental degradation is associated with mining or extractive industries, as well as continuous conflict between mining and agricultural land uses, and what is often found is that agriculture and mining activities, often take place within close proximity to environmentally sensitive areas. What is also found is vast distances and poor transit systems to and from tourist attractions within the province,

Vision

The vision of PSDF is as follows:

“Sustainable urban and rural spatial development based on a modern space economy supported by an integrated national and provincial infrastructure network and the responsible use of natural resources providing sustainable livelihoods for all”

The vision is focused on forging towards a more inclusive, productive, and resilient economic trajectory. At the core of the Northern Cape Spatial vision is sustainable urban and rural development, which is connected and aligned with the national and provincial infrastructure and a move towards more responsible use, of natural resources in order to bring about more sustainable livelihoods.

Spatial Structuring Elements

At the core of spatial structuring elements is the effective movement of people, goods and services. As such the following spatial structuring elements are encompassed in PSDF;

- The development and reinforcement of varied growth centres, with increased access to public transport, economic opportunities and social amenities.
- Growth centers in the form of urban regions e.g. Kimberly and regional growth centers viz. Kuruman and Upington
- Tourism nodes which represent growth centres with potential for agri-tourism, eco-tourism, botanical tourism, marine and coastal tourism, heritage tourism and adventure areas.
- Development corridors, which increase of levels of mobility and access and reduces spatial marginalisation
- Development zones which guide where development can take place within the province:

1.H. Local Perspective

The next section will address the bottom up approach of aligning the district SDF to the local municipal SDFs.

Dikgatlong Spatial Development Framework

The concept of democratization is one that is highly flawed in its interpretation, particularly as it is often limited to the science of politics. Democratization as a concept, however plays a fundamental role, not only as a pillar but as a guideline for the effective implementation of the Dikgatlong Spatial Development Framework, both as a forward planning tool , as well as a tool with the core objective of bringing about redress and reform. In so doing it is a framework which advocates for the redress of the socio-economic aspect through the spatial context, through the move towards inclusive, diverse spaces, that promote grass-root involvement and representation.



Key Issues Facing the Municipal Area

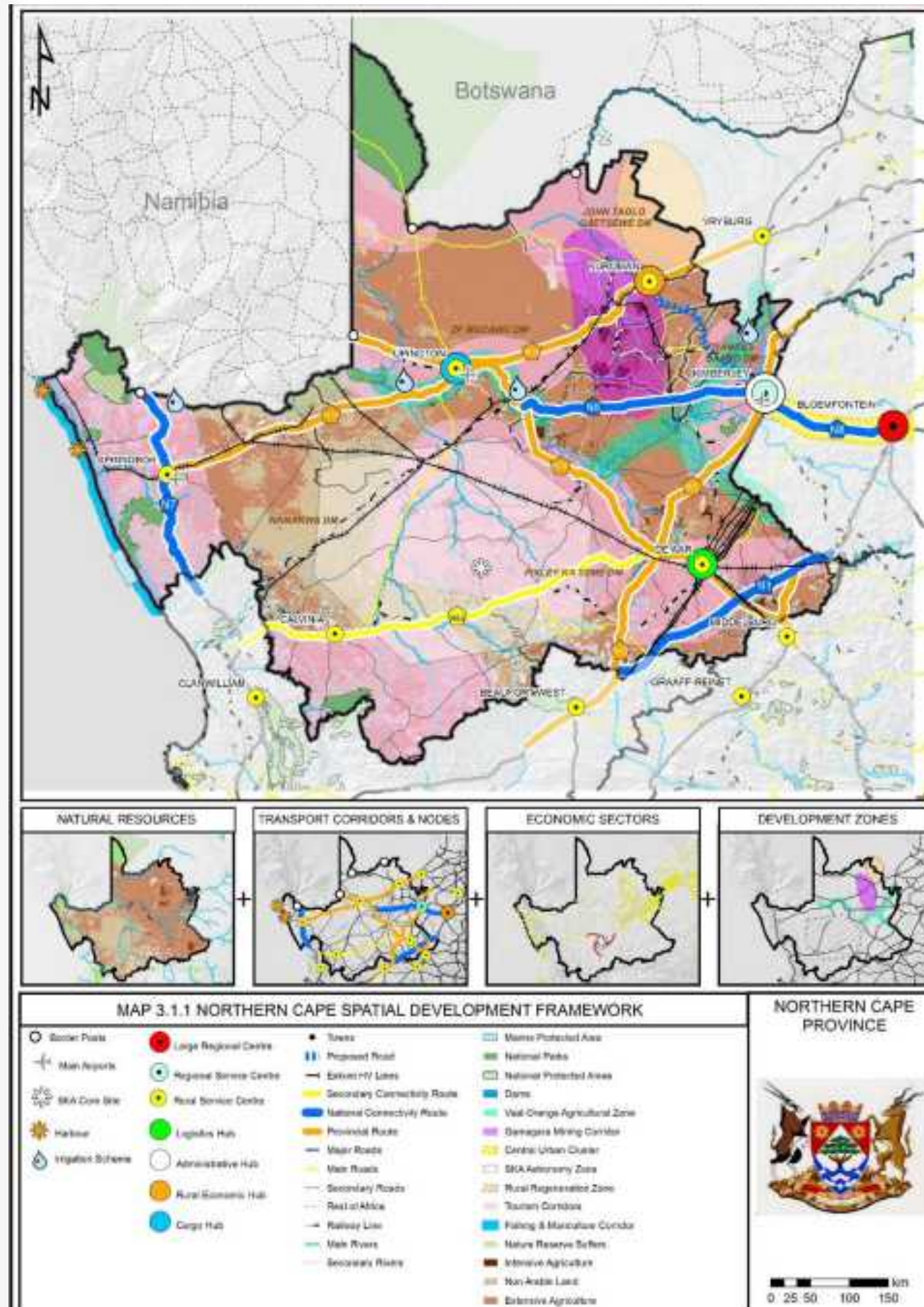
The following are highlighted as existing key issues facing the Dikgatlong Local Municipality:

- Old, degraded and poorly maintained infrastructure
- Rural Settlements are low-density, sparse, and inaccessible because of poor road infrastructure.
- Poor refuse removal and proper waste management system, resulting in blocked storm water and flooded streets in larger settlements
- High unemployment levels
- Lack of educational programs to teach people to work the land for food production
- Lack of sport and recreational facilities
- Land claims and former CPA are constraining planned development
- Lack of local production and SMME's trapped in low value markets

Vision

The vision statement for Dikgatlong is as follows:

“To become a financially viable municipality which plans for, implements and maintains the environment, facilities, services and infrastructure in a sustainable manner for all our communities thereby creating conditions in which there are employment and spatial land development opportunities”



The vision of Dikgatlong Local Municipality is centered on the sustainable address of socio-economic issues, inherent within the municipal area, through institutional development and transformation as well as methods that promote financial viability, good governance and public participation.

Spatial Structuring Elements

Bio regional Planning: Bio-regional planning has gained increasing importance in recent years as a methodology for simply and effectively addressing the issue of land use management in regional planning. Four main land use management zones or areas can be identified.

Nodes, Corridors and Linkages: The following areas are defined as the Nodes, Corridors and Linkages for Dikgatlong:

1. Barkly West (administrative, retail, mining agri-processing, manufacturing, storage, services and transport node);
2. Windsorton (mining and agricultural node);
3. Delportshoop (mining and agricultural node);
4. Longlands (mining node) and
5. ULCO (Mining and Industry)

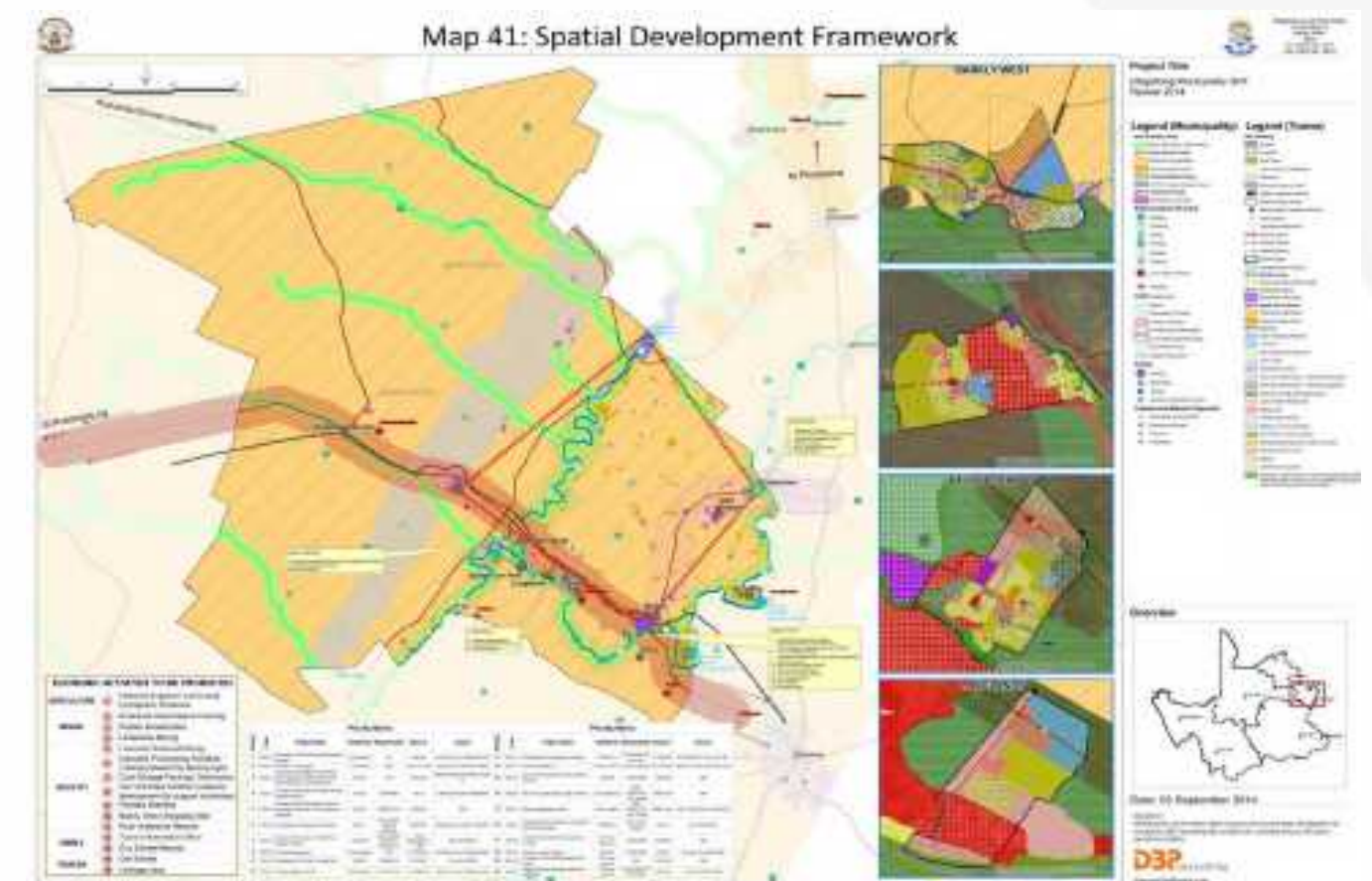
Protected and Development Restricted Areas: Dikgatlong SDF outlines the Protected areas as the MOSS areas within the LM as well as the Tourism-related Conservation areas which includes the following areas:

- Vaal and Harts Rivers and their riverine areas/buffers;
- Ghaap "mountain" plateau;
- Gong-Gong Falls;
- The Burial Sites of historical value.
- Glacial geological features, stone age art and recovered artifacts.

Part and parcel of ensuring that Dikgatlong Local Municipality achieves its key objectives is through the identification of the following strategic focus areas:

- Restructuring of all urban settlements
- Linking R31 settlements to the main road
- Periodic Market route
- Proposed Housing Projects
- Promoting non-motorised transport
- Mixed passenger services
- Agriculture, mining and bio-diversity conservation
- Point tourism related opportunities

The Dikgatlong SDF plan is shown below:



Magareng Spatial Development Framework

The fundamental component of any Spatial Development Framework is redress, through the uprooting and undoing of deeply entrenched spatial injustices as well as the negative trickle down effects, that are as a direct result of segregationist planning apparatus, utilized by the previous administration. The call towards the creation of spaces that are more heterogeneous and inclusive in nature, effectively incorporating, all the wants, needs and aspirations of all citizens, from all walks of life, is one which should ensure policy that simultaneously interrogates and actively denounces previous planning dogmas. Thus, an essential element of any Spatial Development Framework is one that engages in planning mechanisms that are forward in nature, but also have a retrospective element.



- Safety & Security
- Cemeteries
- One Stop Service Centres
- Rehabilitation of old mine dumps
- Waste Management

Spatial Structuring Elements

Magareng Local Municipality in identifying the following Spatial Structuring Elements that are to be adopted in the planning and design of settlements, emphasizes the importance of ensuring that this implementation process, is one that follows a sustainable development process;

- Urban edge
- Precincts
- Nodes
- Activity Corridors
- Activity Streets
- Municipal Open Space System
- Infill Planning & Densification
- Growth Areas
- Restructuring Towns

Key Proposals

The key proposals within Magareng Local Municipality entail an extension on the spatial elements identified through;

- Through the creation of regional, rural, urban and specialty nodes
- Through growth management strategies, that categories development particularly within residential areas within the long-term, short-term and medium-term developments
- Through the development of mixed-use developments areas
- Through the development of General Business Corridor

Vision

The vision of the Magareng Spatial Development Framework is an amalgamation of visions of a myriad of policies, all with core focus of enhancing the future through the alleviation of poverty, the attainment of socio-economic justice, through holistic spatial redress and the improvement of the quality of life of all inhabitants, through development initiatives that are sustainable in nature, and ensure minimum human footprint is left on the environment.

Key Issues facing the Province

After a series of community engagements, the community members of Magareng revealed the following spatial issues;

- Housing
- Sanitation
- Roads & Storm Water
- Water & Electricity
- Sports & Recreation
- Health Facilities
- Education & Social Development
- LED, food security & job creation

- The Magareng SDF is shown below:



Sol Plaatjies Spatial Development Framework

The Sol Plaatje Local Municipality intends to review and compile a detailed Spatial Development Framework (SDF) that is robust, sustainable and legally compliant with the provisions of Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA), 2013 and provide clear guidance for the development of the land use scheme through the land use framework.



Key Issues

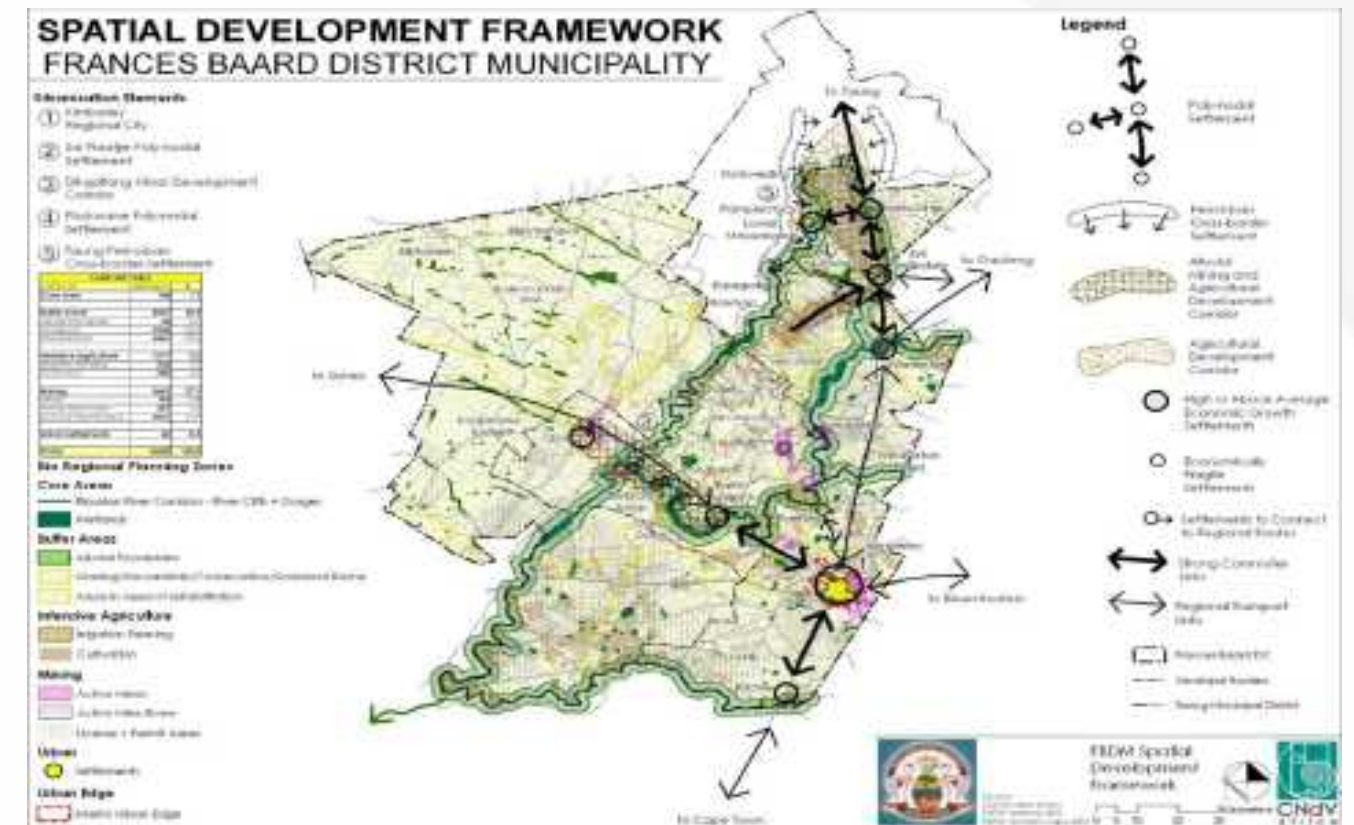
- High unemployment levels
- High poverty levels
- Substance abuse
- HIV/AIDS
- High illiteracy levels
- High crime rates
- Lack of support for SMME's
- Housing delivery
- Land availability

Vision

The following SDF vision was established and agreed upon: Sol Plaatje Municipality 2040 - "A Resilient Gateway City with innovation and heritage"

Objectives

- To develop a conceptual scenario for the envisaged spatial form.
- To foster and nurture more detailed spatial linkage plans for development
- To set out objectives that reflect the desired spatial form of the municipality.
- To develop a spatial vision and objective for the whole municipality.



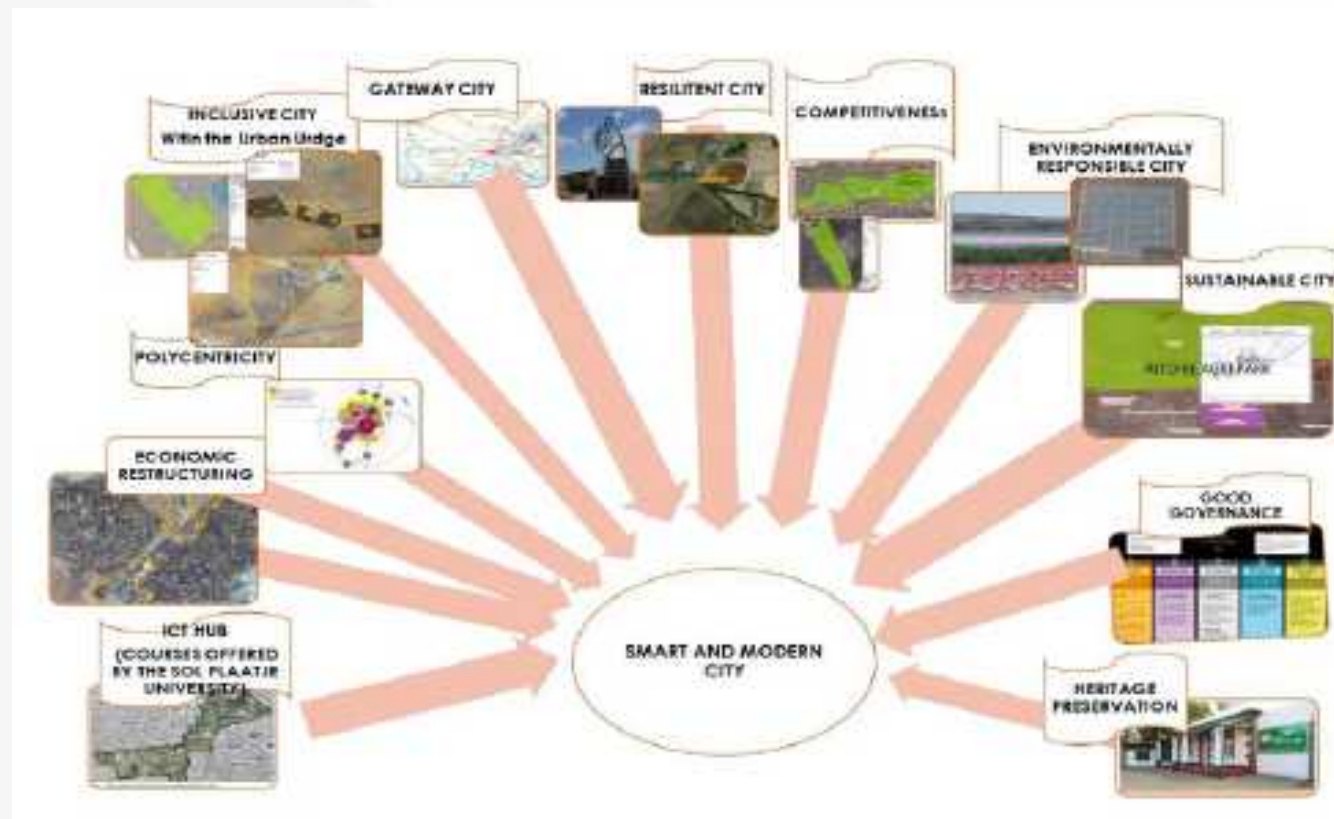
Strategies

- Integrated Urban Development Framework strategies
- The Sol Planning Integrated Development Plan
- Sol Plaatje Urban Network Strategy
- Disaster Management and Risk Reduction
- Sol Plaatje Local Municipality Tourism Strategy
- Sol Plaatje Local Municipality Local Economic Development Strategy

Spatial Structuring Elements

- Urban edge boundary
- Central area revitalisation
- Inner city node
- Functional areas

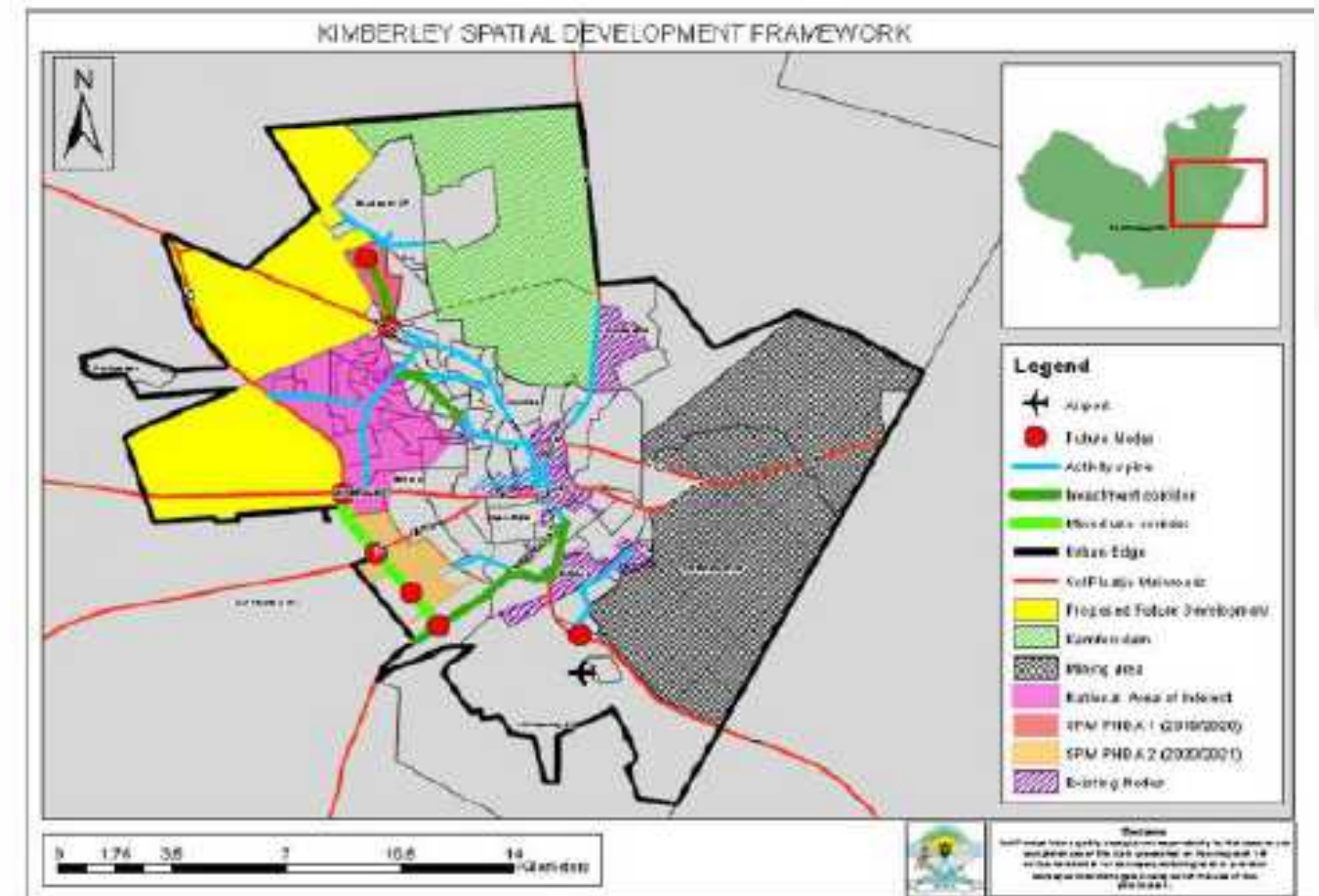
- Kimdustria regional area
- Diamond regional node
- Areas of densification & future growth
- Tourism Precinct
- Rural-urban linkages



Key Proposals

The key proposals within Magareng Local Municipality entail an extension on the spatial elements identified through:

- Foster a unique sense of place within the Sol Plaatje Municipality
- Promotion of Renewable Energy
- Revitalisation of Industrial Zones
- Areas of densification



Phokwane Spatial Development Framework

The following development objectives were formulated Phokwane SDF :

i. Objectives

Spatial development

- Promote a compact urban structure through urban infill and densification;
- Create a logical hierarchy of settlements to support effective service delivery;
- Create an urban edge to contain urban sprawl.

Housing

- Identify sufficient land for future housing development;
- Quantify housing backlogs and future needs;
- Locate new housing development within a rational urban structure and urban development boundary to ensure sustainable development;
- Enhance Nodal viability through development of housing in strategic locations.

Environment



- Protect ecologically sensitive natural areas;
- Protect Vaalharts irrigation scheme area;
- Respect the flood lines of the major rivers and dams;
- Capitalize on natural resources/tourism opportunities.

Transport

- Use transport system as method to develop Hartswater, Pampierstad and Jan Kempdorp as a “social city”

Service infrastructure

- Locate urban development, specifically housing development, within reach of bulk municipal services

Community Facilities

- A hierarchy of community facilities should be developed to cater for the needs of either a local community or a broader region;
- Community facilities must be developed in line with the nodal importance of settlements. Mobile facilities should be utilized to support isolated communities;
- Community facilities must be provided according to accepted planning and development standards and guidelines.

Economic infrastructure

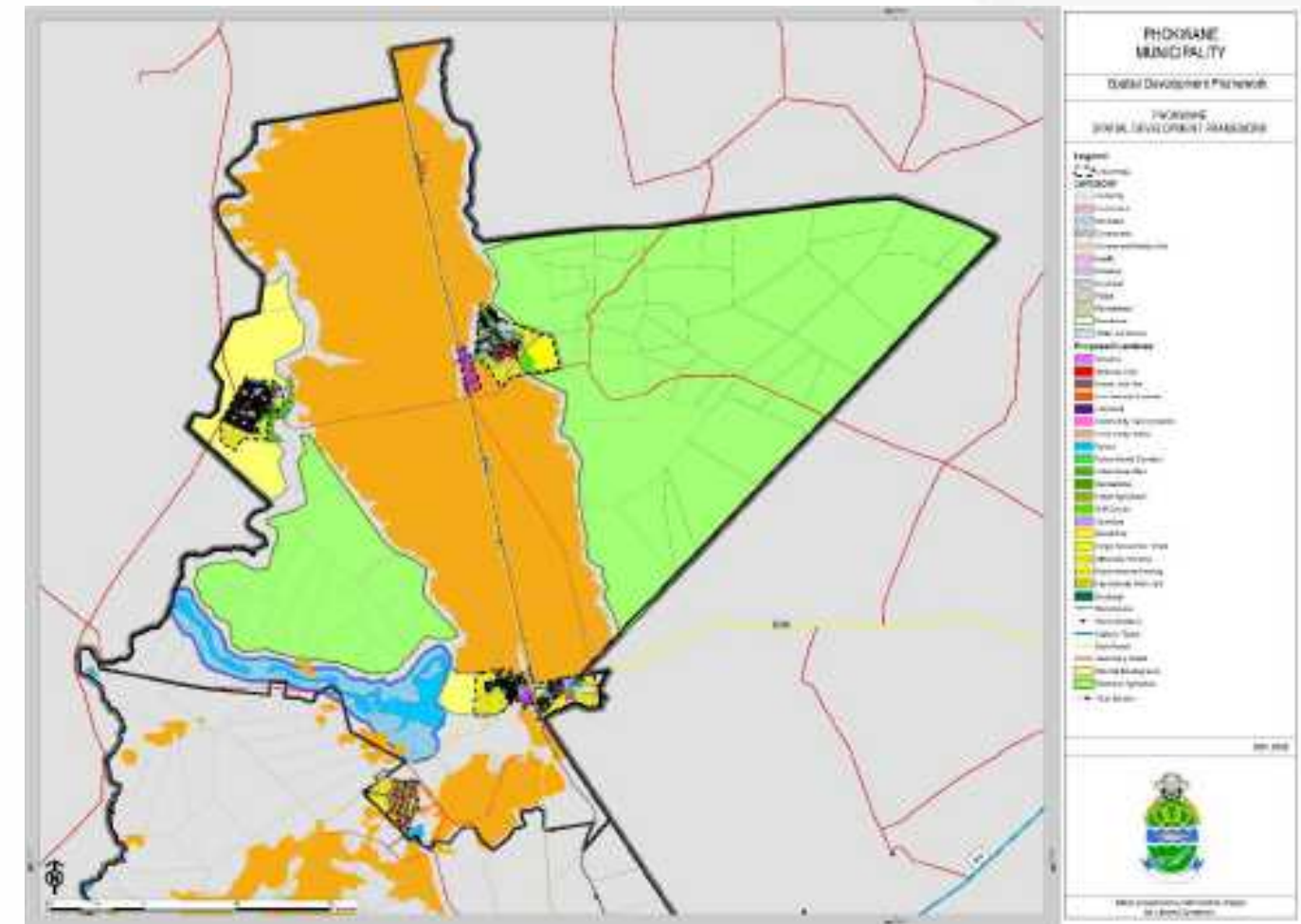
- Business: Create a viable business node hierarchy linked to service delivery centres and to Sustain the Hartswater CBD as the core economic centre of the Municipality area.

Tourism

- Identify and develop tourism facilities which would support the local, national, and international tourism market;
- Be realistic in terms of the potential for tourism in Hartswater;
- Focus on Agri-Tourism.

Agriculture

- Identify and protect high-potential agricultural land from urban encroachment;
- Promote beneficiation of agricultural products to broaden the economic base.





CHAPTER 02

Status Quo

2 A Socio Economic Framework

The Frances Baard District Municipality (FBDM) is a category C municipality and forms part of the five (5) District Municipalities of the Northern Cape Province. FBDM shares its northern boundary with the North West Province and its eastern boundary with the Free State province.

Furthermore, FBDM comprises of four local municipalities: Dikgatlong, Magareng, Phokwane and Sol Plaatje local municipalities. The district Municipality is located in Kimberley, which is less than 500 km away from Johannesburg in the North, less than 1000 km away from Cape Town in the South, and less than 800 km away from the port of Duran in the East. The map on the right illustrates the location of the Frances Baard district in which Kimberly is shown.

The main Economic sectors of the District are as follows:

- Community Services: 28%;
- Finance: 22%.
- Trade: 15%.
- Transport 12%.
- Mining 10%.
- Agriculture: 4%;
- Manufacturing: 4%;
- Construction 3%; and
- Electricity 2%.

2 A.1 Demographic Assessment

According to Statistics South Africa, the total number of people who reside within the District amounts to 382 086, with people of all ages and population groupings.

According to Statistics South Africa the district is predominantly characterised by a young population, which is divided into the following strata; -

- 0-14 years of age making 29.6% of the total population
- 15- 34 years of age making 35.6% of the total population
- 35-64 years of age making 29.3% of the total population
- 65 + years of age making up 5.5% of the total population

According to Statistics South Africa, Community Survey 2011, the total population of the Municipalities were as follows: -

Municipality	2011
Sol Plaatjies Local Municipality	248 041
Dikgatlong Local Municipality	46 841
Magareng Local Municipality	24 204
Phokwane Local Municipality	63 000

Table 3: Municipal Total Population

When making a comparison with the status for the Northern Cape province, the following total population has been identified:

Northern Cape Province	2011
TOTAL POPULATION	1,146 00 00

Table 4: Northern Cape Total Population

Through this representation, we are able to see that 33.34% of the population of the Northern Cape resides in FBDM.

Age Structure

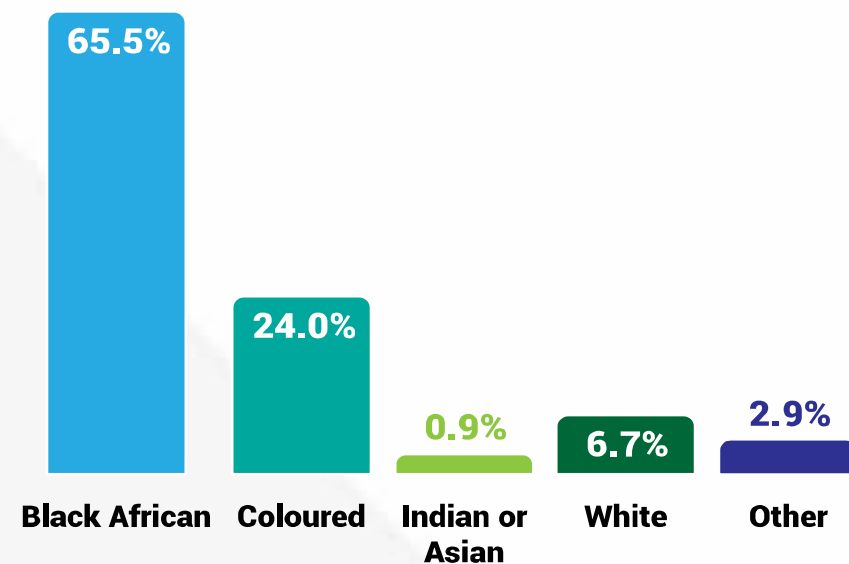
The FBDM shows a significant proportion of youth dependency.

The age structure shown alongside illustrates that a total of 64,9% of the population are of the 'working age' grouping. 29.6% of the population are under the age of 15 years, while only 5.5% of the population are pensioners over the age of 65 years.

3A1.2 Population Group

The Municipality had a total population of 387 741 persons in 2011, of this total, 65.5% are Black African, 24.0% are coloured, 0.9% are Indian/ Asian, 6.7% are White and 2.9% are other. The Black African population accounts for 65.5% of the entire population. The chart below provides a visual distribution of the racial groups within the Municipal area.

POPULATION GROUP



Gender Split

The split between males and females, in 2011 within the Frances Baard District Municipality, was 48,5% and 51,5%, respectively. This indicates a fairly even split between the two sex groups, as one sex group does not significantly dominate the other. However, there are 3% more females than males within the District jurisdiction. The figure below depicts the percentage of females versus the percentage of males in the respective local municipalities within the jurisdiction of the FBDM, as per Statistics South Africa Census of 2011.

SOL PLAATJIE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

	2011	Percentage (%)	2016	Percentage (%)
Male	119 060	48%	120210	48
Female	128 981	52%	127830	52

DIKGATLONG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

	2011	Percentage (%)	2016	Percentage (%)
Male	22 952	49%	23061	49
Female	23 889	51%	23778	51

MAGARENG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

	2011	Percentage (%)	2016	Percentage (%)
Male	11 618	48%	11733	48
Female	12 586	52%	12474	52

PHOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

	2011	Percentage (%)	2016	Percentage (%)
Male	30 240	48%	30489	48
Female	32 760	52%	32508	52

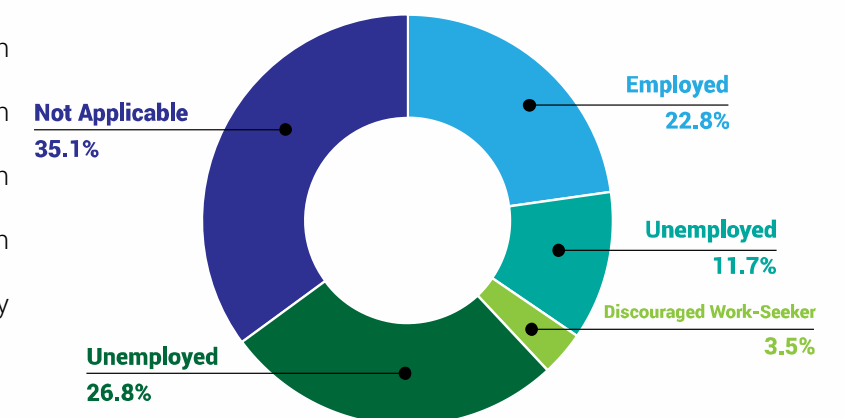
Table 5: Gender Split Comparison

Employment Status

A total of 26.8% of the population of FBDM are not economically active. This is a fairly high percentage when considering that an additional 43.9% of the population which makes up youth unemployment rate, between the ages of 15 and 34 are economically inactive.

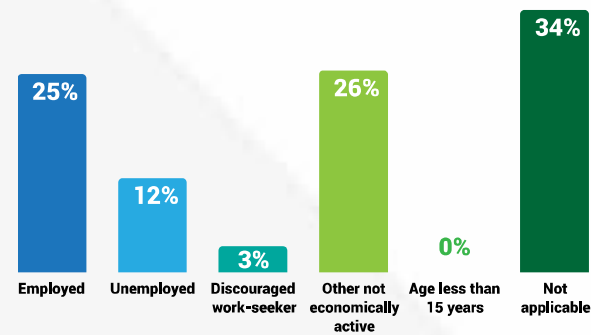
The figures below give a graphical representation of the employment status within the local municipalities under the jurisdiction of FBDM: -

EMPLOYMENT STATUS



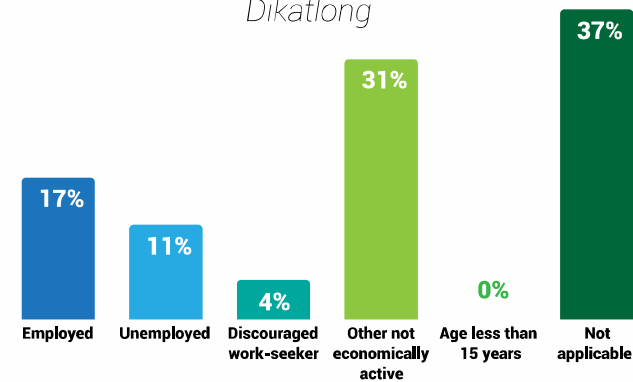
EMPLOYMENT STATUS

Sol Plaatjie



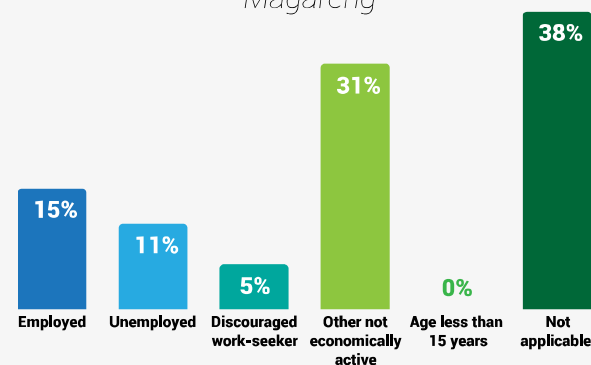
EMPLOYMENT STATUS

Dikatleng



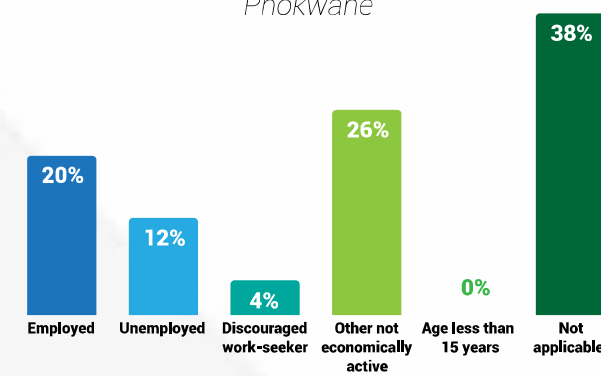
EMPLOYMENT STATUS

Magareng



EMPLOYMENT STATUS

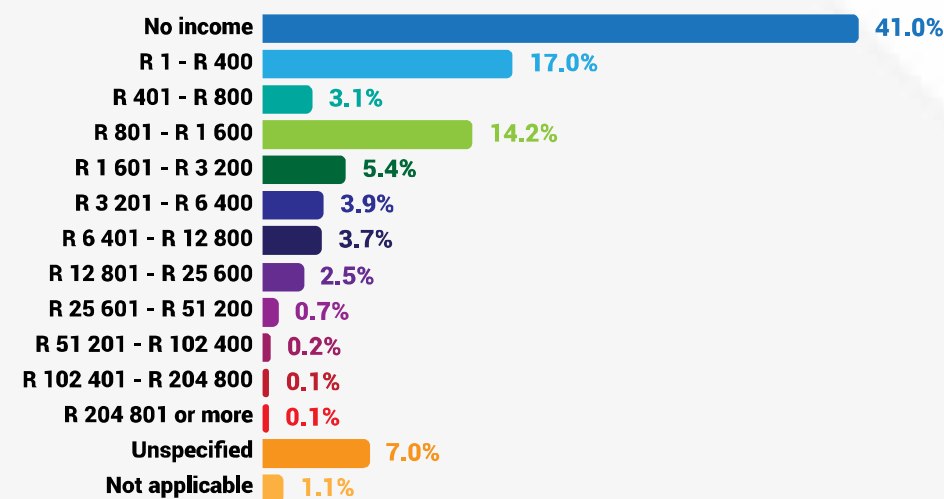
Phokwane



Individual Monthly Income

It is interesting to note that 41.0% of the population of FBDM who are of working age, do not earn an income at all. This is a significant figure to note.

INDIVIDUAL MONTHLY INCOME



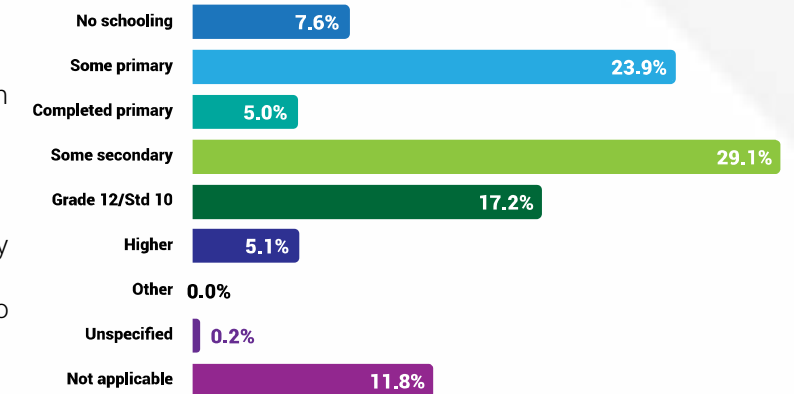
Education Level

It is interesting to note that only a small proportion of the population of FBDM has no schooling.

Statistics South Africa (2011) illustrates that 29.1% of the population has some secondary schooling, 17.2% has a Grade 12 certificate and 5.1% is in possession of a higher certificate.

It therefore becomes important to interrogate why a significant proportion of the population has no individual monthly income.

EDUCATION LEVEL



Household Dynamics

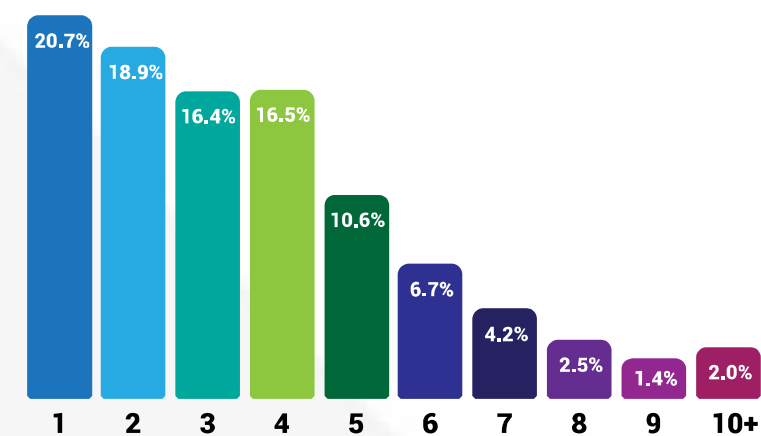
The household dynamics of FBDM are characterised by the average size of the household, the tenure status and the type of dwelling of the population.

It is important to note that FBDM is characterised by predominantly small household sizes, with Statistics South Africa (2011) illustrating that 72,5% of the population has a household size of a maximum of four people.

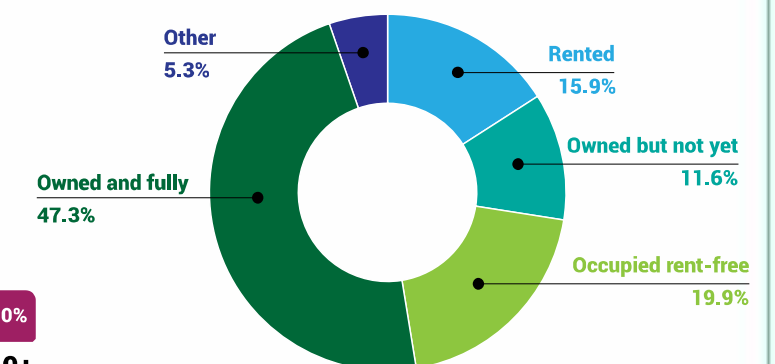
It is also interesting to note that a large proportion of the population live in standalone houses, which are owned fully.

Below is a graphical representation of the aforesaid household dynamics: -

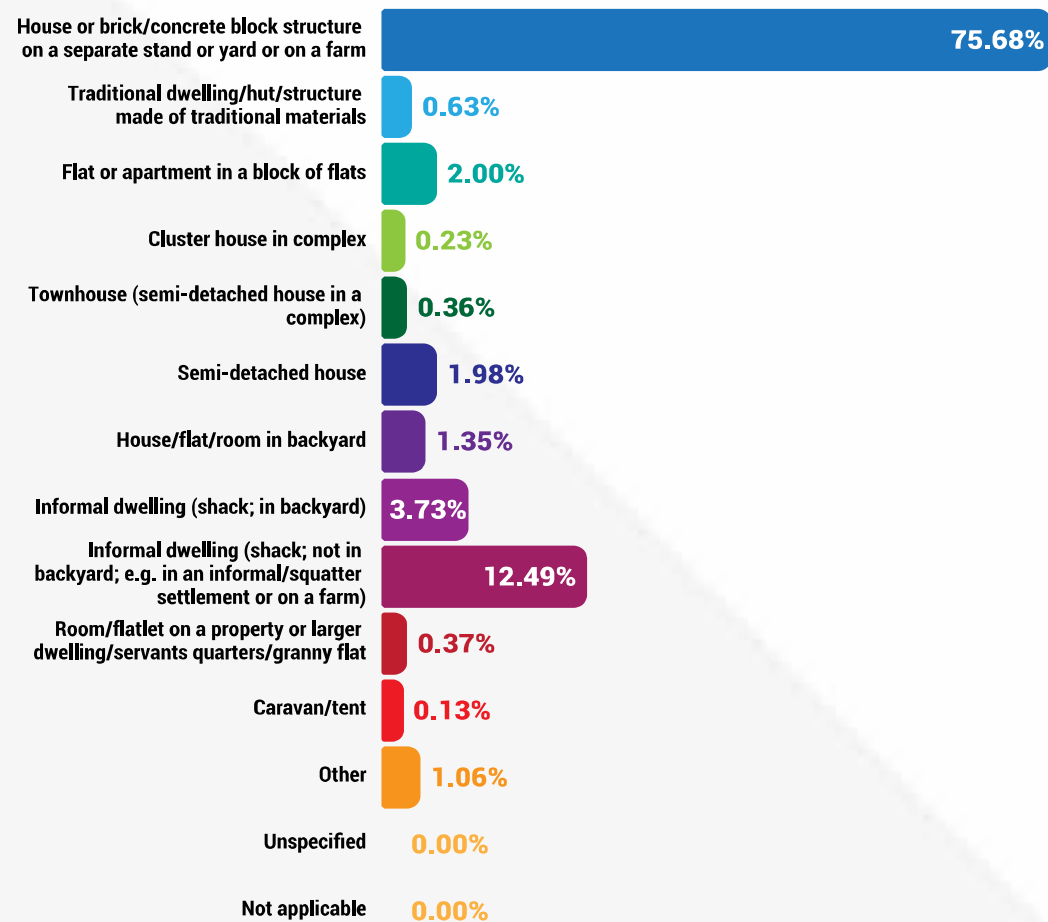
HOUSEHOLD SIZE



TENURE STATUS



TYPE OF MAIN DWELLING



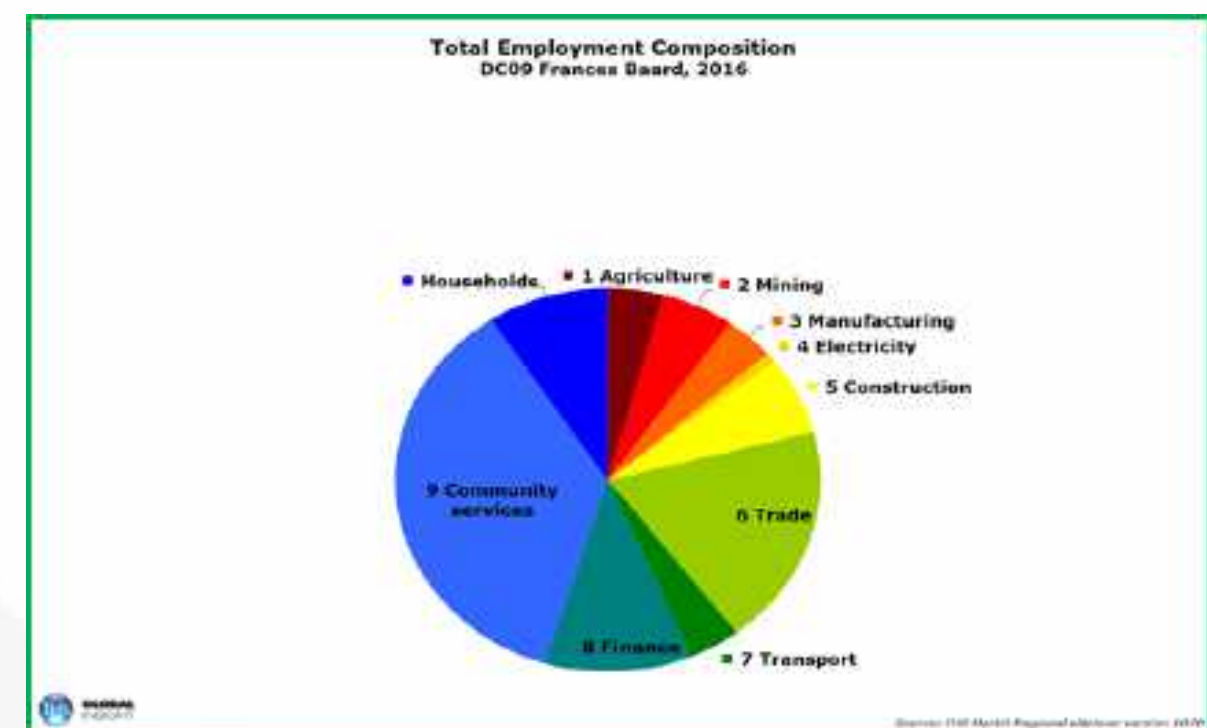
Implications

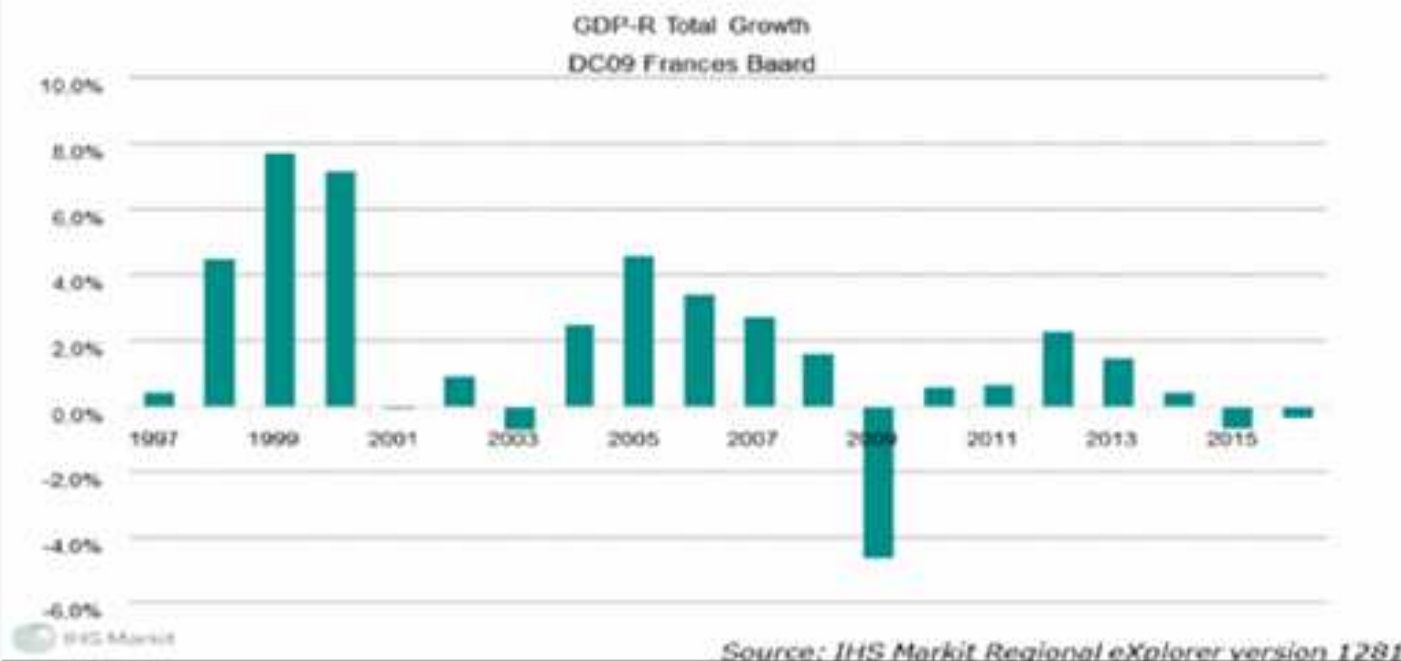
The above-mentioned demographics assists with understanding the types of population that exists within the district in order to adequately plan for this population. The demographics above illustrate a population pyramid that constitutes of a predominately young population, which remains chronically unemployed. Furthermore, the demographics illustrate a relatively learned population, however almost half of this population is unable to make any income. This is one of the contributing factors to a declining population which results in an outward migration. The SDF will therefore have to analyse the aforesaid, as well as other factors which may contribute to curbing outward migration, alleviating poverty, ensuring job creation, and promoting sustainable development.

The Frances Baard District has the strongest economic potential in the Northern Cape, accounting for 36% of the provincial GDP. The graph below depicts that the economy of the district consists of the primary sector (14%) (agriculture and mining), secondary sector (9%) (Manufacturing, electricity and construction) and tertiary sector (77%) (Trade, transport, financial and social services). The economic growth of the District has also not been a steady one. The graph below provides a clear description of the fluctuation of the economic growth.

In 2006 the GDP was 3.4% which saw a steady decline in 2009 to -4% due to the global recession. The slow growth from 2010 to 2012 was due to the global recession recovery and slow production in the primary and secondary sectors. Economic growth decreased from 2013 where it was 1.4% and in 2014 and 2015 to 0.4% and 0.3% respectively (see figure 6). This is due to a decline in domestic growth which severely affects the buying power of consumers in Frances Baard District which is a predominantly the services sector.

The District is still characterized by high rate of unemployment (39.4%). Phokwane (47.8%), Magareng (53.9%), Dikgatlong (44%) and Sol Plaatje (36.2%) as illustrated in figure 7. FBDM, through its local economic development initiatives seek to address such issues and improve the state of unemployment levels in the district.





2 A.2 Tourism Profile

The Northern Cape according to DEAT (2004,9) is divided into the following five tourism regions. These include:

- the Diamond Fields with its historic and cultural heritage;
- the Green Kalahari with the impressive Orange River and Augrabies Falls;
- the Kalahari with its hot and dry desert landscapes;
- the Karoo region with its distinct semi-arid landscapes, sheep farms and fossil treasures; and
- Namakwa with its spring flowers and rugged coastline.

The Diamond Fields region is within the FBDM area. According to DEAT (2004, 22) the “Diamond Fields” is probably most famous for the Big Hole and its mining heritage. Kimberley, the provincial capital boasts a modern infrastructure and a wealth of museums, monuments, and other historic and cultural heritage attractions. Other principle features of the region include the Nooitgedacht Glacial Pavings near Barkley West, the impressive Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme near Hartswater, and a number of hunting venues and historic battle sites located throughout the region.”

Entertainment in the Northern Cape relates mainly to urban facilities such as cinemas, casinos, theatres and performing arts, with the largest concentration of such facilities in situated in major towns like Kimberley and Upington. The Flamingo Casino is situated in Kimberley.

The Northern Cape hosts a number of successful cultural festivals and a few smaller agricultural shows. The key cultural events include the Gariep Kunstefees (Kimberley), Kalahari Kuierfees and the Calvinia Vleisfees. While the Gariep Kunstefees, the youngest of these festivals, is one of the largest and has grown from 15 000 visitors in 2000 to approximately 200 000 visitors in 2004. The Kalahari Kuierfees and Calvinia Vleisfees are smaller and attract approximately 15 000 and 8 000 visitors, respectively. Fishing, in particular fly fishing for Yellow Fish, is growing along the Vaal River in the Diamond Fields region as a nature based tourism activity.

2 A.3 District Health Analysis

1 Health Analysis

The analysis of the social determinants of health is a critical exercise in district health planning, in that it provides an indication of the burden of non-health factors on the provision of health services. Key factors that are considered consist of, but not limited, to the following:

- Unemployment rate;
- Percentage of population living below the poverty line per month;
- Number of households with access to portable water;
- Number of households in informal dwellings;
- Number of households in traditional structures;
- Number of households with access to electricity; and
- Adult literacy rate.

The social determinants of health listed above seem not to be major contributors to the overall district disease profile. Numerous factors converge to contribute to the poor health outcomes in the Frances Baard District. Amongst others are the phenomena of migrant labourers; poor health lifestyle and behaviour patterns (i.e. substance abuse, lack of physical fitness and dietary patterns); and environmental conditions.

A. The Epidemiological (disease) Profile of the District

The ten major prevalent causes of death in the Frances Baard District are the following:

- Tuberculosis (TB);
- Human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] disease;
- Influenza and pneumonia;

- Cerebrovascular diseases;
- Hypertensive diseases;
- Ischaemic heart disease;
- Other forms of heart diseases;
- Certain disorders involving the immune mechanism;
- Chronic lower respiratory diseases; and
- Other natural causes.

The number one cause of death in 2015/2016 was HIV/AIDS, currently TB has taken superiority. This change is attributed to the decrease in the HIV & AIDS prevalence rate overall in the province and in the district, which in turn is credited to the success of the Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission (PMTCT) Program. This is evident in the decrease of infant HIV positivity rate.

An emerging matter of serious concern about the quadruple burden of disease is the rise in the non-communicable diseases which is evident in the district. This requires that different stakeholders implement different interventions that are aimed at reducing the fatalities of non-communicable diseases. Important in this regard will have to be the expansion and strengthening of preventative strategies such as health promotion.

Table 3: Primary Health Care Facilities

Local Municipality	No of Clinics	No of Community Health Centres (CHCs)	No of Satellite Clinics	No of Mobile Clinics
Sol Plaatje	12	1	1	1
Dikgatlong	5	0	2	1
Phokwane	5	2	0	2
Magareng	3	1	0	0
Total	25	4	3	2

B. The District Health Service Delivery Environment

The Sol Plaatje Local Municipality is the only municipality that has health facilities that still belong to the local municipality, although the majority of personnel, medical and non-medical equipment and pharmaceutical supplies

are provided by the Northern Cape Department of Health. Discussions between the Sol Plaatje Local Municipality and the Northern Cape Department of Health, in an endeavour to transfer the provision of health services are underway.

There are only two district hospitals in the Frances Baard District (Connie Vorster Memorial Hospital – Phokwane and Prof. Z.K. Matthews - Dikgatlong), which puts a heavy burden and increased cost to Kimberley Hospital, which is a Tertiary Hospital. The principles of health system effectiveness and efficiency are gravely compromised by this arrangement. Proportional analysis of the services rendered to the broader population of the district means that the two district hospitals service less than half the size of the district. For health care planning purposes, this implies that whilst looking at a long-term solution of building a district hospital in the Sol Plaatje Local Municipality, the department needs to move with the necessary speed to ensure the full operationalization of Galeshewe Day Hospital as a 24-Hour Centre and the proper capacitation of other PHC facilities in the district. Table 3 below shows the number of PHC facilities in the district.

Table 4: Primary Health Care Service Volumes

Name of Local Municipality	Financial Year 2014/15		Financial Year 2015/16	
	PHC Total Headcount	PHC utilization rate	PHC Total Headcount	PHC utilization rate
Dikgatlong	117 280	2.5	116 775	2.5
Magareng	75 041	3.0	62 424	2.5
Phokwane	188 128	3.0	170 649	2.7
Sol Plaatje	654 706	2.7	549 297	2.2
District Total	1 035 155	2.8	899 145	2.4

Source: DHIS Pivot Tables

C. Trends in Key District Health Service Volumes

The decline in the Primary Health Care total headcounts in all the Local Municipalities as illustrated in table 4 is a positive indication of the success in the implementation of the ICSM Strategy. This is a positive trend, which can be perceived as effectiveness of the Ideal Clinic (ICRM) initiative and it can be expected that the patients' experience of care is also improving. We should expect the continuity in the decline trend as the district intensifies its ICRM strategies.

2 A.4 Disaster Analysis

The following table describes the major risks and disasters that may occur within the district. The table indicates the risks and hazards identified during the compilation of the District Disaster Management Plan. These risks were identified by communities residing within the Frances Baard District Municipality's jurisdiction and were also identified as high priority risks within the local municipalities.

Table 5: Areas for Potential Disasters in the District

MAGARENG	DIKGATLONG	SOL PLAATJE	PHOKWANE
Drought	Drought	Drought	Floods
Floods	Floods	Flash Floods	Veld Fires
Veld Fires	Veld Fire	Dust Pollution	Hazardous Ammunition Depo
Dam failure	Dam Failure	Dam Failure	Dam Failure
Weather Related	Weather Related	Weather Related	Weather Related
Accidents N/12	Accidents R38	Accidents N12	Accidents N18
		Air Craft	Air Craft

2 A.5 Status Quo Assessment: Basic Service Delivery

The District Municipality (DM) through the Programme Management and Advisory Services Unit and the Housing Unit continues to support the three local municipalities, i.e. Dikgatlong, Magareng and Phokwane in infrastructure services and developing human settlements and working towards accelerating the delivery of sustainable human settlements within the district. The DM does not have any functions in direct service delivery but provides support and capacity through the above-mentioned units.

Water and Sanitation

The FBDM provides assistance to the local municipalities with operation and maintenance funding for water and sanitation to assist in the eradicating of backlogs. Access to water is a constitutional right to everyone as stipulated by Section 27 (b) of the Constitution of South Africa 1996. Municipalities are mandated by amongst others the Municipal Structure Act 1998, the Municipal Structures Amendment Act 2000 and the Water Services Act 1999, to provide potable water to households within their areas of jurisdiction.

According to the Census 2011 survey by Statistics SA, it is estimated that about 5 493 households in the district have no access to water and about 16 317 households lack access to proper sanitation.

Electricity and Energy

The availability of energy remains a serious resource challenge. In the last ten years the communities' access to electricity has significantly improved. Census 2011 survey indicates that over 85% of the households in the district have access to electricity for lighting. This leaves a gap of 14 743 households. FBDM has funded the electricity master plans for Dikgatlong, Magareng and Phokwane to help improve planning.

Roads and Storm Water

The Rural Road Asset Management System (RRAMS) in the district will become partly operational in 2019. FBDM is currently part of this programme initiated by the national Department of Roads. The aim of this system is to provide information about the roads assets in local municipalities as well as conditional assessments. This will become an important tool to lobby for funding of future roads' projects.

Through the RRAMS programme it has already been established that there are about 2 085 km of gravel roads and about 975 km of paved roads as part of the municipalities' street networks. FBDM's grader operating team assist with maintenance of gravel streets in the local municipalities.

HOUSING

The Housing Unit continues to support the three local municipalities, i.e. Dikgatlong, Magareng and Phokwane in developing human settlements and work towards accelerating the delivery of sustainable human settlements within the district.

Service Level Agreements

The district continues to assist the three local municipalities with the administration of the subsidy process, the subsidy applications in terms of the Housing Subsidy System and the National Housing Needs Register. This is done in line with the Service Level Agreements (SLA's) with Dikgatlong, Magareng and Phokwane. The SLA's put the onus on the district municipality as a municipality accredited at level 2 to facilitate the development of sustainable human settlements within the local municipalities.

Consumer Education

The educating of consumers on the human settlements processes and their responsibilities as homeowners continues to be an essential part of the human settlements programme. The district municipality will continue to plan for and conducted eight (8) Housing Consumer Education Workshops as part of the sustainable human settlement's development process.

Local Municipalities

The district and local municipalities continue to work collectively to ensure that the human settlements projects are completed within the specified timeframes. Support to the three local municipalities in the development of sustainable human settlements will continue by the Frances Baard District Municipality.

Dikgatlong Local Municipality

The Delportshoop 217 project is progressing well and several houses are already under construction. The project suffered some setbacks with labour disputes, but this was resolved, and the project is back on track for completion in 2019.

Magareng Local Municipality

The Ikhutseng 1000 housing project continues with the emphasis remaining on the completion of phases 2 and 3 of the project. The process to develop the military veterans' houses is in progress and it is envisaged that construction will start in 2020.

Phokwane Local Municipality

The Kingston 685 project continues to be hampered by slow construction progress. The district will continue to support this project.

Overall Challenges:

- The cost to eradicate backlogs is high and increasing annually.
- Municipalities in the district depend mainly on grant funding for infrastructure provision.
- The Blue and Green Drop percentages have also generally improved, but no Blue or Green Drop was achieved.

The number of capacitated and skilled personnel in municipalities must be increased.

- FBDM also provides assistance with O&M funding, management of the O&M of electricity services in some municipalities still needs to improve.
- Some municipalities struggle to pay their Eskom accounts which leads to disconnections and disruption of services.
- Some renewable energy projects have been implemented.
- In the very rural areas, the availability of bulk electricity makes connecting households difficult.
- Except for Phokwane LM, there are no road master plans for the different municipalities. Municipalities also do not have sufficient funds to budget adequately for maintenance of streets and storm water.
- Municipalities do not have sufficient equipment for road maintenance and spend large amounts on hiring of these needed road works machinery.
- The conditions of provincial gravel roads within the district have deteriorated over the years due to the following reasons: -
 - Insufficient funds allocated for road maintenance by the provincial departments.
 - Continuous breakdowns of road work machinery.
 - Increased traffic volume – has a negative influence on especially gravel roads.

2 A.6 Local Economic Development Local Economic Development

Local Economic Development (LED) is an outcome; it is a continuous developmental process based on local initiative and driven by local stakeholders. It involves identifying and using local resources ideas and skills to stimulate economic growth and development.

The aim of LED is to create an enabling environment that stimulates and fosters employment creation, entrepreneurial opportunities for residents, alleviate poverty and redistribute resources and opportunities to the benefit of all residents.

The purpose of Local Economic Development is to build up the capacity of a local area to improve its economic future and the quality of life for all. It is a process by which government, the private sector, labour, and civil society work collectively to create better conditions for economic growth and employment generation.

Local economic development encourages public, private, and civil society sectors to establish partnerships and collaboratively find local solutions to common economic challenges. The LED process seeks to empower local participants to effectively utilize business enterprise, labour, capital and other local resources to achieve local priorities (e.g. to promote quality jobs, reduce poverty, generate municipal taxes etc). For LED to be successful, participants and practitioners should have knowledge of these actions and be committed to a process to achieve sustainable results.

The district economy is still very much primary based and skewed towards the Sol Plaatje municipality economy. Sol Plaatje alone is responsible for just under 80% of the value addition in the district while the secondary sector contributes only around 7%. There are LED Priority issues planned to grow and develop the district economy. Some of these initiatives are:

- Establishment of economic clusters;
- Establishment of incubation hubs in all local municipalities;
- Establishment of an Agri-park inclusive of the Farmer Production Support Units (FPSU) and the Rural Urban Market Centre (Sol Plaatje fresh produce market);
- Establishment of Business Support centres (SMMEs support one stop centres) in Magareng and Dikgatlong local municipalities (Phokwane one is completed);
- Support and development of SMMEs;
- Local Trade and investment promotion;
- Product development and marketing of locally produced products;
- Entrepreneurship promotion and development;
- Promotion and support of township economies; and
- Informal economy support program

Overall Challenges:

- Diversification of the District economy

The Secondary sector (Manufacturing, Electricity, gas and water and Construction) creates low number of jobs in the district and the sector's job absorption is erratic having employed 14 339 in 1996, 7 769 in 2011 to 9 445 in 2015. This was job losses of 6 570 jobs over the period 1996 to 2011 and an increase of 1 677 between 2011 and 2015. This emphasises the fact that manufacturing and construction industries are quite small in the district and are not attracting investments.

Fixed capital investment in manufacturing and mining has stagnated, indicating that Frances Baard and its surrounds is not considered a major manufacturing area that attracts long term fixed capital investment.

This picture needs to drastically change if the district is to create the needed jobs and have a diversified economy. Diversifying the economy aims to maximize return by investing in different areas that would each react differently to the same economic shock(s).

- Low Skills Levels

The lack of appropriately skilled people is one of South Africa's principal drivers of the high unemployment rate. There has been clear evidence of a shift in the profile of the main economic sectors of the country over the past 2 decades, characterised by a decline in the share of primary and secondary sectors (which are labour intensive and can absorb unskilled labour) and an increase in the Tertiary sector (which requires skilled labour). This shift is also true for the FBDM, as seen in the production profile of the District. Given that the largest employers in the FBDM come from the tertiary sector, almost half of the people employed in the District are skilled (41.8%); there is however a large portion that is Semi- and Unskilled (36.1%).

A breakdown of the local municipal level shows that just less than 50% of Sol Plaatje's workforce is skilled and interestingly, this LM has the highest portion of highly skilled labour in the district, at 24.9%. The percentage of semi- and unskilled labour is highest within the Dikgatlong, Magareng and Phokwane LMs, at 57.2%, 41.7% and 54.7% respectively.

Skills development is very critical if we are to grow at levels we desire and can absorb labour from the district. Skills levels are also a critical determinant of which industries we can realistically target and be competitive in. Because of this, skills development is identified in the LED strategy as one the most important areas that the District must improve.

- Low Economies of scale

Frances Baard has small household sizes with 21% of household living one person, 19% 2 people, 16% three people, 17% four people and household with five plus sizes making up only 27% of households. The district population density is 30.62 people per Km2 which is quite low and thus necessitates that the production and output of the district needs to be more focused for export purposes, this can be both within SA and or abroad.

- Poor infrastructure for businesses

Infrastructure is critical for the development and growth of any business. Access to infrastructure generally enables and gives a location competitive or comparative advantage over other areas, especially if the infrastructure can reduce the costs of doing business. In creating an enabling environment for businesses, it thus becomes critical for local government to ensure that there is sufficient business infrastructure to support businesses. This can be termed economic infrastructure and ranges from access to affordable and conducive office and workshop space, roads, dams etc.

- Poor coordination and support for LED

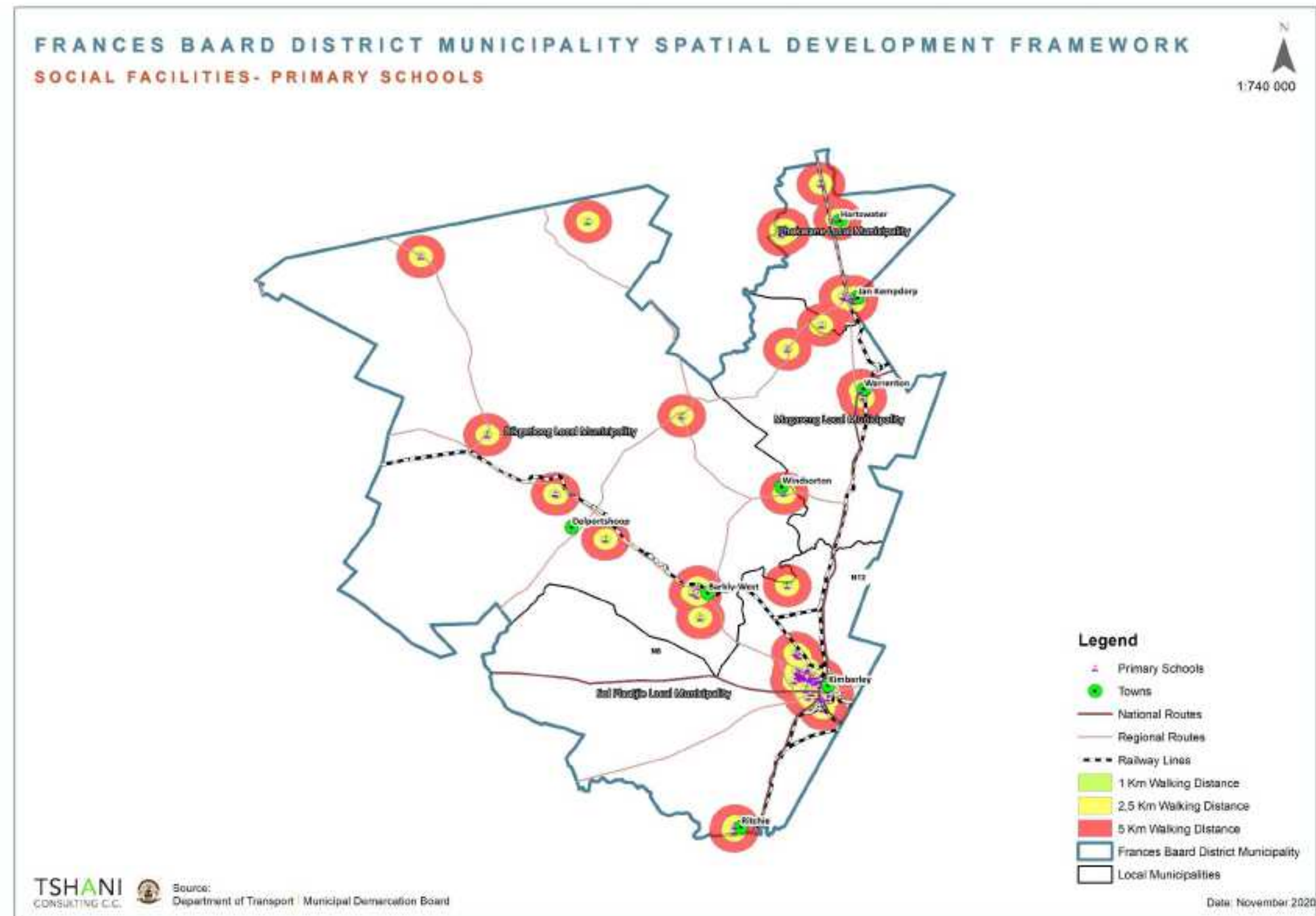
All the LMs are currently implementing LED strategies that they adopted. All LMS and the FBDM have functional but not effective LED forums structures. The participation of private sector is lacking, and this renders the LED forums ineffective. There is a lot of working in silos as it relates to sector development and support, as a result the rand value or investment into the different sectors by Government and development agencies is diluted.

2 B. Social Facilities Assessment

An assessment of the Social Facilities creates an understanding of what social facilities are present in the district and where they are located. When overlaying this with the settlements, we are able to see the areas that are serviced by each facility. This helps to identify the areas where these facilities are required.

2.B.1. Primary Schools

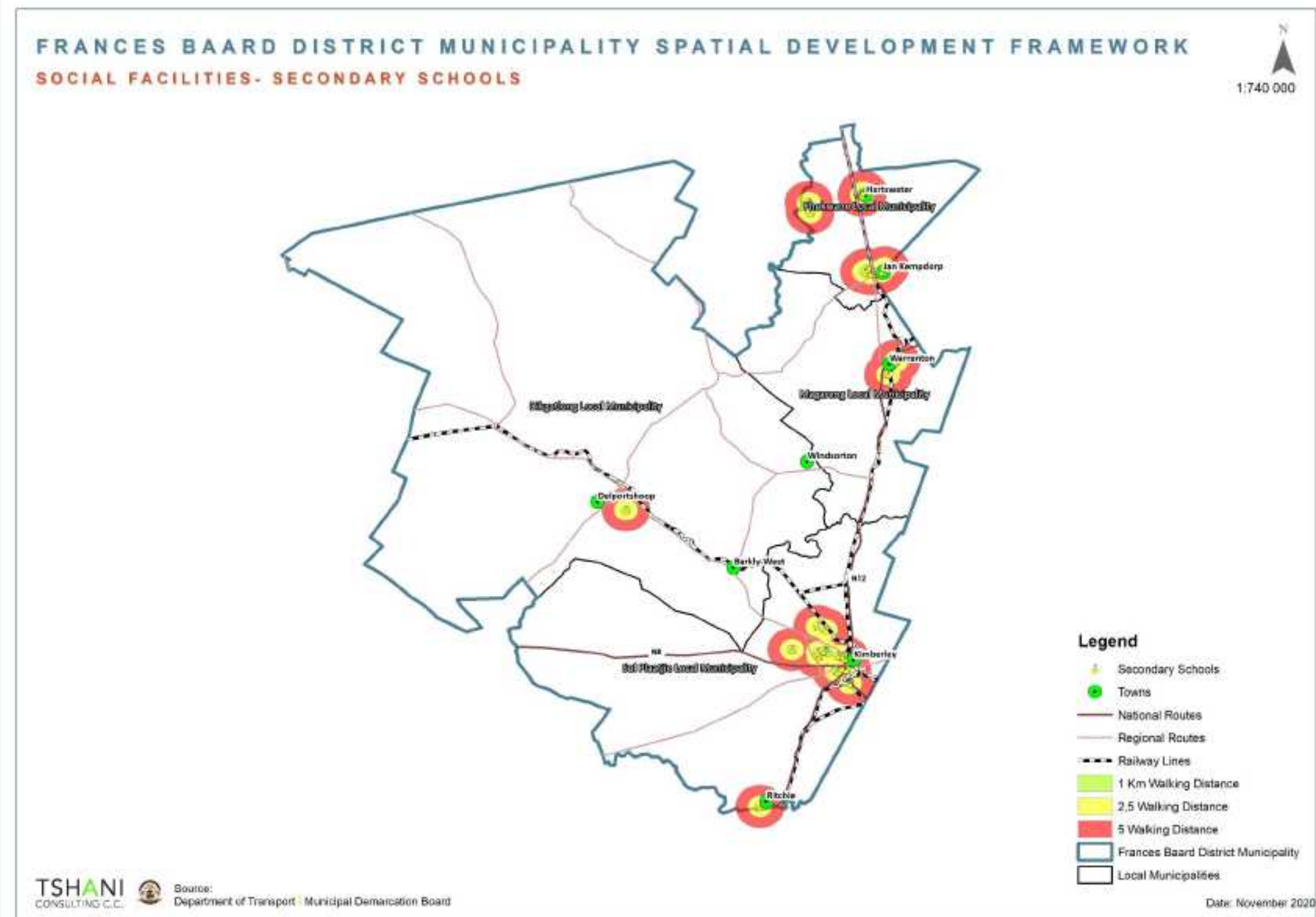
The plan below shows all the primary schools under the Frances Baard District Municipality. Majority of the primary schools are in Kimberley.



Plan 4: Social Facilities – Primary Schools

2.B.2. Secondary Schools

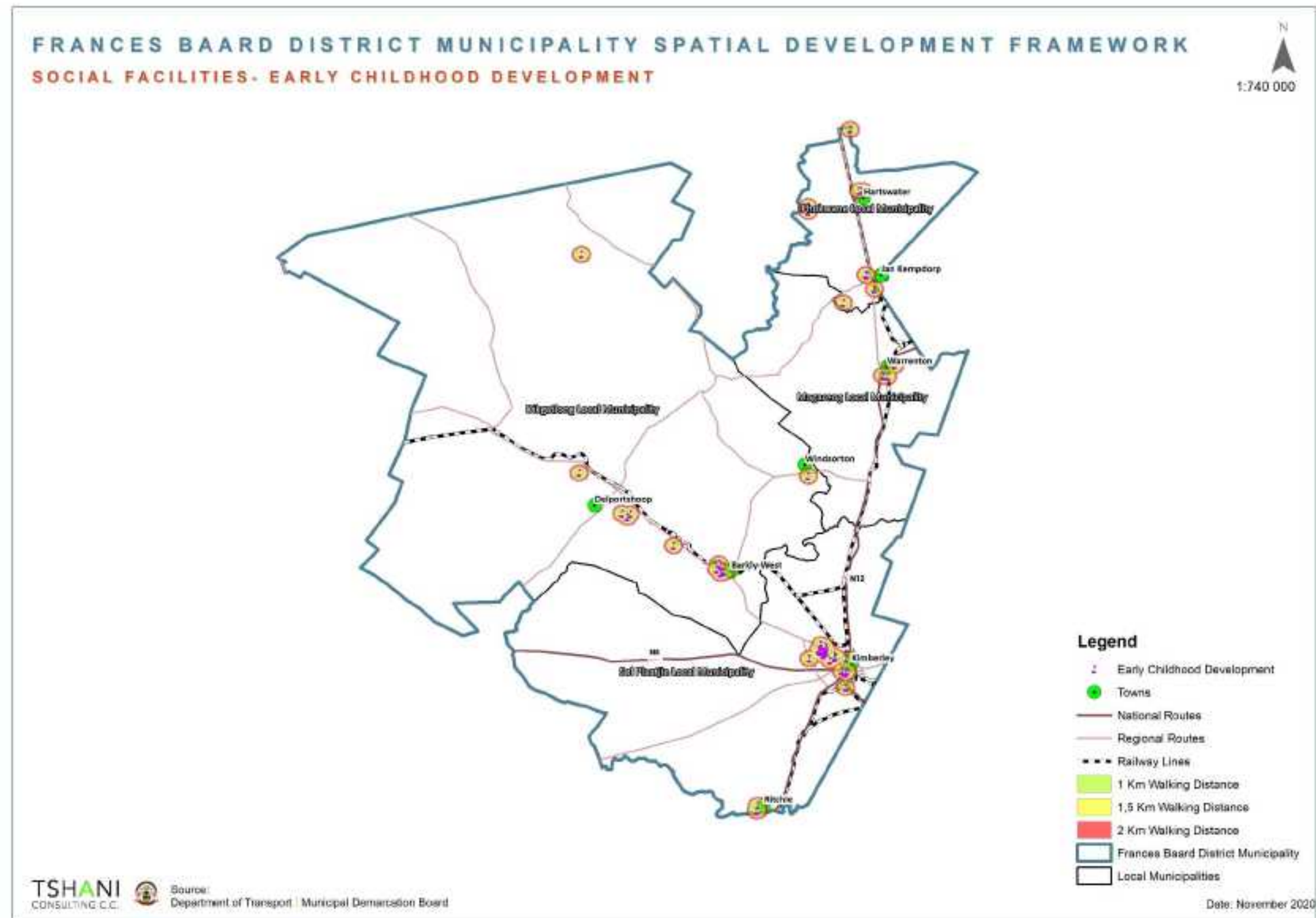
The plan below shows all the secondary schools under the Frances Baard District. Majority of which are located in Kimberley.



Plan 5: Social Facilities – Secondary Schools

2.B.3 Early Childhood Development

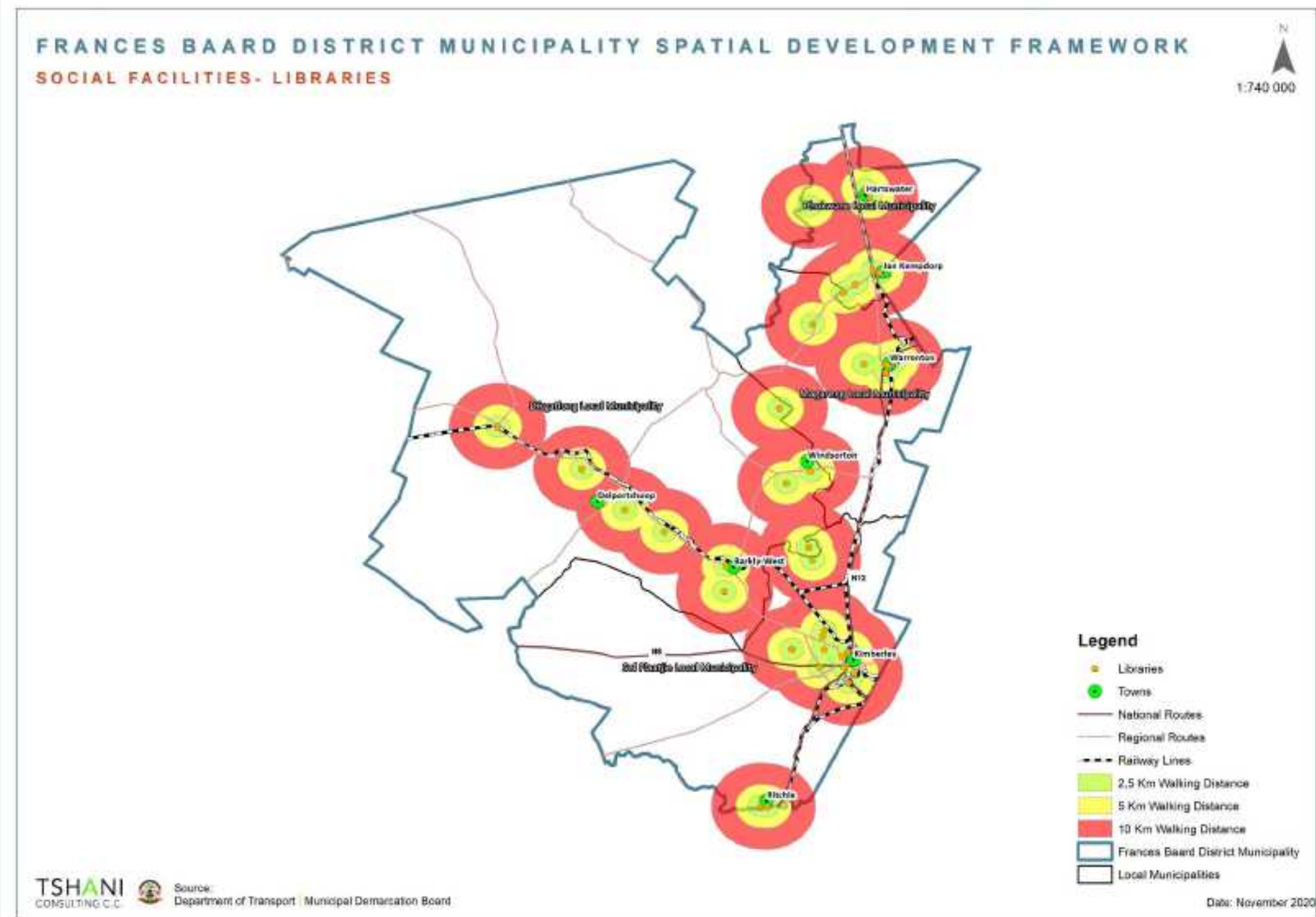
The plan below shows all the early childhood developments under the Frances Baard District.



Plan 6: Social Facilities – Early Childhood Development

2.B.4 Libraries

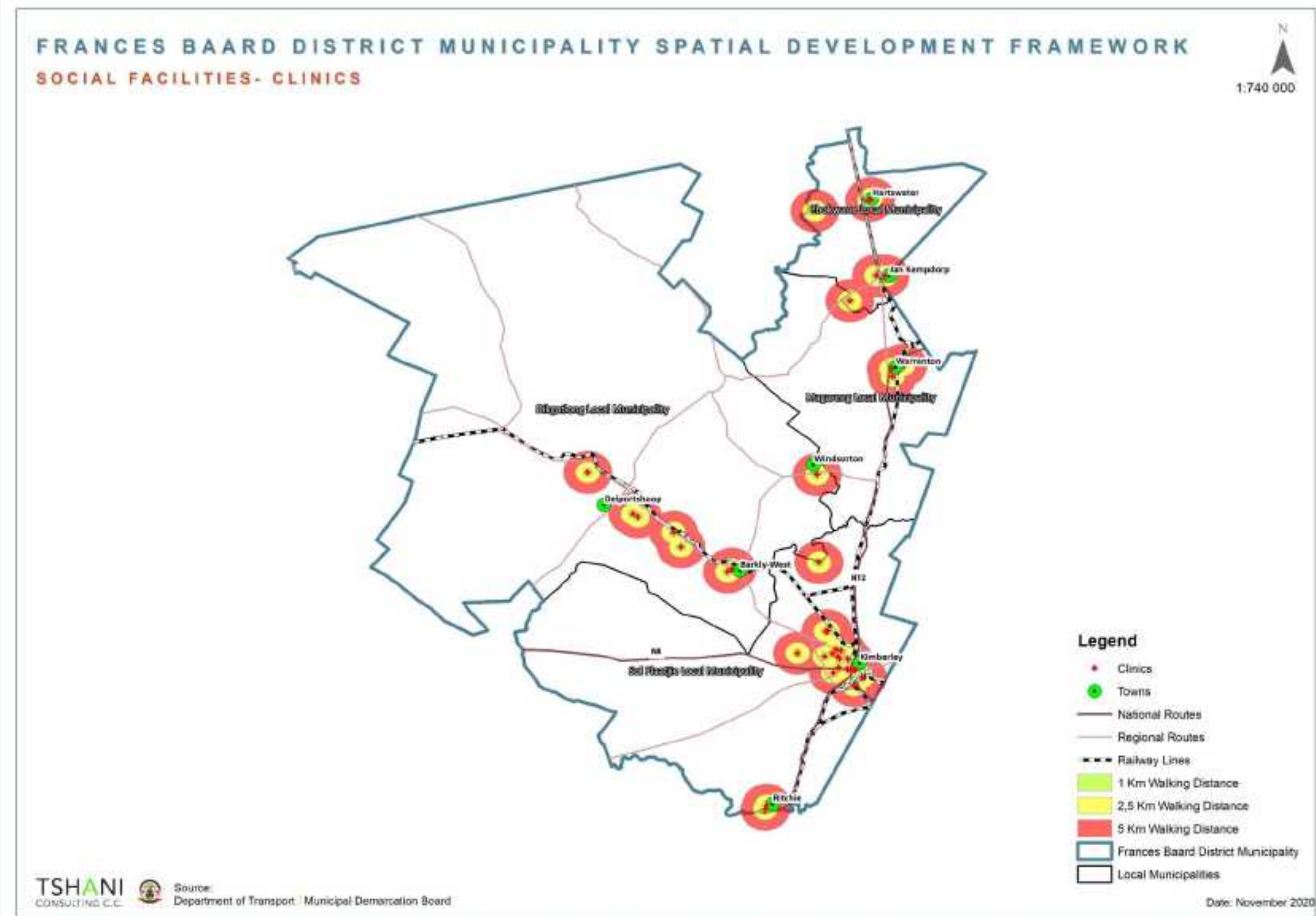
The plan below shows all the libraries under the Frances Baard District.



Plan 7: Social Facilities – Libraries

2.B.5 Clinics

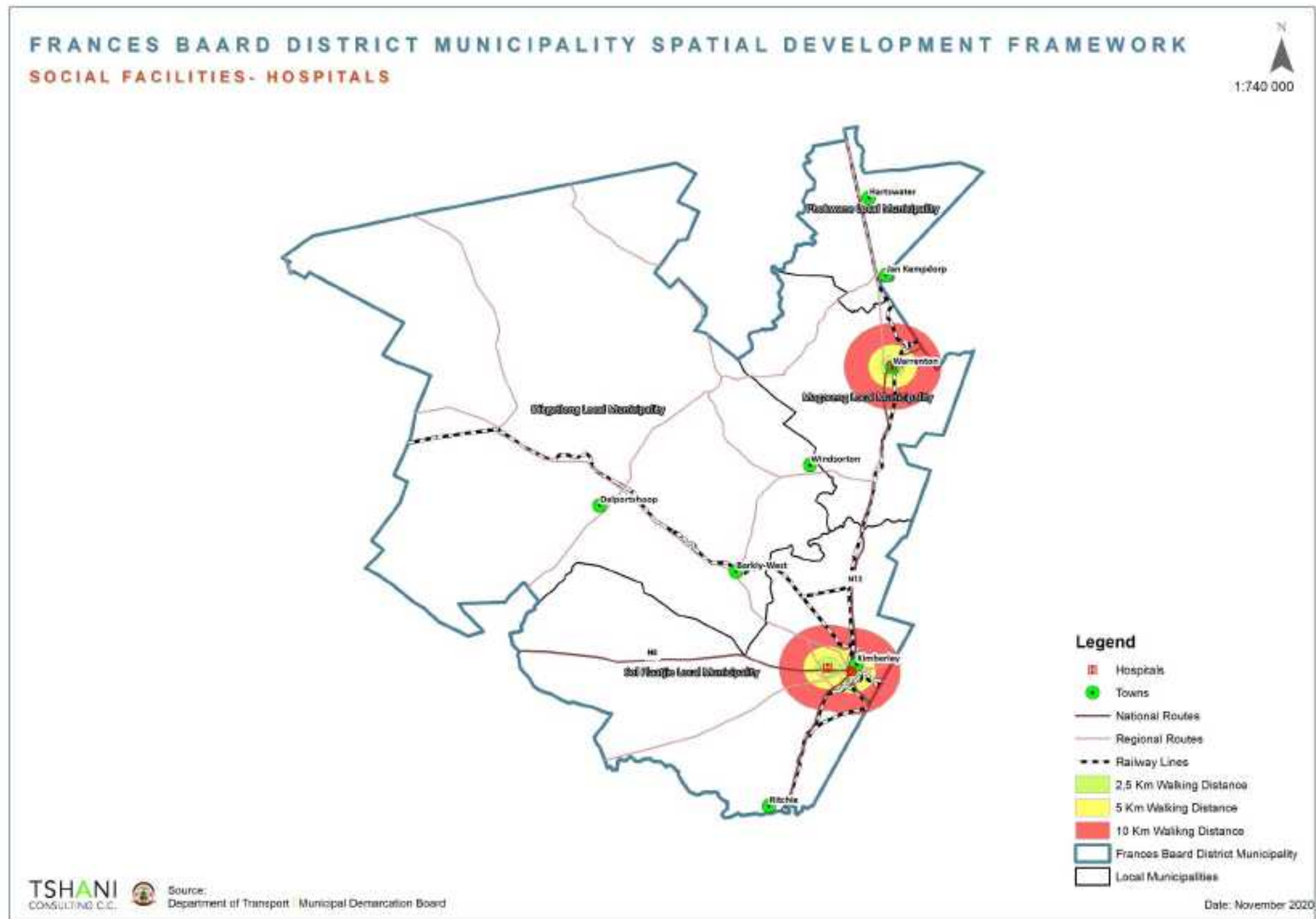
The plan below shows all the clinics under the Frances Baard District.



Plan 8: Social Facilities – Clinics

2.B.6 Hospitals

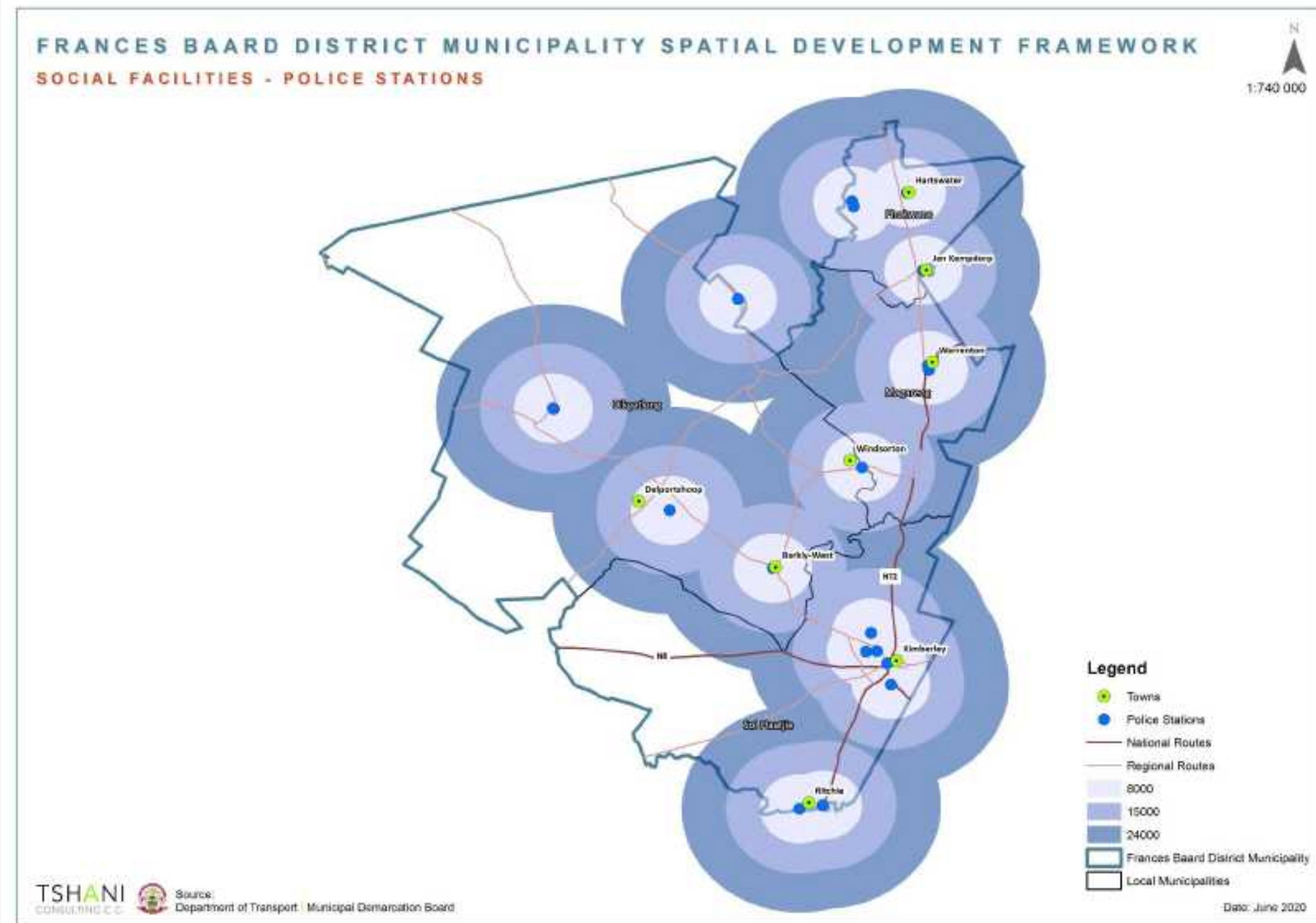
The plan below shows all the hospitals located under the Frances Baard District.



Plan 9: Social Facilities – Hospitals

2.B.7 Police Stations

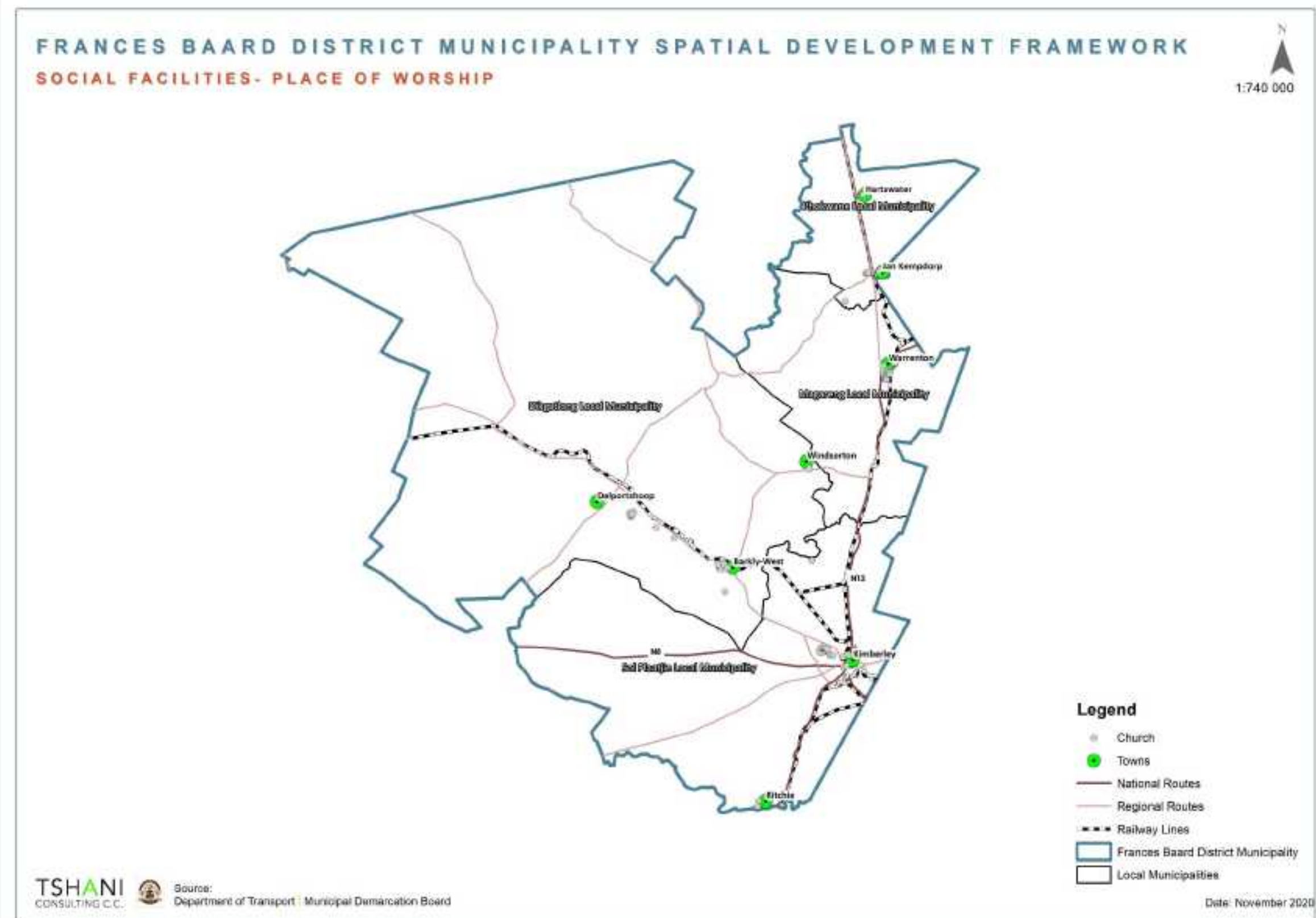
The plan below shows all the police stations under Frances Baard District.



Plan 10: Social Facilities – Police Stations

2.B.8 Place of Worship

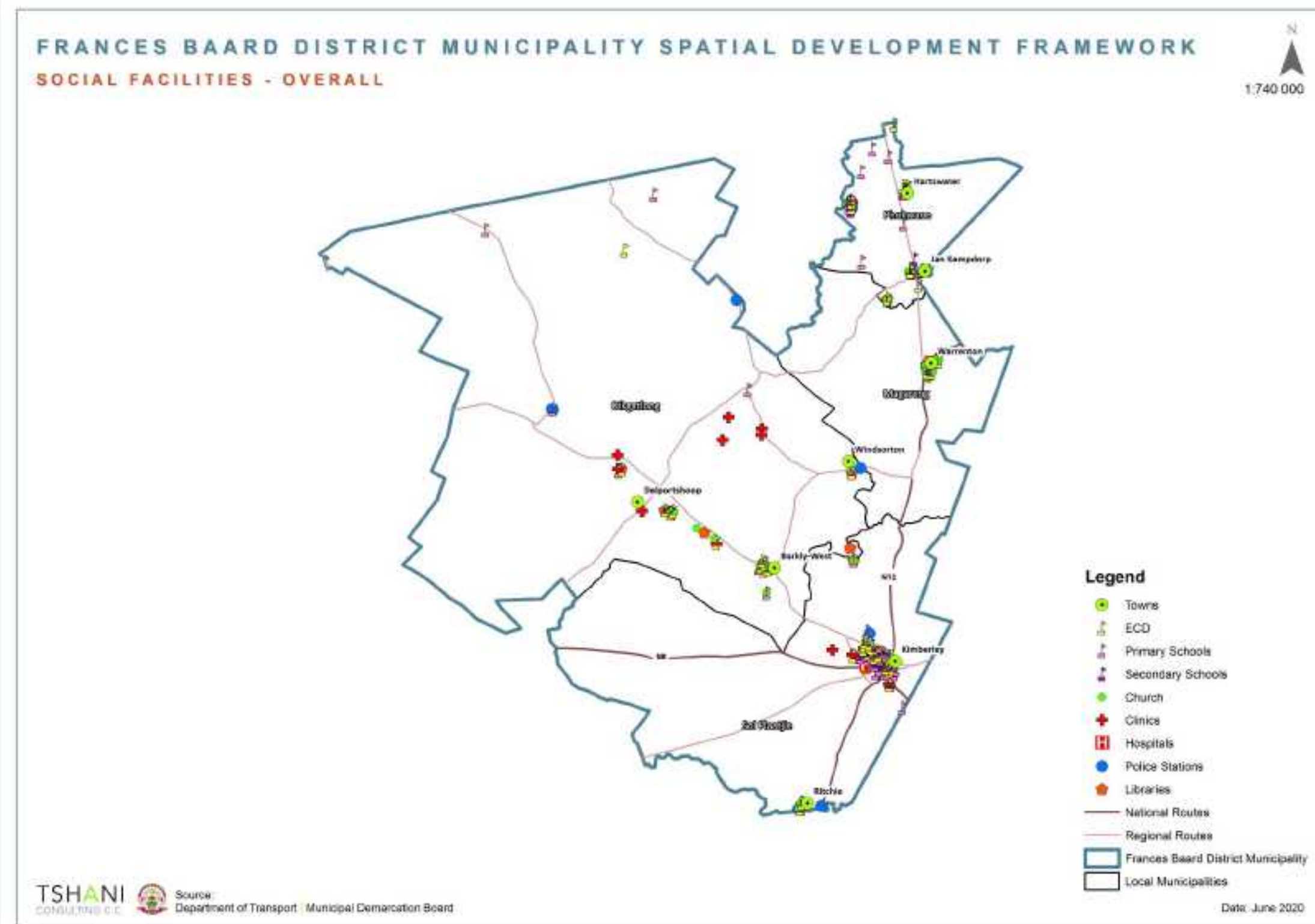
The plan below shows all the places of worship under the Frances Baard District. Majority of these worship places are located along the regional and national routes and are in close proximity to the major towns.



Plan 11: Social Facilities – Places of worship

2.B.9 Overall

The plan below shows all the social facilities combined under the Frances Baard District. It is evident that Sol Plaatjes Municipality has most of the social facilities as compared to Magareng, Phokwane and Dikgatlong.



Plan 12: Social Facilities – Overall

2.C Built Environment Assessment

2.C.1. Urban Settlements

Kimberley developed in 1870 in response to the diamonds found initially at the big hole and then in other mines such as de Beers, du Toits Pan, and Bratefontein.

The Sol Plaatje Local Municipality comprises a large urban node in the form of Kimberley, villages, and farms. Kimberley is the administrative centre of the Municipality. The economic activities consist of several retailers, industries as well as mining and farming. The SPLM accommodates approximately 247 000 people.

Sol Plaatje is a major contributor to the economy of the Province and accounts for 28.9% of total provincial Gross Domestic Product (GDP) in 2009 - and 82.1% of Frances Baard District Municipality (DM)), Sol Plaatje LM certainly is encumbered with ensuring that the Province as a whole reaches its accelerated growth objectives. Sol Plaatje Local Municipality is the largest local municipality in the Frances Baard District Municipality. (Source: Frances Baard IDP)

Kimberley follows a typical colonial, apartheid urban structure with low income areas, Galashewe, a low density sprawling African township to the north-west and other working-class coloured areas to the north abutting the mining areas. The south of the town consists of low-density upmarket suburbs.

Regional shopping centres, one complete and one under application, are currently found in this area.

There are a number of large formally planned settlements where the municipal offices are located in the case of Dikgatlong (Barkly West) and Magareng (Warrenton) Municipalities. However, Phokwane has three such settlements, Jan Kempdorp, Hartswater and Pampierstad.

Dikgatlong Local Municipality (DLM) is a category B municipality with seven wards. The municipal area consists of the disestablished municipalities of Barkly West, Windsorton, Delportshoop and a portion of the former Diamantveld District Council.

The head office of the municipality is situated in the town of Barkly West that is approximately 35-km north-west of the city of Kimberley on the northern bank of the Vaal River. Barkly West is situated on the growth corridor Kimberley-Postmasburg and agriculture and mining form the economic basis of the area. The Municipal area covers approximately 2377 km² and borders with the Magareng Municipality in the north-east and Sol Plaatje in the south-east.

The town is located on the main road to the Kalahari and Upington alongside the Vaal Rivers.

The town acts as a minor service centre to the surrounding farming population. The surrounding economic activities mainly refer to intensive diamond digging along the river, intensive irrigation schemes and grazing further away from the rivers. Game farming and hunting activities take place during the winter months.

The following smaller settlement areas of Delportshoop, Longlands, Gong Gong as well as Windsorton also fall under this municipality.

Magareng Municipality is situated approximately 77 km from Kimberley on the banks of the Vaal River. The N12 National Road between Kimberley and Christiana as well as the N18 route to Vryburg passes through the centre of town. The municipal area comprises an urban node, villages and farms. The urban nodes consist of Warrenton, Warrenvale and Ikhutseng. Small agricultural villages have been established throughout the municipal area of which Bullhill, Fourteen Streams, Sydney's Hope, Windsorton Station, Moleleko's Farm, Nazareth and Hartsvalei Farms are the most prominent. The rest of the area comprises mainly mixed farming. The area of jurisdiction is approximately 1542 km².

Like Barkly West, Warrenton is also located at a strategic River and the N1 road to Vryburg and the North-West.

A service to the surrounding farming community such as irrigation, mining and grazing is provided.

This municipality consists of the following towns which could be categorized as second order larger formally planned towns Hartswater, Jan Kempdorp and Pampierstad.

The above-mentioned towns are the main residential areas within the municipal boundary. The economic activities are mainly agricultural, varying from stock farming in the dry areas to intensive irrigation in the Vaalharts irrigation scheme.

The Phokwane region is after Sol Plaatje the second highest growth potential area in the Frances Baard Service area.

According to the Phokwane SDF 2008 a nodal structure has been indicated (par 2.1, p2). The primary node is Hartswater while Jan Kempdorp and Pampierstad have been identified as secondary nodes.

Hartswater:

Hartswater is the administrative centre and is centrally located within the area about 120km away from Kimberley and 90km from Vryburg. The population of Hartswater is ± 5098 people (4999 households). Hartswater acts as the admin and commercial hub for the Vaalharts irrigation Scheme and a well-developed service and industrial sector is present. Map 3.24 indicates the settlement structure for Hartswater.

Jan Kempdorp:

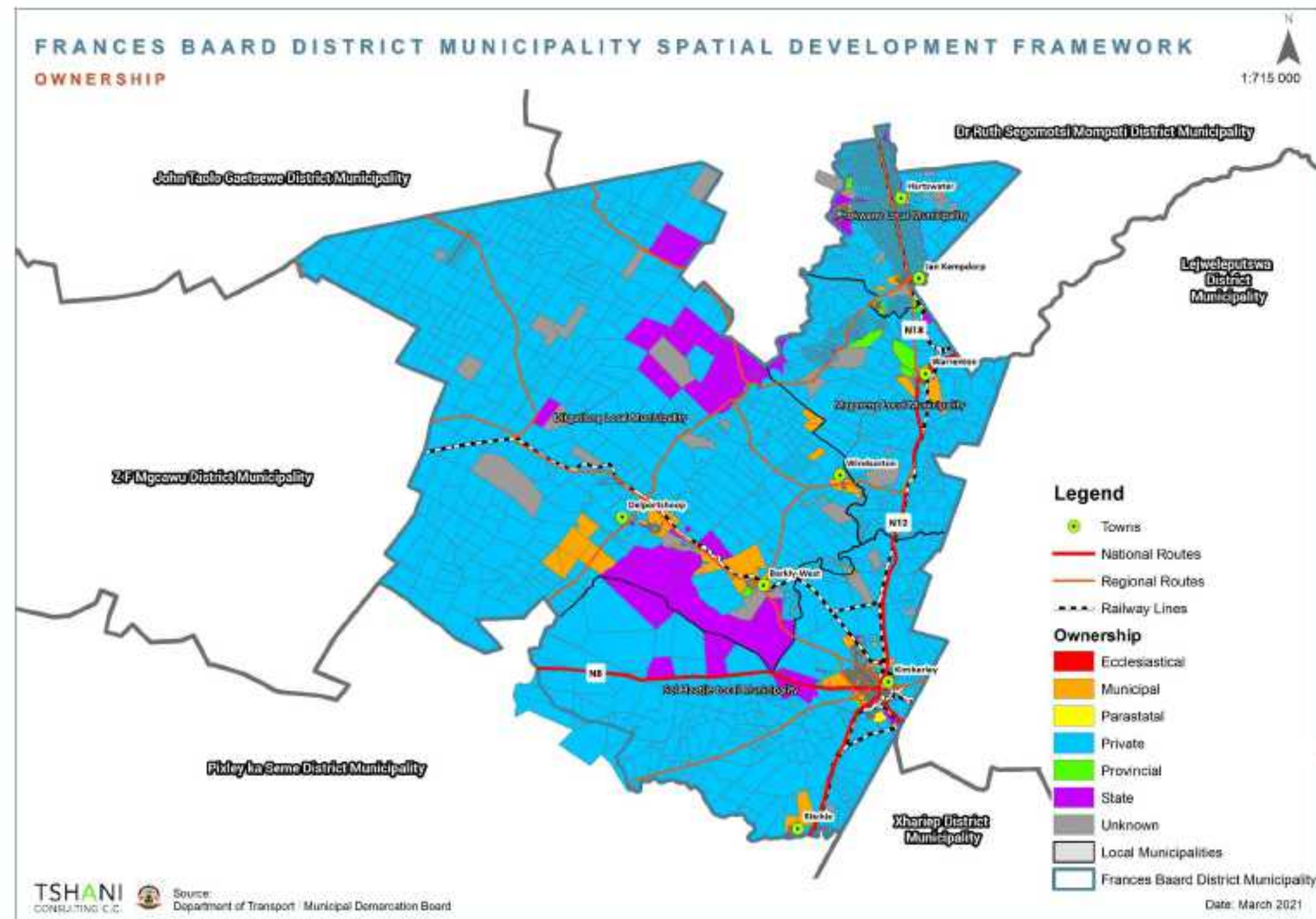
Jan Kempdorp acts as a primary node within the service area. The town has a population of 22 497 residents which represents ± 4999 households. This node accommodates some larger Government institutions such as Water Affairs and also an Agricultural Training facility. Jan Kemp provides a larger residential component to the area than Hartswater.

Pampierstad:

The Pampierstad residential settlement is situated more to the west of the municipal area. It accommodates approximately 17 000 residents which represents 4100 households. Pampierstad used to be part of the North-West but has formally been included into the Northern Cape. Map 3.26 indicates the settlement structure for Pampierstad.

2.C.2. Ownership

The ownership of Land Parcels within the FBDM is highted below. It is seen that the majority of land parcels within the FBDM is Privately Owned.



Plan 13: Ownership

2.C.2. Rural Settlements

Modder-River and Ritchie:

This settlement area is within the Sol Plaatje Municipal area and situated \pm 35 km south of Kimberley. These two settlements are included in the Sol Plaatje SDF and is identified as a Settlement area for Rural Support (Volume 3 to SDF 2008/2012, par 5.3.11, p133). The function thereof is to ensure the sustainable development of the surrounding areas. Ritchie provides for the residential function in the area while Modder-River is the commercial centre situated alongside the N12. Map 3.27 indicates the settlement structure for Ritchie/Modder-River.

Delportshoop:

Delportshoop settlement area falls under the jurisdiction of Dikgatlong Municipality and use to operate as a independent local authority pre 1994. The area is situated on the banks of the Vaal Rivier. It indicates three very prominent residential areas such as Tidimalo, Proteahof and Delportshop. The latter represents a rural small holding character. The town serves as a centre for surrounding communities such as Longlands and Gong-Gong. Map 3.28 indicates the settlement structure for this village.

Windsorton:

Windsorton is situated within the Dikgatlong service area and is situated approximately 40 km to the north-east of Barkly West. The N12 is \pm 10 km to the east thereof. The town consists of three residential components of Hebron Park, Kutlwanong and Windsorton. At present this settlement primarily serves the surrounding farmers and mining activities. The Windsorton Motel and railway station is situated to the east alongside the N12. Map 3.29 indicates the settlement structure for Windsorton.

Ganspan:

Ganspan is a small rural/agricultural community situated \pm 6 km south-west of Jan Kempdorp. The population thereof is 2700 residents representing 600 families. Map 3.30 indicates the settlement structure

2.C.3 Spatial Analysis: Patterns and Trends

As mentioned prior in the document, agriculture; mining; tourism; manufacturing; financial and social services are the economic drivers in the district. Furthermore, the district is characterized by high unemployment rate, housing backlog and land shortages. The land scarcity is also one of the major factors hampering development within the district.

Magareng Local Municipality

Magareng Municipality is situated on the N12 approximately 74 km north of Kimberley. The railway line to Gauteng and the N19 National Road to Vryburg also run through the only urban settlement area, Warrenton.

To capitalize on the location of Warrenton on the N12 as well as on the N18.

- Explore the potential of the location on a development corridor between Phokwane to the north and Sol Plaatje to the south.
- Enhancement of the regional function of Warrenton supporting mining communities.
- Development of Warrenton as a dormitory settlement area to Kimberley.
- Professional development of the urban structure by means of renewal programmes and higher urban densities

Phokwane Local Municipality

Phokwane local authority is situated \pm 80km to the north of Kimberley with the N18 route to Vryburg running through the area. This municipal area accommodates the following settlement areas. Hartswater, Pampierstad, Jan Kempdorp and Ganspan. Hartswater is the administrative centre of Phokwane and is situated in the centre of the service area. The town is also the commercial hub of the Vaalharts area. A large variety of agri-orientated industries have been established over a period of time while service and smaller maintenance services have been developed. Pampierstad is situated \pm 15km to the west of Hartswater and acts as a dormitory town to Hartswater.

Space available for the horizontal expansion of the settlement is limited because tribal land ownership and the river system to the east. Infill planning and densification on existing vacant land is recommended. Development of transport orientated business and activities alongside the N18. There is need for land availability for future development i.e. 25ha privately owned land to the west of Andalusia Park; approximately 154 ha vacant land (municipal owned) to the west of Valspan; and approximately 143 ha Gasman Sufficient land is available for future development within the agricultural settlement (FBDM SDF, 2014).

Dikgatlong Local Municipality

Dikgatlong Municipality is situated immediately to the west of Sol Plaatje Municipality. The includes town such as Barkly West is situated on the R31 route to Kimberley, Delportshoop, Ulco and Windsotorn. The municipal area accommodates the following settlement areas: Barkly West, Delportshoop, Ulco, Windsorton and Longlands. Promote a compact urban structure through urban infill and densification; Barkly West is the administrative centre for Dikgatlong and is situated 35km from Kimberley. During the preparation of the local SDF the following attributes of the town have been acknowledged:

- Dormitory function to Kimberley and in close proximity;
- Availability of industrial land;
- Development potential of the river frontage;
- Places of historical interest to be developed; and

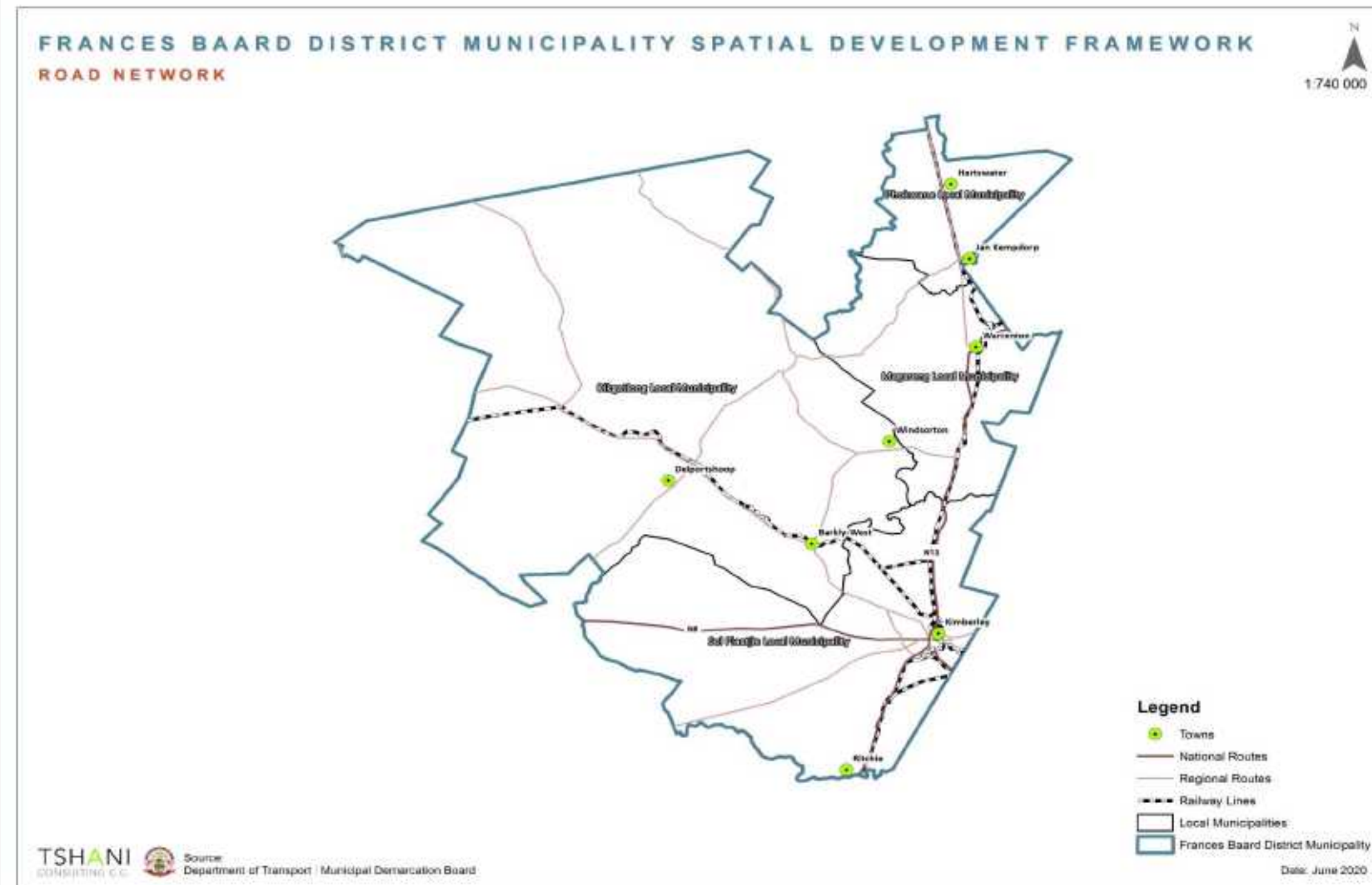
- Rich mining activities in the surrounding area.

Sol Plaatje Local Municipality

The Solplaatje municipal area is well known for diamond mining, and its main towns are Kimberley and Ritchie as well as Galeshewe which is the biggest township. The main economic drivers are retailers, industries, mining and farming. It has the largest population within the district. The establishment of the Sol Plaatje University increased more pressure on housing demand for student accommodation. Most of the land is privately owned which calls for optimum use of the resources and innovation.

2.C.4. Transportation

Transportation and access to nodal points and places of employment is one of the most important issues in land use planning. A transport system serves to bind the urban and rural fabric together. Traveling issues could be measured in time and distance. The most popular measurement is walking distance which becomes applicable in the planning of urban settlements. Any distance beyond a reasonable walking distance would make the consumer dependant on other forms of transport such as road or railway. The plan below indicates the road network in the Frances Baard District:



Plan 14: Road Network

i. Major roads

The Frances Baard District Municipality has a good network of roads to link major towns with each other or surrounding higher order towns.

National Roads:

The following national roads provide a service to this area;

- N12 – This road runs in a north-south direction from the Modder-River to the south through Kimberley, Warrenton and over the Vaal River to the north.
- N18 – The N8 road connects with the N12 at Magareng and runs north-wards through Hartswater to link with Bloemfontein and the Free State. This road runs in a western direction to Campbell, Griekwastad and from there to Upington.
- N8 – Links Sol Plaatje in a south-eastern direction with Bloemfontein and the Free State. This road runs in a western direction to Campbell, Griekwastad and from there to Upington.
- All national roads are supervised, controlled, and managed by SANRAL.
- R64 – Regional Road R64 links Kimberley eastwards with Bloemfontein via Boshof.
- R31 – The route runs from Sol Plaatje through Dikgatlong to Danielskuil.
- R370 – from Sol Plaatje to Siyancuma and further to the west.

The R- roads fall under the management and supervision of the Northern Cape Roads Department.

A system of smaller secondary district gravel roads supports the local farming communities which is under supervision of Frances Baard District municipality.

The above-mentioned road system is indicated on Map 3.31

ii. Railway facilities

It is a well-known fact that the railway freight volume has been declining over the last 15 years to such an extent that passenger services has completely stopped.

The following lines need to be mentioned:

- The main Gauteng to Cape Town line that moves through Modder–River, Kimberley, and Warrenton.

- A main line that runs from Bloemfontein to the east via Kimberley to Postmasburg to the west.
- A smaller lesser active line also links Kimberley and Prieska.

The above-mentioned system shows a well-planned and positioned facility linking various potential development nodes.

By the proper management and planning of such infrastructure intra- settlement traffic could be facilitated.

iii. Air transport

The Kimberley Airport is considered to have an important role in the regional economy. The main purpose of the airport is to transport business people and tourists to the Frances Baard area a limited amount of cargo is also however managed, but the main bulk thereof is directed to Upington Airport.

ACSA has recently upgraded the Kimberley Airport to make it more consumer friendly for visitors. This refers to maintenance on the runways and the upgrading of the terminal buildings.

The runway and facilities at the 98 Ammo depot of the SANDF is well structured and could be made fully operational at minimum cost.

The John Weston airfield to the west of Kimberley is not registered.

The position of the airport facilities is indicated on Map 3.31.

iv. Non – Motorised Transport

With the high level of poverty in the NC and the Frances Baard District Municipal area, a large % of the population depends primarily on pedestrian movement of public transport. Even the latter mode represents a cost to the indigent section of the community.

In future town planning of towns and villages excessive walking distances to community facilities and residential units needs to be addressed.

v. Public Transport

The running and management of public transport is absolutely in the hands of the private sector. This depends on demand and supply principles and is managed by the taxi associations (long distance and local).

The performance, affordability and convenience thereof are important to lower income of the population.

Public transport trips cover commuter trips between home and work, school trips for children living further than 5 km from school and visits to health and administration facilities.

2 D. Biophysical Assessment

2.D.1. Vegetation

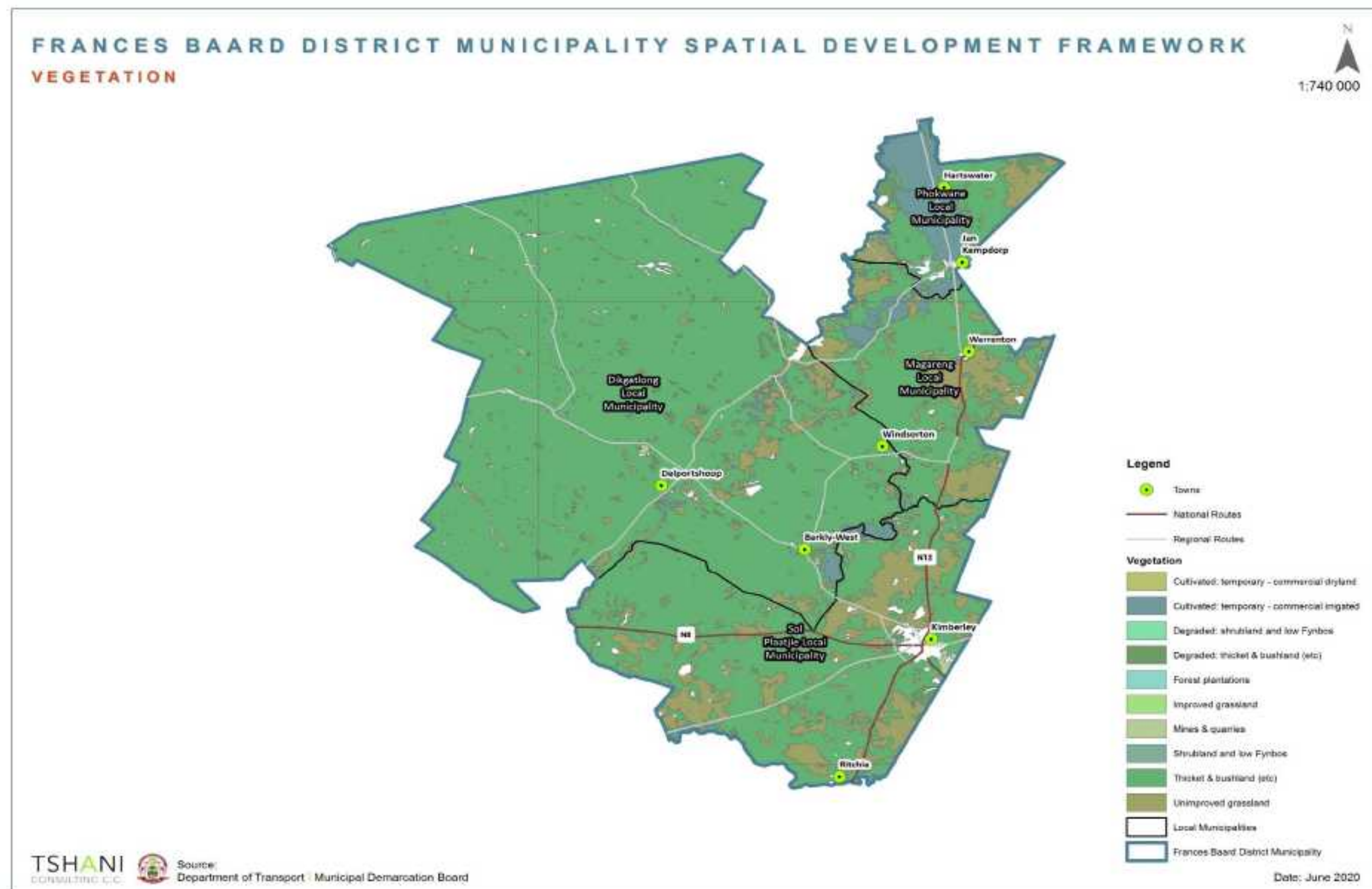
KALAHARI PLATEAU BUSHVELD

In general, dense bush veld composed of shrubs and sometimes small trees, in mixed grassland. The principal shrubs are Camphor Tree *Tarchonanthus camphorates* Three thorn *Rhigozum Trichotomum*, Puzzle Bush *Ehretia rigida*, *Grewia flava* and *Maytenus heterophylla*. The tree layer is not dominant, but the following species do occur sparsely: Wild olive *Olea europaea* subsp. *Africana*, Umbrella Thorn *Acacia tortilis* and Sheperd's Tree *Boscia albitrunca*. The grass is by nature tall and dominated by Redgrass *Themeda triandra* and other grasses such as Copperwire Grass *Aristida diffusa* and Silky bushman Grass *Stipagrostis uniplumis*. Karoo dwarf shrubs are sometimes accompanied by the development of thickets of shrubs and trees including Fringed Kereë *Rhus ciliate*, Spikeflower Black Thorn *Acacia mellifera* subsp. *Detinens* and Umbrella Thorn *A. Tortilis*.

KALAHARI THORN BUSHVELD

Open savannah, with Umbrella thorn *Acacia tortilis* and Camel Thorn *A. erioloba* the dominant tree species, Sheperd's Tree *Boscia albitrunca* and Sweet Thorn *Acacia karroo*. The shrub layer is poorly to moderately developed in places and individual of Camphor Tree *Tarchonanthus camphorates*, Spike-flowered Black Thorn *Acacia mellifera*, Wild Rasin *Grewia flava* and *Lycium hirsutum* occur widely scattered. The grass layer is well developed and grasses such as Redgrass *Themeda triandra*, Common Nine-lawn Grass *Enneapogon cenchroides*, Lehmann's Lovegrass *Eragrostic lehamanniana*, *Elionurus muticu* and *Cymbopogon plurinodis* are conspricuous.

The following is a vegetation plan of Frances Baard District Municipality:



Plan 15: Vegetation

3.1.2. Protected areas

3.1.3. Rivers and Wetlands

The river system could be identified into the following categories:

Perennial Rivers

These rivers (Vaal-, Harts- and Modder Rivers) are situated to the east of the study area. The higher population density within the FBDM area as well as higher intensity irrigation schemes is situated within this area.

None-Perennial Rivers

Some none-perennial rivers are situated in the western service areas which only flow during severe storms and the rainy season. These smaller streams flow from the Ghaap Plateau and feed the perennial system.

Map 3.5 shows the main catchment areas of the rivers in the FBDM area. The main catchment area is the Vaal River area controlled by the Catchment Management Agencies.

3.1.4. Topography and Geology

i. The Ghaap Plateau

The Ghaap escarpment forms a dramatic barrier between the western and eastern section of the area. This plateau was created by higher lying Pre-Karoo surface with the main element being the surface dolomite which gives form to the plateau.

ii. The western plateau

The western area is situated to the west of the Ghaap mountain series. The area rises to the west to be part of an escarpment that forms the eastern fringe of the Kalahari.

iii. The eastern plains

This area is situated to the east of the Ghaap mountain ridge and the Vaal- and Harts River system.

3.1.5. Climate / Climate Change

Climate change has the potential to negatively impact on the Agricultural sector as well as could possibly lead to potential flooding within the district during certain seasons.

It is anticipated that the western portions of the country will become drier with a slight increase in the precipitation intensity. Groundwater capacity will decrease as well as livestock carrying capacity.

This may lead to a change in the biodiversity within the district as some species may not survive this change.

The impact of climate change on a regional economy should be noted as well as on urban design and planning. Layouts and design principles will require special attention in order to accommodate changing prevailing winds, water, and stormwater as well as higher temperatures.

2.D.2. Agriculture

There is no moderate to high land in terms of agricultural production potential in the District which means that what agricultural resources there are must be carefully conserved. There has been an improvement, particularly in Phokwane Municipality, to the agricultural potential due to large scale irrigation schemes.

Although the irrigation schemes, of which the largest is the Vaal Harts scheme, represent a major increase in the arable land resource, they also have negative side effects particularly regarding long term soil fertility and water quality. The IEMP observed indication of reduced flow in the rivers and signs of nitrification and sedimentation.

However, the relationship between these activities and the impact of upstream activities in the Gauteng province and farmers along the river must also be understood because it would appear that the rivers have poor water quality and quantity when they enter the District.

2.D.3. Mining

The main mining activity in the region is diamonds. Diamond mining has been a cornerstone of the District Municipality's economy for the past century.

It has essentially been the main economic driving factor of Kimberley which, as has been noted, owes its location not to factors such as proximity to arable land or a strategic location on a river crossing but to the presence of Kimberlite pipes in the area which have yielded large quantities of diamonds over the past 140 years.

Mines based on Kimberlite pipes tend to be footloose in their location in relation to river crossings, proximity to agricultural land and other inherent locational factors as they mine directly into the resource. There are also a number of alluvial deposits on the major rivers where surface material from the Kimberlite pipes has washed down the rivers over geological time.

2.D.4 Environmental Conservation Areas

The Conservation Areas in the Frances Baard are as follows:

- Benfontein near Kimberley
- Rooipoort hunting farm (De Beers Consolidated Mines)
- Kamfers Dam Flamingo Reserve; and
- Wanebaai

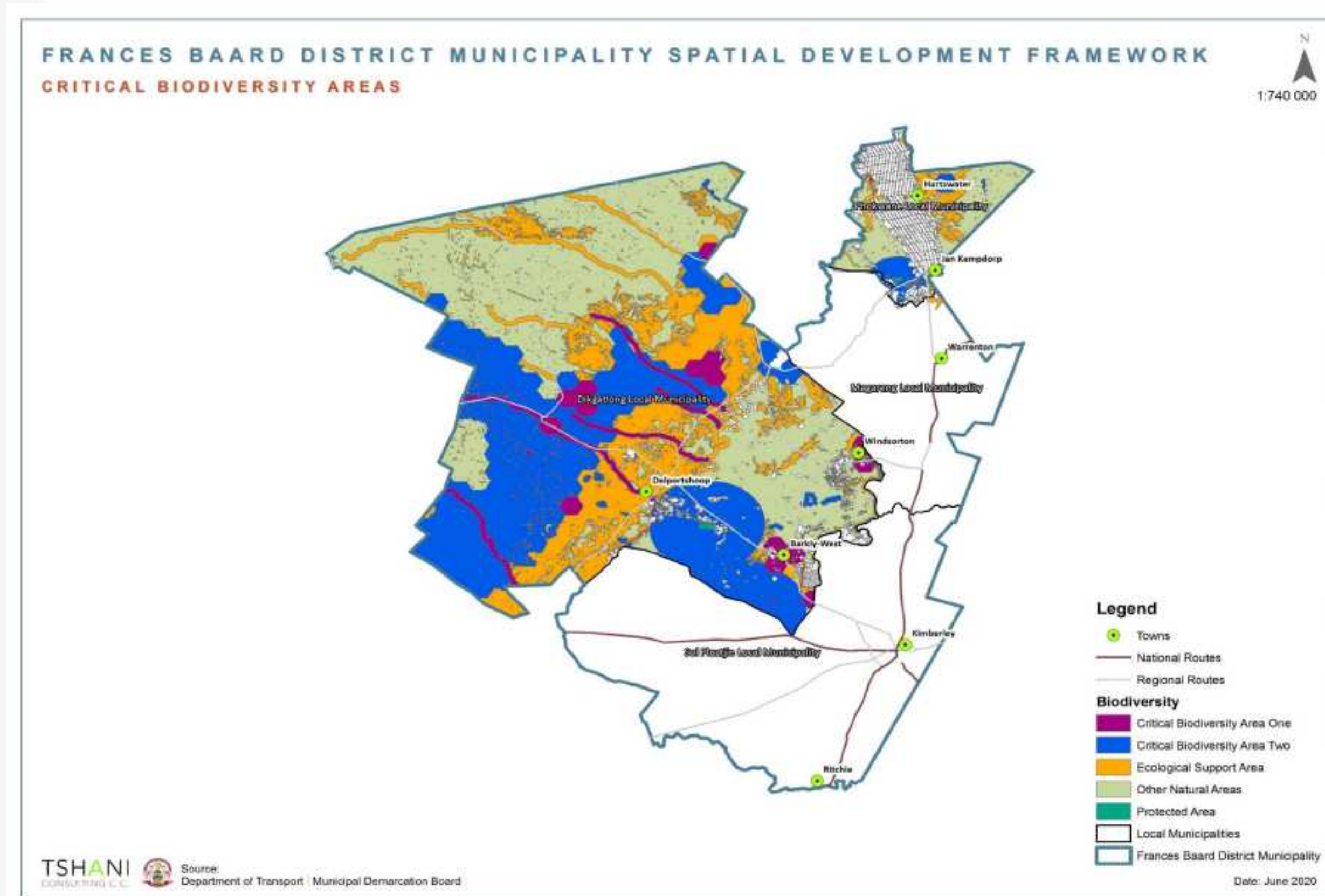
Vaalbos National Park has been de-proclaimed as a conservation area.

Eco-Tourism

According to African EPA (2004, 54) the FBDM area has ample potential for eco-tourism but does not necessarily comply with the true eco-tourism due to it having been impacted upon by mining, agriculture, and urbanization. The same study also concludes that the low-density area towards the west, associated with the centre of endemism, has the highest true eco-tourism potential.

African EPA (2004, 57) proposes the following two strategies: re-evaluation of the Kimberley Triangle Community Resource Project and to consider additional activities such as mountaineering/ abseiling and river rafting.

The following plan shows the critical biodiversity areas with the Frances Baard District:



Plan 16: Critical Biodiversity Areas

2.D.5 Institutional Development & Transformation Environmental Management

Section 24 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa entrenches the right of all citizens to live in an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being. Section 83 of the National Health Act, 2003 (Act 61 of 2003), defines municipal health services and clearly stipulates the responsibilities of municipalities in the performance of such services.

Environmental health comprises those aspects of human health, including quality of life, that are determined by physical, chemical, biological, social, and psychosocial factors in the environment. It also refers to the theory and practice of assessing, correcting, controlling, and preventing factors in the environment that can adversely affect the health of present and future generations.

The identification, evaluation, control as well as prevention through education of all those factors in the total environment which exercise a detrimental effect on individual physical, mental and social well-being, and development. It also implies continuous efforts to educate and prevent individuals from affecting the environment in such a way that it becomes detrimental to their well-being and development.

Municipal Health Services

The municipality started to render MHS on a fulltime basis from 1 July 2018 in Phokwane municipality. A service level agreement was reached with Sol Plaatje municipality to continue rendering MHS on behalf of FBDM for the next 3 years.

Food safety

During the outbreak of Listeriosis in 2017/18, EHPs assisted with the recall of the indicated products after the source of Listeriosis outbreak had been identified by National Government. The MHS Section in conjunction conducted several raids at food premises to ensure that re-called products were removed from the shelves. Awareness campaigns and radio-talks were also held to inform the communities about the disease and how to curb it from spreading.

South Africa's new food safety regulation, R638 of 2018 (regulations governing general hygiene requirements for food premises and the transport of food and related matters) was gazetted to replace R962 of 1999. New and existing food premises needs to apply for the renewal of their Certificates of Acceptability.

The EHPs in co-operation with the South African Police Services conducted inspections at various food premises to determine whether they are registered and that they do not sell fake and "expired" foods.

New EHPs will be trained as peace officers to enforce above legislation and to ensure that they comply with requirements. They will also work together with the planning sections from the local municipalities to curb the mushrooming of tuckshops.

Water quality monitoring

Drinking water samples are collected monthly from communities, schools, and clinics in Dikgatlong, Magareng and Phokwane local municipalities. Results are communicated to the relevant stakeholders and local municipalities and they are informed of the possible causes for non-compliance and recommendations how to improve the quality thereof. Awareness campaigns on how to render water safe for human consumption, are conducted in affected communities

Air quality management

The MHS Section strives to reduce air pollution and improve the quality of air by identifying, investigating, and monitoring pollution sources, and instituting remedial or preventative measures. Various campaigns were conducted in communities and schools to sensitize the community and learners on air pollution and how to mitigate the effects thereof on human health.

Evaluations were done at industries with atmospheric emissions licenses to ensure compliance the applicable legislation. The District Air Quality Management Plan has been reviewed and adopted by council. Strategies from the Plan will be implemented which will further contribute towards cleaner air quality in the district.

The municipality worked together with The Provincial Department of Environment and Nature Conservation to successfully host the National Air Quality Lekgotla during October 2018 in Kimberley.

Waste management

Illegal dumping of waste on open spaces and littering remains a huge challenge in the district. The EHPs embarked on clean-up campaigns in the various communities, only to see that the same areas are polluted. Local municipalities therefore must appoint peace officers to enforce their waste management by-laws.

Many of the landfill sites do not comply with the minimum requirements for landfill sites or managed effectively by the local municipalities. Communities will be encouraged to embark on recycling initiatives and assistance will also be provided to the recycling plant in Barkly West to ensure that it utilized to its full capacity.

Climate Change

The Deutsche Gesellschaft für Internationale Zusammenarbeit (GIZ) assisted the municipality to develop a Climate Change Vulnerability Assessment and Climate Change Response Plan for the district. Key climate change vulnerability indicators were identified (see table below) which may be a risk to the impact of climate change. These indicators are important especially for the Environmental Health and Disaster Management Sections to plan for interventions to mitigate the effects of climate change in the district.

Table 6: Key Vulnerability Indicators For FBDM

No	Sector	Indicator Title	Exposure Answer	Sensitivity Answer	Adaptive Capacity Answer
7	Agriculture	Change in other crop production areas	Yes	High	Low
10	Agriculture	Increased risks to livestock	Yes	High	Low
12	Biodiversity and Environment	Loss of High Priority Biomes	Yes	High - Nama-Karoo Biome	Low
14	Biodiversity and Environment	Increased impacts on environment due to land-use change	Yes	High	Low
42	Biodiversity and Environment	Loss of Priority Wetlands, River ecosystems, and other threatened ecosystems	Yes	High	Low
43	Biodiversity and Environment	Loss of Soil Fertility	Yes	High	Low
22	Human Health	Increased heat stress	Yes	High	Low
26	Human Health	Increased air pollution	Yes	High	Low
27	Human Health	Increased Occupational health problems	Yes	High	Low
29	Human Settlements	Increased impacts on strategic infrastructure	Yes	High	Low
30	Human Settlements	Increased impacts on informal dwellings	Yes	High	Low
34	Water	Decreased quality of drinking water	Yes	High	Low
35	Water	Decreased water quality in ecosystem due to increased concentrations of effluent and salt concentrations	Yes	High	Low
36	Water	Less water available for irrigation and drinking	Yes	High	Low
40	Water	Less groundwater availability	Yes	High	Low

Overall Challenges:

- Foreign owners of tuckshops have a limited understanding of the legislation and requirements and needs to be workshopped on the requirements.
- New EHPs must be trained as peace officers and Environmental Management Inspectors (EMIs) to enforce environmental health by-laws and legislation.
- Environmental Management Framework are currently reviewed.



CHAPTER 03

SWOT Analysis

SWOT ANALYSIS AND KEY ISSUES

Spatial planning directives from the National and Provincial level as well as the district sector plans and local Municipal plans aims to unpack the state of the area or the sector within its location. Through a detailed analysis of these plans, we are able to create a picture of the positive and negative aspects of each sector within the areas that either fall within the district or surrounding the district which has equal impact on how the district functions.

The following section will highlight the SWOT Analysis and Key Issues pertaining to the Frances Baard District. These have been developed through two means:

1. As captured from the 2014 FBDM SDF – the aspects that have remained as is.
2. Workshopping sessions with the Local Municipalities and Internal and External Municipal Departments:

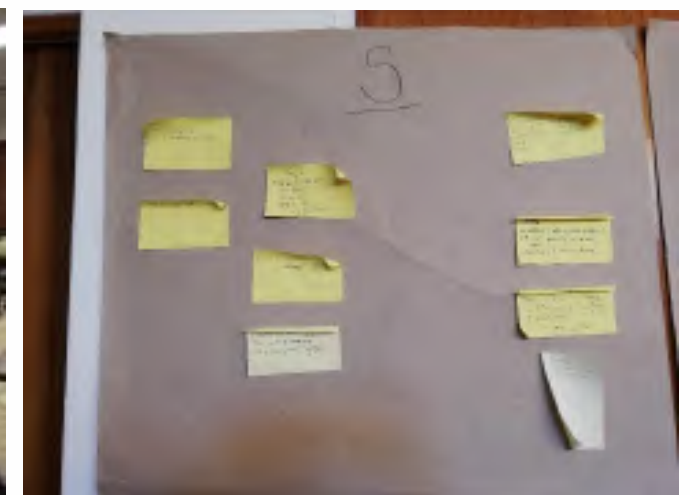
Three workshops took place to capture the SWOT Analysis and Key Issues pertaining to the LMs within the District as well as completing a Visioning exercise. The first workshop involved Sol Plaatje's and Dikgatlong Local Municipality; the second workshop involved Frances Baard District Municipalities internal and external municipal departments and the third workshop involved Magareng and Phokwane Local Municipality.

Workshop 1 and 3 were structured around assessing a SWOT Analysis for the LM which is basically an analysis in which we discuss strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats of the particular LM in relation to the district and how we can further improve on the weaknesses and threats and how we can develop on the Strengths and Opportunities. This further lead to the Vision exercise where attendees were asked to imagine a functioning District by the year 2040 and how this would look like. Workshop 2 was held where a presentation was made to internal and External Departments and discussions were held around their specific sector and its impact on the district.

3.A. SWOT Analysis

The SWOT analysis is used in decision-making situations when a desired objective is defined.

- A **strength** is the ability to consistently provide near perfect performance in a specific activity, while a **weakness** characterizes areas, which are a disadvantage.
- An **opportunity** is classified as elements that can be exploited to a full advantage, while a **threat** are those elements that cause distress to an area or industry.
- Adequately addressing threats and weaknesses are essential to positive growth;
- All aspects of the SWOT analysis can be addressed together as each impact on the other and each have the ability to strengthen another or potentially hinder when not appropriately addressed or managed.



Above: Workshop that took place in Kimberley with Sol Plaatje LM and Dikgatlong LM

A detailed SWOT analysis was undertaken for the Frances Baard District Municipality, as illustrated below:

STRENGTHS	WEAKNESSES
Provincial seat located in this district	Construction is a weak economic contributor
Diamond Mining and agriculture are 2 of the major economic contributors	Not advancing on the second economy of value add
Finance and trade are key economic sectors	Predominantly rural population of low-income earners
District is the biggest economic contributor within the province	Lack of formalised public transportation within the district to support the people
Tourism within Sol Plaatjes adds to the economy of the district	Lack of maintenance of Infrastructure – roads treatment facilities, etc.
Mining is another key economic driver of the district	Provision of social amenities to keeping up with population increase.
Two major National Roads traverses the district – N12 and N18	High unemployment rate due to lack of job opportunities available to working age
Orange and Vaal River are tourist attractions	
OPPORTUNITIES	THREATS
Value add industries related to mining	Old mining sites
Un tapped tourism opportunities	Minimal rainfall

Agricultural opportunities at a large scale or small scale to support communities	High percentage of unskilled labour force. High illiteracy rates.
Need for skills transfer programmes and training facilities	Dispersed settlements which would require more social amenities or better transportation linkages
Potential to expand the Airport in Kimberley	Airport in Kimberley only fly between Johannesburg and Cape Town
The potentials of the Northwestern Corridor as outlined in the NSDF	The effects of the COVID 19 Pandemic on the economy and other sectors
Kimberley seen as an emerging Smart City	

Table 6: Frances Baard DM SWOT Analysis – issues still prevalent from 2014 SDF



Above: Workshop which took place in Warrenton with Magareng and Phokwane LM

SWOT Analysis - Sol Plaatjes Local Municipality and Dikgatlong Local Municipality

The below SWOT Analysis was captured through the workshop session with Sol Plaatje LM and Dikgatlong LM.

STRENGTH



WEAKNESSES



OPPORTUNITIES



THREATS



SWOT Analysis – Magareng Local Municipality and Phokwane Local Municipality

The below SWOT Analysis was captured through the workshop session with Magareng LM and Phokwane LM.

STRENGTH



WEAKNESSES



OPPORTUNITIES



THREATS



3.B. Key Issues

The Key Issues have been drafted through unpacking the key elements of the SWOT Analysis. Key Issues have been divided per sector for **the district and local municipalities to be able to see which sector requires the most focus and in which area the focus should be placed on**. Further, the issues identified will be able to be used as a basis to see where the district is lagging and needs to place emphasis on.

Key Issues – Frances Baard District Municipality

The following section of the report identifies the key issues pertaining to each sector for the Frances Baard District.

Key Environmental Issues

Environmental issues are defined as problems with the planet's systems (air, water, soil, etc.) that have developed as a result of human interference or mistreatment of the planet.



- Mining threatens the biodiversity
- Loss of habitat due to destruction and invasion
- **Poor rainfall leads to the degradation of veld**
- Prevent the pollution of rivers and streams by agricultural activities
- Measure and control air pollution by factories and mines
- Environmental and other pollution takes place because of the lack of surrounding fencing to avoid paper and plastic littering
- Air pollution is created and is a high risk for veld fires;
- Surrounding vegetation is often used for energy sources
- **Mining activities in many cases severely impacts on the environment**
- Increasing demand for groundwater consumption and the drilling of boreholes, result in decreasing the level of the water table.

Key Infrastructure Issues

Infrastructure issues are defined as problems with transportation systems, communication networks, sewage, water, and electric systems, etc.

- **Poor rail facilities within the district**
- Over capacity of existing wastewater treatment works
- Professional management and operation of waste disposal sites is a concern
- No power supply to some marginalised areas
- **Growing demand on bulk services due to population increase**
- Upgrading of stormwater management systems in all urban areas throughout the district

Key Land Issues

Land issues are defined as problems associated with land tenure, land reform and availability of land, etc.

- Demand for housing due to population increase
- High residential densities are situated along rivers
- **Urban sprawl and encroachment** on surrounding agricultural land is occurring within the district
- Poor land and property ownership in rural settlements
- There is a need to address apartheid residential planning

Key Economic Issues

Economic issues refer to any such problem in the economy that is concerned with the production of goods and services to satisfy the unlimited wants of the economy through the utilization of scarce resources.

- Local municipalities have limited revenue sources and are heavily grant-dependent
- **High unemployment rate**
- Municipalities generally are experiencing an inability to spend their approved budgets timeously
- Decline and lagging in the Primary and Secondary economic sector
- **Support is needed for the LED sector**
- **There is a need to support the tourism sector**
- Job creation in the local market
- There is a need to address the secondary and tertiary sectors

Key Social Issues

- Social issue refers to issues that relate to society's perception of people's personal lives.
- Population growth in being seen in the district
- High elderly population
- Many poverty-stricken households
- **Limited social facilities to serve the population**
- Adult literacy and education should be targeted
- **Health care provision with-in rural areas needs to be addressed**
- District population is highly dependent on social grants
- **Need for improvement in education facilities**
- There is a need for maintenance and development of recreational facilities in rural and urban areas

Key Movement Issues

Movement issues refer to issues related to the movement of objects or people from one location to another.

- **Lack of Public sector managed public transportation**
- **Generally low-density development throughout the district which make accessibility, linkages between settlements difficult**

Key Issues – Sol Plaatjes Local Municipality

The following section of the report identifies the key issues pertaining to each sector for the Sol Plaatjes Local Municipality.

Key Environmental Issues

Environmental issues are defined as problems with the planet's systems (air, water, soil, etc.) that have developed as a result of human interference or mistreatment of the planet.

- Dust / the negative environmental effects of mine dumps
- Lack of environmental protection awareness
- Absence of a strategic environmental assessment and environmental management framework plan

Key Infrastructure Issues

Infrastructure issues are defined as problems with transportation systems, communication networks, sewage, water, and electric systems, etc.

- Poor level of infrastructure hampers economic growth in the LM
- Upgrading of the N12 is needed to improve the linkages into the LM
- Air flights only travel from Kimberly to Johannesburg and Cape Town
- Wastewater treatment plans are at capacity
- Insufficient parking in the CBD of Kimberly
- The lack of investment in transport infrastructure and not giving attention to the development of a integrated movement network will limit the accessibility of the identified nodes.

Key Land / Housing Issues

Land issues are defined as problems associated with land tenure, land reform and availability of land, etc.

- Insufficient housing stock is available for the income bracket R1 500 to R7 000 per month.
- Housing is not provided within proximity of economic and social opportunities.
- Dispersed residential areas hinders the movement of people and their access to amenities
- Increasing backlog in housing delivery due to increase in population due to inward migration



Key Economic Issues

Economic issues refer to any such problem in the economy that is concerned with the production of goods and services to satisfy the unlimited wants of the economy through the utilization of scarce resources.

- The economic sector is hampered by poor application of the economic multipliers and the lack of economic sectors
- Mangaung can further surpass the economic role of Sol Plaatje
- There is an insignificant formal economic investment in the "economic disadvantaged" areas.
- Industry, as an economic driver, is weak due to a poor conglomerate of economies of scale.

Key Social Issues

Social issue refers to issues that relate to society's perception of people's personal lives.

- High unemployment rate amongst the economically active;
- There is a lack of employment opportunities within SPM and the surrounding district to enable household sustainability
- The Sol Plaatjes SDF mentions that a household must spend at least 30% to 40% of their earnings on travelling costs, thereby perpetuating the poverty spiral.

Key Movement Issues

Movement issues refer to issues related to the movement of objects or people from one location to another.

- Access into the CBD areas are seen as a challenge in terms of cost and access of public transportation
- Safety of pedestrians is also seen as a challenge in the LM
- The potential for alternative means of transport such as bicycles are inadequately explored.

Key Institutional Issues

Institutional issues refer to issues involved in institutions.

- There is inconsistent decision-making pertaining to economic policy.

Key Issues – Dikgatlong Local Municipality

Key Environmental Issues

Environmental issues are defined as problems with the planet's systems (air, water, soil, etc.) that have developed as a result of human interference or mistreatment of the planet.

- The negative impact on climate change
- Environmental degradation due to pollution is insufficient waste management service

Key Infrastructure Issues

Infrastructure issues are defined as problems with transportation systems, communication networks, sewage, water, and electric systems, etc.

- Infrastructure is old and not being regularly maintained
- Lack of refuse removal & proper waste management systems result in blocked storm water drains and flooded streets in the larger settlements
- Lack of road signage in the LM
- Insufficient taxi ranks
- Lack of sanitation bulk infrastructure including maintenance
- Lack of tarred roads in townships

Key Land Issues

Land issues are defined as problems associated with land tenure, land reform and availability of land, etc.

- Sparsely dispersed settlements, with fairly low density
- There is a lack of undamaged and suitable land for grazing and housing in many areas
- Traditional leaders not releasing land or slow to release land

Key Economic Issues

Economic issues refer to any such problem in the economy that is concerned with the production of goods and services to satisfy the unlimited wants of the economy through the utilization of scarce resources.

- Many tourism potentials exist but not exploited
- Lack of support for SMME's



- Businesses are dependent on external supplies and services while local production is negligible
- Not enough importance placed on the agricultural sector
- Lack of secondary industries
- Lack of employment opportunities for the youth
- Lack of private investment initiatives
- Lack of skilled workers

Key Social Issues

Social issue refers to issues that relate to society's perception of people's personal lives.

- Lack of educational programs that teach people to work land for food production
- Inadequate recreational facilities which results in limited human development
- High unemployment levels
- Insufficient social facilities such as cemeteries and health care facilities within rural areas as well as community halls
- Lack of schooling facilities: early childhood development facilities + higher education facilities

Key Movement Issues

Movement issues refer to issues related to the movement of objects or people from one location to another.

- Dispersed settlements created a bigger need for upgrade and maintenance of roads to ensure linkages between settlements
- Further transportation required due to the above

Institutional Issues

Institutional issues refer to issues involved in institutions.

- Lack of land use management and rehabilitation enforcement
- There is a need for more commitment and action from officials
- Lack of engagement by the municipality with the people
- Lack of transparency in the work/dealings/decisions of the municipality

Key Issues Magareng Local Municipality

Key Environmental Issues

Environmental issues are defined as problems with the planet's systems (air, water, soil, etc.) that have developed as a result of human interference or mistreatment of the planet.

- Illegal dumping
- Lack of rehabilitation to old mine dumps

Key Infrastructure Issues

Infrastructure issues are defined as problems with transportation systems, communication networks, sewage, water, and electric systems, etc.

- Upgrade and maintenance of sanitation services
- Storm water drainage is a challenged
- Lack of electricity provision in certain areas of the LM

Key Land Issues

Land issues are defined as problems associated with land tenure, land reform and availability of land, etc.

- In sufficient land for housing development

Key Economic Issues

Economic issues refer to any such problem in the economy that is concerned with the production of goods and services to satisfy the unlimited wants of the economy through the utilization of scarce resources.

- Lack of shopping facilities
- Upgrading of town facilities to attract tourists and investors

Key Social Issues

Social issue refers to issues that relate to society's perception of people's personal lives.

- Lack of schooling facilities
- Lack of recreation facilities
- Lack of health care facilities such as community clinics

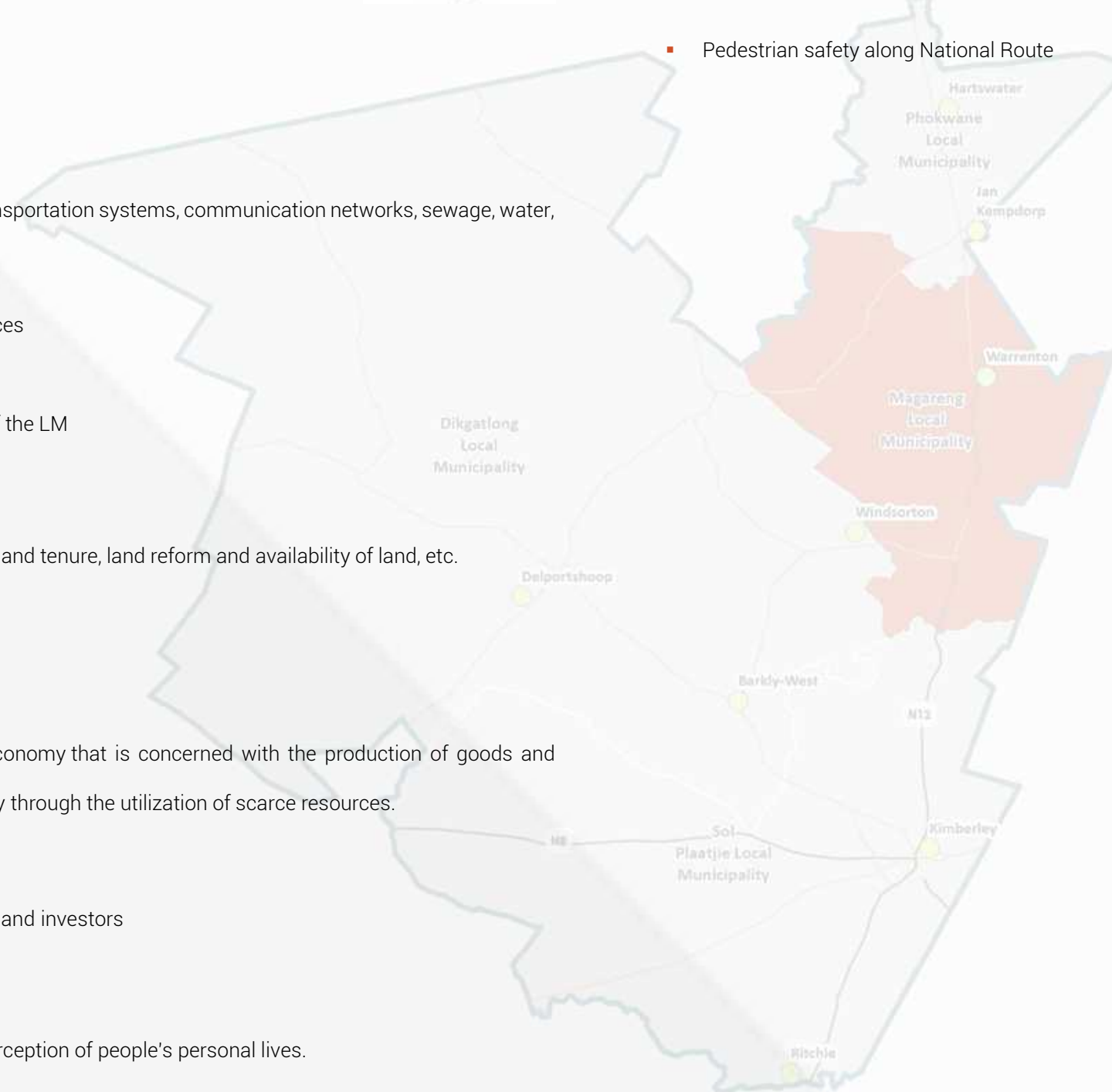


- Lack of social facilities in rural areas
- Lack of tertiary education facilities

Key Movement Issues

Movement issues refer to issues related to the movement of objects or people from one location to another.

- Pedestrian safety along National Route



Key Issues – Phokwane Local Municipality

Key Environmental Issues

Environmental issues are defined as problems with the planet's systems (air, water, soil, etc.) that have developed as a result of human interference or mistreatment of the planet.

- Lack of protection of ecologically sensitive area

Key Infrastructure Issues

Infrastructure issues are defined as problems with transportation systems, communication networks, sewage, water, and electric systems, etc.

- Disjuncture between bulk infrastructure and housing developments

Key Land Issues

Land issues are defined as problems associated with land tenure, land reform and availability of land, etc.

- Scattered settlements throughout the municipal area
- Safety risk when structures are built within the flood line
- There is a need to control the urban edge to contain urban sprawl
- Lack of identified land for housing development



Key Economic Issues

Economic issues refer to any such problem in the economy that is concerned with the production of goods and services to satisfy the unlimited wants of the economy through the utilization of scarce resources.

- Identify tourism nodes within the LM and market these accordingly

Key Social Issues

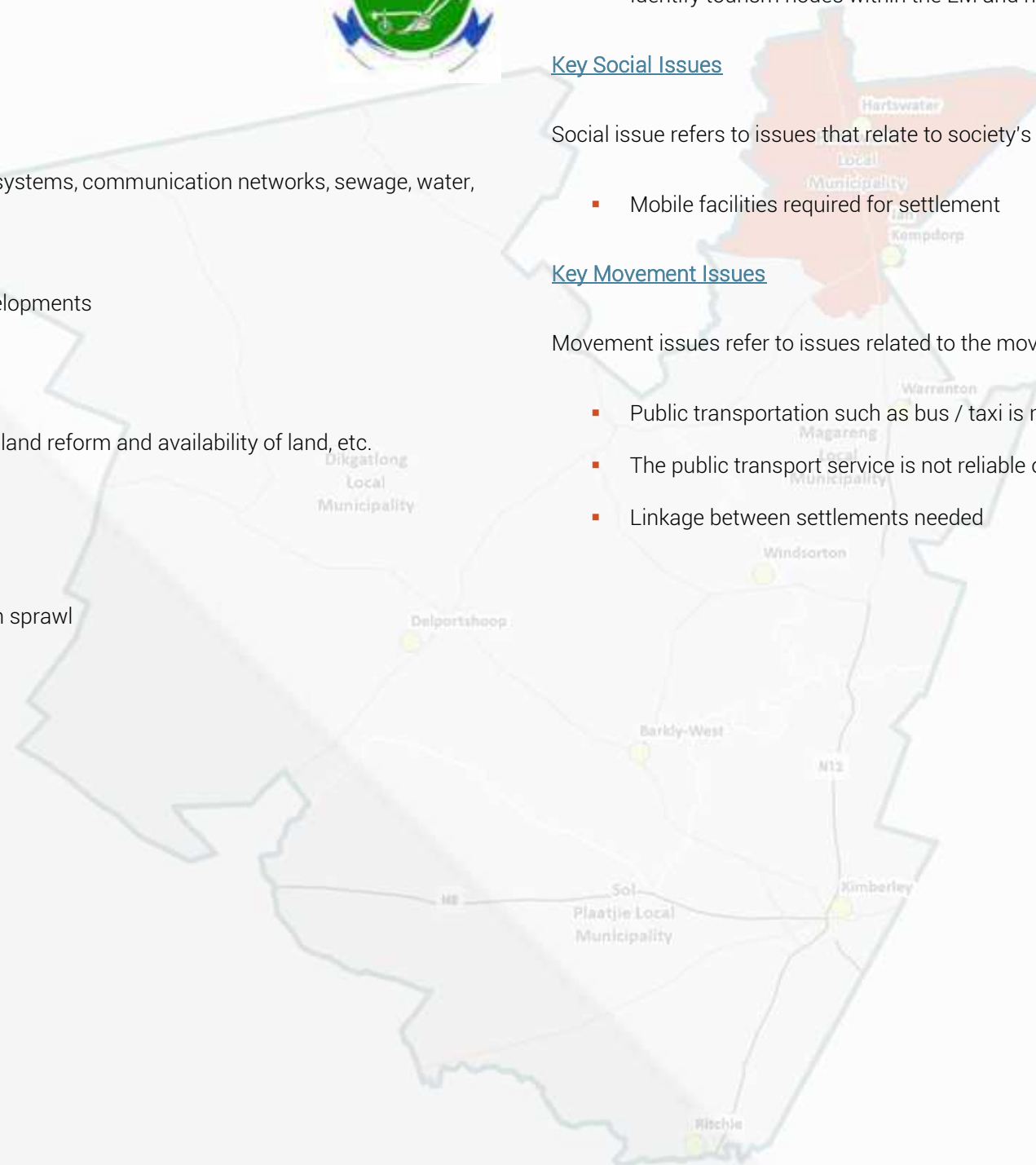
Social issue refers to issues that relate to society's perception of people's personal lives.

- Mobile facilities required for settlement

Key Movement Issues

Movement issues refer to issues related to the movement of objects or people from one location to another.

- Public transportation such as bus / taxi is not affordable to residents
- The public transport service is not reliable or does not cover the routes people wish to take
- Linkage between settlements needed



The following key issues have been outlined for the general FBDM, including the consideration of the Local Municipalities. It is these defines Key Issues that would need to be addressed when developing a vision and spatial plan for the district.



The slide features a dark navy blue central rectangle containing the chapter title. This rectangle is framed by a thick orange line that forms a large, stylized arrow pointing to the right. The background is white, with teal-colored triangular shapes in the corners and along the left and bottom edges, creating a modern, geometric aesthetic.

CHAPTER 04

Strategic Framework

STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK

The “Strategic Framework” in relation to a Spatial Development Framework refers to the strategic background and guidelines which will underpin the development of the Spatial proposals. It aims to identify the strategic spatial focus of and the municipality. The development strategy includes meaningful target measures and objectives that help focus on the key efforts that implement the strategy.

The following diagram outlines the structure of the chapter:



4.A. Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 2013 Principles

Legally, the development principles of SPLUMA must guide a strategic response to spatial development challenges and opportunities in FBDM. Accordingly, the table below sets out the proposed strategic application of the SPLUMA Development Principles in the FBDM SDF Review:



SPLUMA Development Principle	Elements of the SPLUMA Principle	Strategic Application in the FBDM SDF
Spatial Justice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> past spatial and other development imbalances should be redressed through improved access to, and utilisation of, land. spatial development frameworks and policy at all spheres of government should address the inclusion of persons and areas that were previously excluded, with an emphasis on informal settlements and areas characterised by widespread poverty and deprivation; spatial planning mechanisms, including zoning schemes, should incorporate provisions that enable redress in access to land by disadvantaged communities and persons; land use management systems should include all areas of a municipality and specifically include provisions that are flexible and appropriate for the management of disadvantaged areas and informal settlements; land development procedures must include provisions that accommodate access to, and facilitation of, security of tenure and the incremental upgrading of informal areas; a competent authority contemplated in this Act or other relevant authority considering an application before it, may not be impeded or restricted in the exercise of its discretion solely on the ground that the value of land or property will be affected by the outcome of the application; and the right of owners to develop land in accordance with current use rights should be recognised. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Directs the DM SDF process to seek spatial planning and land use management solutions that effectively promote redress of circumstances that were caused by past politically based policies, which resulted in inequitable and fragmented spatial arrangements in urban and rural settlement layout designs as well as unequal levels of access to land and associated resources. Highlights the need to identify opportunities where the spatial configuration of settlements and/or land holdings may be transformed by the development of strategically located land to promote the integration of settlements and better located opportunities for the socio-economic upliftment of disadvantaged communities. <p>Strategic Imperative:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify spatial integration opportunities and implement sustained programmatic interventions to achieve spatial transformation and the development of key, centrally located sites within the district
Spatial Sustainability	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> promote land development that is spatially compact, resource-frugal and within the fiscal, institutional and administrative means of the relevant competent authority in terms of this Act or other relevant authority; ensure that special consideration is given to the protection of prime, unique and high potential agricultural land; uphold consistency of land use measures in accordance with environmental management instruments; promote and stimulate the effective and equitable functioning of land markets; consider all current and future costs to all parties for the provision of infrastructure and social services in land developments; promote land development in locations that are sustainable and limit urban sprawl; result in communities that are viable; and 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Places emphasise on balancing land development and market-driven initiatives against the imperative to conserve the natural resource base (ecological infrastructure) and to manage resource usage in a sustainable manner; Highlights the need to ensure that the provision of infrastructure and social facilities – including the post-development maintenance thereof – is adequately planned for; Again, emphasises the importance of consolidating settlement footprints and promoting spatial integration; Directs that spatial planning strategies should prioritise long-term sustainable solutions rather than short-term political and/or market-driven initiatives; <p>Strategic Imperative:</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • strive to ensure that the basic needs of all citizens are met in an affordable way; • the sustained protection of the environment should be ensured by having regard to the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o natural habitat, ecological corridors and areas with high biodiversity importance; • the provincial heritage and tourism resources; • the economic potential of the relevant area or region; • the provision and conservation of, and the management of the demand for, energy should be considered in land use planning; • the safe utilisation of land should be ensured by taking into consideration factors such as sea-level rise, storm surges, flooding, fire hazards and geological formations; • development should be principle-driven and should prioritise long-term social, economic, and environmental benefits over short-term benefits. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Embed Evidence-Based Wise Land Use Management and ensure that all land development decisions lead to sustainable outcomes where residents are well-connected to social and economic opportunities and have access to adequate infrastructure and social services that are within the financial means of FBDM to develop and maintain over time.
Efficiency	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • land development should optimise the use of existing resources, infrastructure, agriculture, land, minerals, and facilities; • integrated cities and towns should be developed, whereby– • the social, economic, institutional, and physical aspects of land development is integrated; • land development in rural and urban areas in support of each other is promoted; • the availability of residential and employment opportunities in close proximity to, or integrated with, each other is promoted; • a diverse combination of land uses is promoted; • the phenomenon of urban sprawl in urban areas is discouraged and the development of more compact towns and cities with denser habitation is promoted; • historically distorted spatial patterns of settlement are corrected; and • the quality and functionality of the public spatial environment is promoted; and • policy, administrative practice, and legislation should promote speedy land development. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Promotes compaction of settlements and the avoidance wherever possible of extending settlement footprints or the development of so-called satellite townships that was a feature of Apartheid settlement strategies, which require the extension or development of new associated services infrastructure networks • Also addresses the need to strengthen the positive and reciprocal relationships between urban settlements and rural hinterland areas by identifying what urban settlements do for the rural areas and how the assets and livelihoods offered in the rural areas hold benefits for the urban parts of FBDM • Places focus on urban design interventions to promote mixed land uses in appropriate localities as well as improve the quality of public spaces <p>Strategic Imperative:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Promote and implement more compact spatial development in both urban and rural settlements, with a wider mix of land uses to promote the efficient use of scarce resources and build on existing infrastructure networks
Spatial Resilience	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • whereby flexibility in spatial plans, policy and land use management systems is accommodated to ensure sustainable 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Emphasizes the need to be more aware of the challenges of climate breakdown

	<p>livelihoods in communities most likely to suffer the impact of economic and environmental shocks.</p>	<p>as well as unforeseen and potentially extreme events, and to plan accordingly</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Highlights the need to allow for flexibility in urban design and urban management <p>Strategic Imperative:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ensure adaptability in FBDM's planning and development programmes to accommodate spatial planning and land use management changes necessitated by Climate Breakdown and socio-economic trends Resilience against the effects of a pandemic
Good Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> all spheres of government should ensure an integrated approach to land use planning; all government departments must provide their sector inputs and comply with any other statutory requirements during the preparation or amendment of spatial development frameworks; the requirements of any law relating to land development and land use must be met timeously; the preparation and amendment of spatial plans, policy, zoning schemes and procedures for land development and land use applications, should include transparent processes of public participation that afford all parties the opportunity to provide inputs on matters affecting them; legislation, procedures, and administrative practice relating to land development should be clear, promote predictability, trust and acceptance in order to inform and empower members of the public; a spatial development framework, zoning scheme or policy should be developed in phases and each phase in the development thereof should include consultation with the public and relevant organs of state and should be endorsed by the relevant competent authority; decision-making in all spheres of government should be guided by and give effect to statutory land use planning systems. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Directs that spatial planning and land use management are core municipal planning activities to be underpinned by cooperative governance arrangements; Again, emphasises the importance of speedy administrative processes in dealing with land development; Places strong emphasis on the need for an effective administration to engage in meaningful partnerships with key public and private sector stakeholders <p>Strategic Imperative:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Integration of effort in ensuring a multi-lateral (multi-stakeholder) governance approach to spatial planning and land use management

Table 7: SPLUMA Development Principles and a Strategic Approach for the FBDM SDF

4.B. FBDM Guiding Principles

The following Guiding Principles have been developed in accordance with the SPLUMA guiding principles. These have further been specifically identified for the FBDM based on the SWOT and key issues identified and building on the strengths of the municipality and the areas which require further emphasis on. The following Spatial Guiding Principles are outlined for the FBDM SDF. These guiding principles have been developed in line with the goals and objectives of the Northern Cape Spatial Development Framework as the National Spatial Development Framework.

1. Development of Sustainable Human Settlements

This guiding principle seeks to address the critical interventions required that would counter current **shortcomings** in the way settlements perform. Key areas of concern include dealing with the existing **sparsely dispersed settlements** and the **lack of certain social amenities** within some settlements and the wide variety of housing needs applicable to various areas of the district related to **tenure challenges**, especially those that are poorly catered for by current housing markets. Other areas of concern relate to the need to ensure that housing opportunities are developed in areas that offer **better access** to social and economic opportunities to the most people (especially the less well-off who are most reliant on public transport); and to the need to ensure that levels of access to critical social facilities and services are **progressively improved**. This aims to ensure that the people are in areas where they would be able to access the **job market** and **social amenities**.

The FBDM will aim to promote **affordable housing provision** near employment opportunities and near established urban activity nodes with social amenities.

This principle relates to the department of Human Settlements. The district SDF will further aim to ensure that a full range of **social facilities** and services are available to **support human settlements**. This will be achieved through identifying the areas where social amenities are lacking to be able to identify those **gap spots** within the district where certain social amenities will be proposed.

It has been noted through the assessment of the Key Issues pertaining to the location of residential settlements, there are **many sparsely located settlements** which have limited access to social amenities. The goal would be here to ensure that residents have access to these facilities through the **development of Sustainable Human Settlements**.



The District would also need to ensure that this applies to the development of new settlements addressing the **housing backlog**.

The implications of the development of sustainable human settlements with regards to FBDM, is that more residents will have access to social amenities as well as economic opportunities and more human settlements will be located closely to each other to promote equal access to social amenities as well as better access.

Also to make provision of housing more affordable and accessible for ALL the residents of FBDM closer to workplaces and social amenities so that they don't have to travel long distances just to get access to services.

2. Ensuring a Sustainable and Functioning Environment

The two major areas constraining the **environment** within the context of the FBDM are the growing effects of **climate change** and the crucial role played by the natural environment in providing the essential ecosystem goods and services upon which the environmental sphere thrives upon.

The second **environmental** concern within the district is the effects of **mining** and the impacts on the environment of this thriving economic sector to the district. The question lies in how we find the **balance** in ensuring a sustainable natural environment while continuing with **mining activities** which is a main source of income within the FBDM.

Key concerns are that spatial development and human land uses should be **planned** and **managed** so as not to disrupt or destroy **critical biodiversity areas**. The aim of the guiding principle also highlights the need for planning to strengthen the **resilience of communities** and to allow for contingencies when responding to **natural disaster events**.

It has been noted within the LM SDFs as well as the previous district SDF, that information regarding Environmental conservation is somewhat lacking within the district.



Implications:

The intention of the FBDM under this guiding principle would be to support the conservation and rehabilitation of critical biodiversity areas (CBAs) , ecological support areas (ESAs) , to protect life and property from the impacts of climate breakdown and natural hazards as well as to promote active and healthy lifestyles for the residents of FBDM.

This will help the residents care for their environment whilst still being able to continue with mining related activities which in turn will boost the economy of the District and secondly the more residents are made aware of the impacts of climate change and educated about ways to help reduce the impacts, then this will make residents more knowledgeable and aware therefore our environment will be well taken of and preserved for future generations to come.

This guiding principle will also aim to address **Infrastructure upgrading** and provision within the district. It has been noted through the assessment of Key Issues, all LMs within the district mention the insufficient maintenance and **upgrading of infrastructure** with regards to roads, access to transportation, wastewater treatment, sanitation, etc.

Implications:

The implications of managing and maintaining safe and accessible infrastructure provision within FBDM is that residents will have access to well maintained infrastructures such as buildings, roads, transportation, sanitation service, electricity and so forth. A city cannot run without these, therefore since FBDM is making it a priority residents as well as the administration of the city/town will run smoothly and sufficiently. This basically means better quality of services will be available to all residents.

1. Managing and Maintaining Safe and Accessible Infrastructure Provision

This guiding principle focuses on the importance of ensuring that **existing infrastructure** networks are **adequately maintained** and that scarce critical **(life-enabling) resources** such as water are protected and managed to ensure wise and sustainable use.

This guiding principle also emphasises the need to plan for **the changing services provision context**, especially the impact of changes in how activist citizens have begun to **design solutions** in order to reduce their absolute dependency on municipal services provision. The challenge to previously reliable revenue streams is likely to continue unabated and the need, therefore, to **embrace planning** and the progressive implementation of **SMART infrastructure** networks is emphasised.

Under this principle, the FBDM will protect scarce water resources, invest in existing and new infrastructure networks in order to provide communities with access to sustainable infrastructure services, including **transportation infrastructure** which allows for the ease of access to various neighbouring communities to access social amenities and the job market. The FBDM under the goal for the development of a Smart district will aim **to promote energy conservation** and alternative **energy production**.



2. Access to and Affordable Public Transportation and Accessible Linkages Between Settlements.

This guiding principle focuses on the interplay of **viable public transportation** with the appropriate pattern of **land use and settlement development** within the district. It is clearly recognised that public transport functions best and most sustainably when it services a user population that resides at **sufficient density and distances** from various land uses within the areas of which the transport services is offered. Thus, it is emphasised that this principle encompasses the need to plan for public transportation services in tandem with **planning** for the transformation of **inefficient spatial patterns** of development over time.

This principle is specifically aimed at addressing the **settlement imbalances** within the FBDM with the sparsely located settlements and social amenities required to serve the needs of community members.

In line with the concept of **Transit Oriented Development**, the FBDM under this principle should address the prioritisation of public transportation in line with the development of **human settlements** and the allocation of social amenities within the district through promoting integrated planning with regards to land use and transportation planning.



The district should also aim to **adequately address** the safe movement of people using non-motorised means of transportation. This seen as a key means of movement and to be able to support this, LMs and the district should **prioritise safety and security** for these residents through street lighting and other **urban design features** to ensure safe movement.

Implications:

The implications of better access to and affordable public transportation and accessible linkages between settlements for the residents of FBDM ensures that residents will now be able to move around the city/town smoothly without any constraints such as financial constraints. It will make it easier for residents to take up a job/school anywhere around the city because they won't be restricted by lack of public transportation available to specific areas. If this is rectified, then residents would be able to move anywhere around the town without feeling restricted.

Lastly, improving linkages between settlements will also further promote movement of residents around FBDM making it easier for them to access social and economic opportunities.

3. Thriving economy which is well positioned within the province and within the country

This guiding principle is included as it recognises the need for **sustainable economic** development and it's fundamental enabler of spatial development and **spatial transformation**. Thus, it is emphasised that **spatial strategies** and plans as well as the land use management regime administered by the FBDM and must be designed so as to **facilitate** and enhance the opportunities for **sustainable economic development** in the area. This is likely to require different areas of focus in different urban and rural components of the municipality.

This principle also recognises the areas for **economic advancements** such as in the secondary sector to support the **mining** within the district by adding value change to the **natural resources sourced**. Also essential to this theme is to address the issue of old mining areas by looking at alternative uses for these sites.

Another sector which can be looked at is that of **tourism**. Currently, the Sol Plaatjes LM is the predominant area for tourism generation within the district. Addressing **tourism opportunities** within other LMs through enhancing and



promoting the natural assets will ensure **overall growth** in this sector for FBDM. Coupled with this, it is also essential to protect and manage the **historic and cultural resources** which can also act as a form of tourism generation for the district.

Skills transfer and supporting **SMME's** is another economic area where locals require support. The SDF will address how to grow this sector to effectively support residents to be able to support themselves and be less reliant on **government support grants**.

Implications:

This guiding principle ensures that the district would be able to be a strong economic contributor, not only within the province, but also amongst neighbouring districts and further, within the country. There will be less unemployment rates, less poverty-stricken households and also less people will be dependent on social grants because the province will be generating more money/cash flow through mining activities which are in Kimberley and also tourism (historic and cultural). This will create more jobs and also SMME's will receive more support.

All these factors are going to grow the economy and it will be thriving also will be able to compete with the other provinces.

4. Sustainable Rural Development

There are many rural settlements located **throughout** the district. This guiding principle seeks to take into account the realities of the interplay between **FBDM's urban areas and its rural settlements**, and especially the **linkage** between these areas.

While it is understood that urban settlements are the **future centres of economic activity** and will likely increase in importance in this aspect, an appropriate focus on both **socio-economic** and **transformative spatial development** and **land use management** is crucial in rural areas. This is so for a few reasons. Firstly, rural areas largely remain the terrain where **key ecosystem services** (water, carbon capturing vegetation, fertile soils etc.) originate and need to be **conserved** and **managed** appropriately. Secondly, rural areas fulfil important roles for the citizens of the area in respect of food production, as places of residence and important socio-cultural heritage.



The FBDM SDF will aim to **facilitate the integration** between rural and urban areas by **improving access and connectivity**. The SDF will also aim to facilitate the **development of the rural economy** and promote and support **sustainable agricultural initiatives** in rural settlements. This will allow to support communities by facilitating food **security programme opportunities** within these areas to be able to improve their livelihoods.

Implications:

The implication of this guiding principle is that there will be improved integration and connectivity between rural and urban areas within FBDM. Also, the urban areas will be improved and there will be more initiatives or programmes that develop the rural economy for the people and rural area as whole.

There will be an improved connection between the rural and urban in such a way that they operate in sync, whatever the other lack the other is able to assist with. There will also be improved access, all of these will promote and supports sustainable initiatives whilst also being able to facilitate food security programmes within the rural areas.

5. "Smart City" and Information Technology

Cities and areas in third world countries have been seeing the need for advancing this sector. This guiding principle understands that our societies are **increasingly experiencing** the effects of what is termed the **Fourth Industrial Revolution**, which is characterised by a **rapid changeover between older and new technologies**, this principle acknowledges the importance of ensuring that the settlements within the FBDM, whether **rural or urban are not left behind**. The district has already been facing issues of lack of **access to the internet** which hinders the growth and development of the specific skills required for the **current job market**.

Therefore, **planning, land use management and investment** in the built environment must be geared so as to facilitate the rollout of **new information** and **communication technologies** to serve **communities within the district**. In addition, the opportunities to invest in smart technologies to enhance and improve the quality of infrastructure networks and their management and maintenance must not be missed.



Addressing this theme with that of **improvements in infrastructure** is seen as critical through managing municipal infrastructure using **smart technology** to be able to keep up with the trends while proving for communities. The district SDF will aim to support and encourage **technological and social connectivity** issues for residents.

It has further been noted that the **National SDF** outlines the Kimberly area within the **Sol Plaatjes LM** as being a **Transition area**. Through this theme, the district SDF will aim to outline what this means for the district and provide proposals where the district can assist with the creation of this goal.

Implications:

The implications of this guiding principle for FBDM is that smart cities are socially engaged, financially stable, business-oriented, data-driven, environmentally friendly, and energy-efficient cities. We can also conclude that smart city initiatives can alleviate cities' challenges, thus, enhancing economic development.

What this will mean for FBDM is that the district will be more effective, safer, there will be increased digital equity and new economic development opportunities and so forth. Also, information and communication will be better circulated within and around the district in faster and more effective manner.

6. Effective Governance

This principle highlights the importance of ensuring **efficiency, transparency, and inclusiveness** in the FBDM's approach to fulfilling its Municipal Planning mandate, specifically about **spatial planning** and **land use management**. This means that emphasis is to be placed on communication with **interested and affected parties** to any planning initiative and ensuring transparency between municipal functions and **public knowledge** to ensure that the public is part of the planning process and that they essentially are satisfied with the projects proposed within the spaces in which the live and utilise.

Priority is to be given to ensuring that a **sound and technically proficient administration** is developed and nurtured, so as to win the **trust** and support of **all stakeholders** and community members who share a common interest in seeing sustainable development become a reality for the FBDM.



Implications:

The implications of this guiding principle that it will improve the administration of FBDM, in terms of good relationship between authorities and the residents in this case can be considered as the public. It means that the public can have a say in terms of procedures followed and decisions made in terms of spatial planning and land use management.

Authorities and the public can work together in developing the District towards the right direction.



VISION

Developing a vision for a district needs to be based on or ensured alignment to the visions from a national and provincial level. The vision should take cognisance of the tiers of spatial representation where the vision of the minor context should be taken direction from the vision of the larger context. The vision would aim to direct growth of its spatial area based on the strengths of the area as well as aspiring to positively impact on the issues pertaining to the area.

The vision for the Frances Baard District SDF has been developed in line with the National Spatial Development Framework (NSDF), the Northern Cape Provincial Spatial Development Framework and well as the Frances Baard District Integrated Development Plan (IDP). The vision statements for these above-mentioned plans as well as the vision for the reviewed SDF are highlighted below.

The vision was also developed through consultation / workshopping sessions with the Local Municipalities where engaging sessions took place discussing the key issues pertaining to the Local Municipalities and thereafter defining a vision based on the outline of, the key issues and using the previous SDF Vision as a base.



OBJECTIVES AND STRATEGIES

In terms of the White Paper on Spatial Planning and Land Use Management, 2001, “The overall aim of the principles and norms is to achieve planning outcomes” that (1) Restructure spatially inefficient settlements, (2) Promote the sustainable use of the land resources in the country, (3) Channel resources to areas of greatest need and development potential, thereby redressing the inequitable historical treatment of marginalised areas.

In order to achieve the future vision, the following development objectives and strategies have been formulated:

OBJECTIVES	STRATEGIES
<p>BASIC NEEDS:</p> <p>Ensuring availability-acceptable level of infrastructure and service delivery</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Aiming to provide the necessary social amenities to serve the needs of locals; ▪ The development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements; ▪ Communication and connectivity - technological ▪ Develop smart strategies for the basic service delivery ▪ Prioritize areas of greatest need; ▪ Link services and service supply networks to optimize efficiency; ▪ Facilitation of integrated and inclusive planning.
<p>SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION:</p> <p>Creating an efficient and integrated Human Settlement patterns in the Frances Baard District Municipality</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Consolidate and densify settlements where appropriate; ▪ Promote the integration of sprawling settlements; ▪ Prioritize, maintain and upgrade strategic link routes ▪ Prioritize access to Social Amenities to support community livelihoods.
<p>LINKAGES AND ACCESS:</p> <p>Well-structured road and rail network system to ease movement; to create efficient and effective links between nodes, relevant products and services</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Identify nodes and products that require linkages; ▪ Identify and prioritize where the need is the greatest; ▪ Maintenance and upgrading of the road network to allow for smart growth linking to Kimberley; ▪ Provide access to tourist routes;
<p>LAND USE MANAGEMENT:</p> <p>An appropriate Land Use Management Systems in operation across the District Municipality; and security of access to land for development</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Support and implement a programme to develop appropriate new Zoning Scheme for urban and rural areas in line with the direction of new legislation; ▪ Promote integrated ward-based plans. Support Land Reform and Settlement upgrade initiatives by identifying areas of opportunities.
<p>ENVIRONMENT:</p> <p>Adhering to sound environmental practices in line with legislation; and protecting environmentally sensitive areas while considering climate change</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Support and implement a programme to develop appropriate new Zoning Scheme for urban and rural areas in line with the direction of new legislation; ▪ Support land reform and settlement upgrade initiatives by identifying zones of opportunities according to land needs
<p>ECONOMIC GROWTH</p> <p>Ensuring Economic sustainability for the citizens of the FBDM</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Creating an enabling environment that caters for Investment and income generation for the district; ▪ Uplift the skills base of communities to allow them to be able to earn a living ▪ Investigate potential or enhance existing tourism opportunities

SPATIAL SCENARIOS

Development scenarios are an important phase of the SDF formulation process. Development scenarios are not predictions or roadmaps, they are constructed in order to give a particular point of view in the future as well as some informed speculation about the crosscutting paths that might get us to that particular point. The power of scenarios lies in provoking a sense of “what might be a possibility as well as in combining probabilities” in ways that might not have previously thought of.

As mentioned in the Northern Cape Provincial SDF, a high growth scenario is proposed which aims towards a 3% or higher growth rate in order to meet the socio-economic needs of the residents. The PSDF places focus on Kimberley as becoming an urban driver of rapid, inclusive and sustainable economic growth, as well as societal and spatial transformation. This is envisioned by the Provincial SDF in order to achieve the vision 2030 set out in the National SDF:

4.C. Scenario 1: Uncontrolled development / Business as Usual

As outlined in the summary from the PSDF diagram below, uncontrolled development is also aligned to “haphazard outcomes”. This scenario aims to directly address issues without careful consideration of external or outcoming factors. This proposal is at first seen as positive, as it addresses immediate needs. But what it lacks to address is that of sustainable development or much thought of a longer-term impact.

The positive features of this scenario are as follows:

- Strong private sector investment in high growth areas with a large onus for infrastructure upgrade;
- Broad based government expenditure aimed at addressing social need in poverty-stricken areas;
- There will be large scale demand for urban and peripheral urban sites with a consequent demand for urban level services;

The negative impacts expected as an outcome of this scenario is as follows:

- Challenges affecting areas that are supposed to be conserved for future generations – biodiversity hot spots could be destroyed;
- Agricultural soils will be washed away, there will be no grazing land for rural households, poverty levels will increase, and rural land will continue to lose it's value;

- Vacant and local commonage land resources will become fully developed with time
- Economic and employment growth will continue along its current trajectory, maintaining the joblessness cycle within the province.

4.D. Scenario 2: Accelerated growth

The high-growth scenario will require exceptional growth rates of approximately 2.1% (NC PSDF, 2018). Public sector interventions would be the key driving force. Future development should be bound by economic rationale – meaning that money should be invested in locations where it will have maximum impact. This will result in an improved spatial development pattern.

The following are identified as features of this growth scenario:

- Infrastructure upgrade vests with government and is not shifted to private sector
- Government investment in low growth / marginal markets should be highly focused and strategically aimed at high potential nodes and corridors
- The emphasis will gradually shift from government investment in social services and nonrevenue generating subsidy housing to new income generating commercial developments

4.E. Scenario 3: Tempered Growth

Tempered Growth can also be identified as “managed development” and includes having proper development controls and guidelines for development put in place for effective and well-thought out development controls that considers all individuals and aspects.

The main features of this scenario are as follows:

- Broad based government expenditure aimed at addressing social need in poverty-stricken areas;

- Increasing population growth is anticipated to continue within the core urban areas – Kimberley and supporting centres– as urbanisation continues
- There will be large scale demand for urban and peripheral urban sites with a consequent demand for urban level services
- Rural areas will experience an increased level of migration to larger urban centres, increasing the pressure to provide services in urban regions
- Infrastructure as well as some key roads has already outgrown their planned capacities and will need upgrading and continuous maintenance

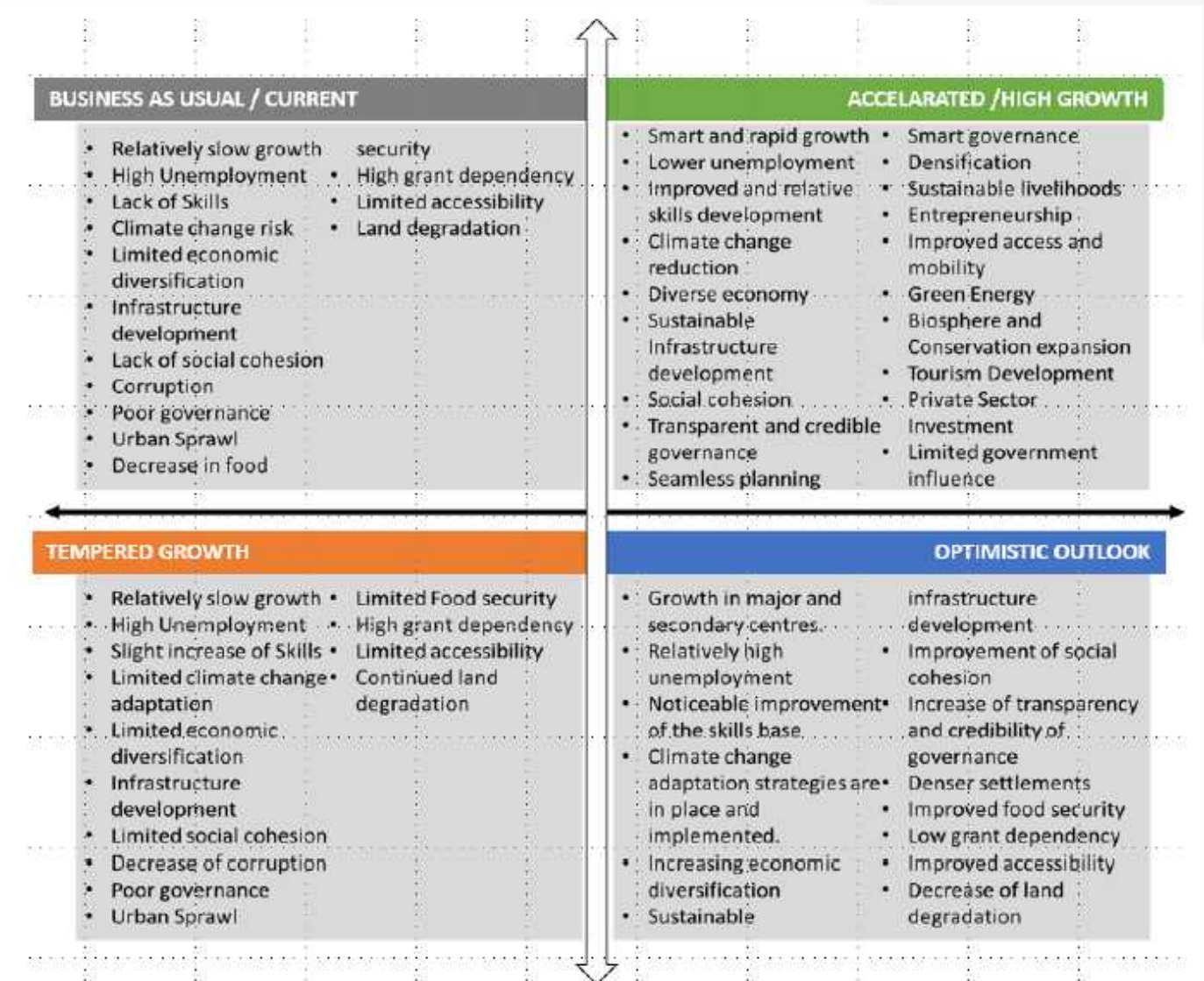
4.F. Scenario 4: Optimistic Outlook

This scenario aims to achieve high growth but will require direct decisive interventions. This scenario looks at an average growth rate of 2.1%. It will require decisive and well thought through and accurately aimed public sector interventions. Future development should be bound by economic rationale – meaning that money should be invested in locations where it will have maximum impact. This will result in an improved spatial development pattern.

The following outlines the key aspects of this scenario:

- Strong private sector investment in high growth areas, supported by focused government infrastructure investment to optimise the growth effect and subsequent income-generating;
- Onus for infrastructure upgrade vests with government and is not shifted to private sector;
- The emphasis will gradually shift from government investment in social services and nonrevenue generating subsidy housing to new income generating commercial developments, job creation and concomitant tax base expansion
- Government investment in low growth / marginal markets should be highly focused and strategically aimed at high potential nodes and corridors – enhancing attractiveness for (income generating) private sector investment

The diagram alongside is a summary snapshot of the Four (4) scenarios. It is an extract of the NC PSDF, 2018.



4.G. Preferred Scenario

The preferred scenario is based on a consolidation of various aspects of all three (3) scenarios. It aims to look at managed growth to ensure that consideration is taken to sustainable development, as well as high-priority growth sectors which require urgent attention.

The aspects of the preferred growth scenario are as follows:

- Long term infrastructure projects aligning to the growth projections of the district
- Focus on the natural environment for economic growth
- Broad based government expenditure aimed at addressing social need in poverty-stricken areas;
- More tax revenue is generated – creating more scope for social investment in low growth areas
- Addressing tourism potentials

4.H. Growth Projections

Population forecasting was a key factor in our determining our regions for intervention and investment. It has been found that information regarding population growth and demands are compiled regularly within local municipalities

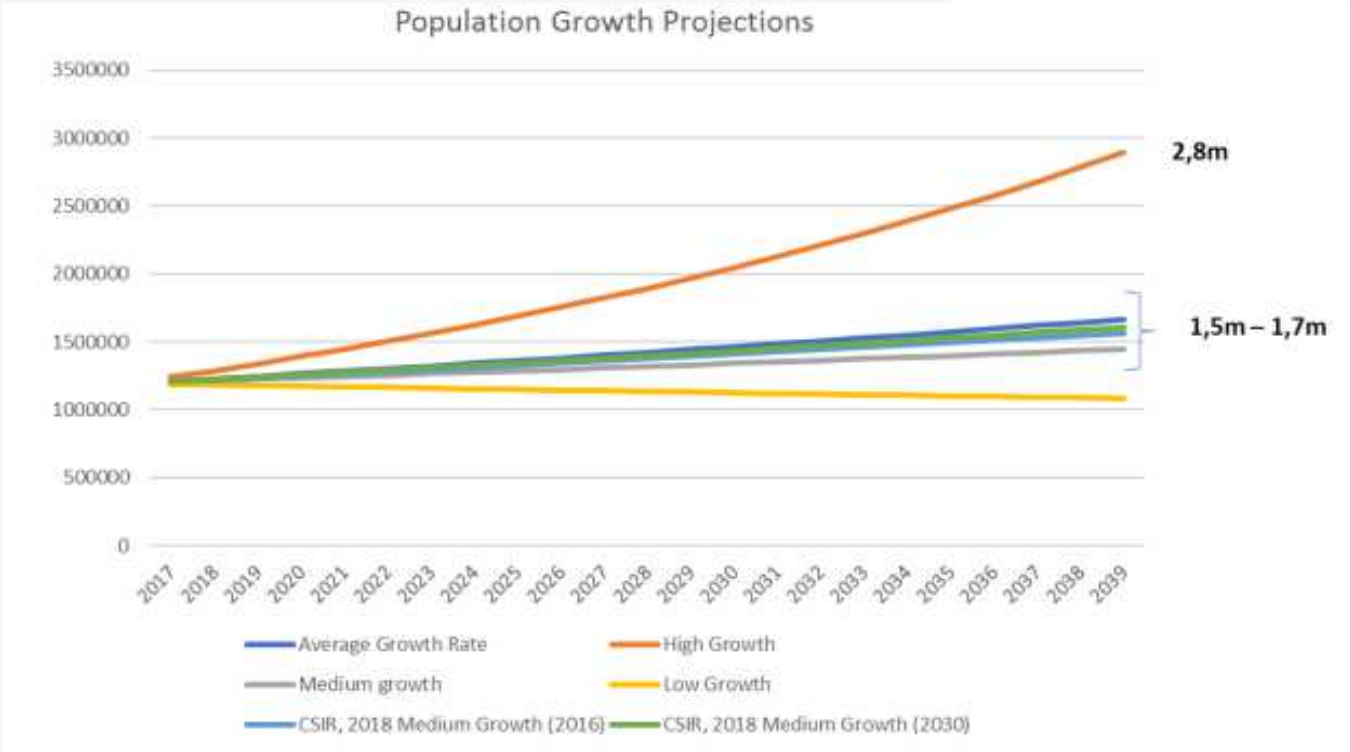
Projected population and need of sustainable human settlements within the Frances Baard District is based on the projection for Northern Cape are based on **an average growth scenario (1.47 % growth rate per annum, measured between 1996 - 2016)**, a high growth scenario (3.93 % p.a., measured between 2001 and 2011) a medium growth scenario (0.84 % p.a., measured between 2011 and 2016) and low growth scenario (-0.42% p.a., measured between 1996 - 2001), NC PSDF, 2019.

For the projected analysis an average growth scenario will be adopted. In addition, population projections by the CSIR (as stated in the NSDF) has been used to reaffirm the projections calculated using the above projection rates. The NSDF envisage a development shift from the west towards the east of South Africa and this could prevail growth projects experienced between 1996 and 2001. Urbanisation would also have certain growth implications in the Province (especially towards the central and eastern regions such as Upington, Kuruman and Kimberley).

Through the Status Quo development, it has been outlined that the total Population for the Frances Baard District is **387 741 people** (as identified in the IDP, 2017). The following population is thus projected for the year 2050, using an average growth rate of 1.47% p/a for the Local Municipalities of the Frances Baard District.

Municipality	2016	2050
Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	255 909	420 306
Dikgatlong Local Municipality	46 529	76 419
Magareng Local Municipality	23 264	38 209
Phokwane Local Municipality	62 039	101893
Frances Baard District Municipality	387 741	636 828

Table 8: Municipal Growth Projection



4.1. Conceptual Framework

The conceptual Framework is a “blob diagram” framework plan for the study area which is based on the spatial vision and spatial objectives as indicated in the previous sections of this SDF. It indicates how the issues identified will be addressed spatially, based on potential objectives.

The conceptual framework should be a single drawing to allow for diagrammatic illustrations of “ideas/guidelines: to inform the SDF according to the guidelines unique opportunities should be indicated such as:

- General land use patterns;
- Key nodes and links;
- No-go areas for urban development;
- Agricultural and environmental protection; and
- Key areas for development.

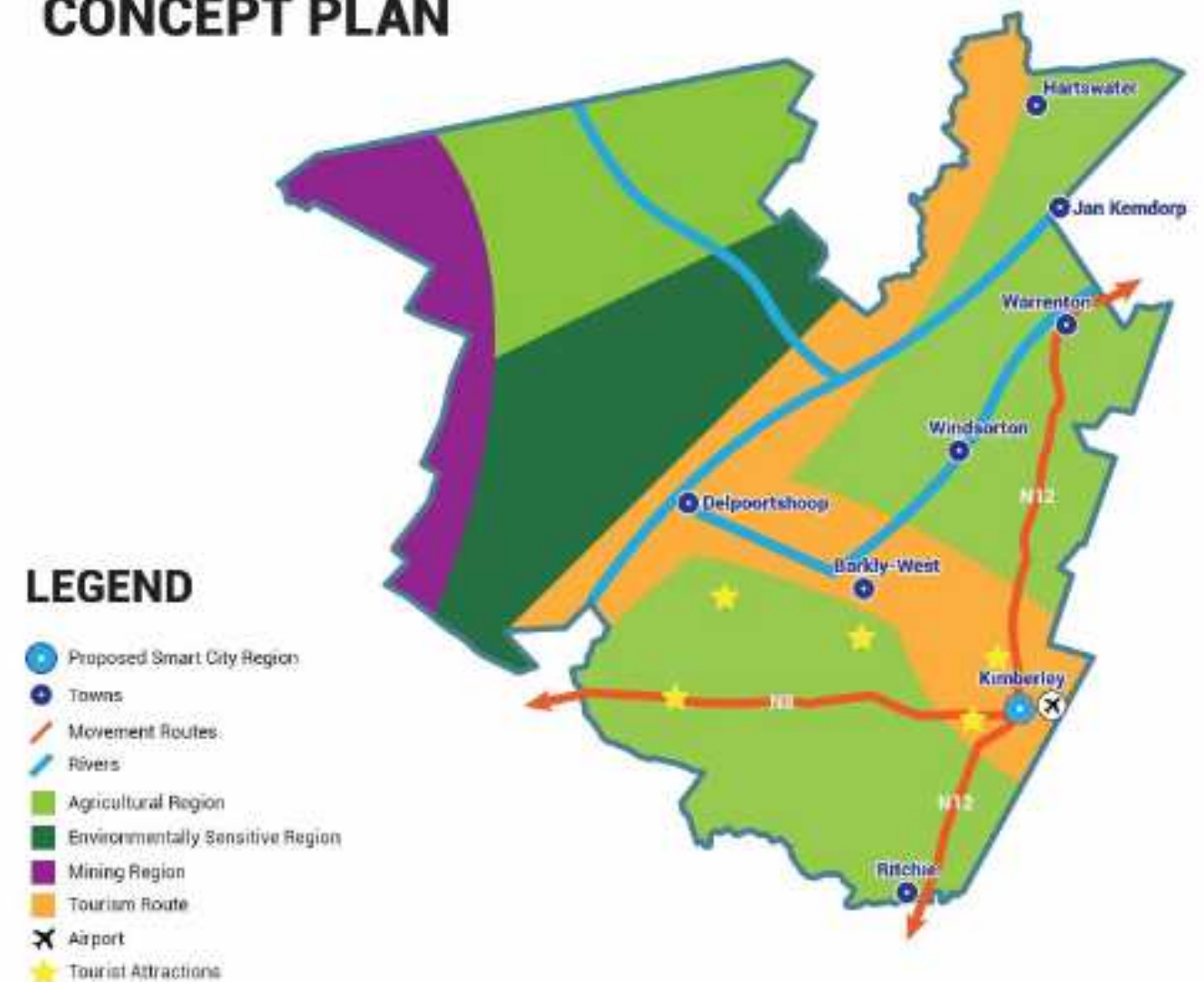
A framework indicates basic planning principles to apply to achieve an ecological balance and to create a more rational cost effective and manageable spatial structure.

The concept illustrates the following:

- Towns, which are key areas to which urban development should be directed and where a higher intensity of land uses and activities are supported.
- Agriculture and environmental sensitive areas, which are typical “no go” areas for urban development.
- Mobility routes – mobility should be improved between urban and rural areas.
- Potential key economic sectors such as tourism, mining or agriculture

It is crucial that this urban-rural relationship be reinforced by strengthening existing urban centres on the one hand, and to diversify and protect agriculture and environmental resources on the other. A good road network is the essential link between urban and rural areas.

CONCEPT PLAN



Plan 17: Concept Plan

SPATIAL STRUCTURING ELEMENTS

Spatial Structuring Elements are defined key prominent features of the study area which the development of spatial proposals will be based on. They are embedded by the opportunities of study area and help structure the focus of the spatial proposals.

In order to plan efficiently, there needs to be a focus on investing resources in areas of opportunity in order to create maximum impact, there needs to be certain structuring elements to give guidance to development and spatial planning.

Recognising the need to plan for the maximization of available human and natural resources within a context of achieving sustainability, there is a need to focus limited public resources in areas of opportunity in order to achieve maximum impact (return on investment – which may be either a real [economic] return or a positive social return). From a spatial planning perspective, this means using certain structuring elements to guide future planning.

For the Frances Baard District Spatial Development Framework there are Seven (7) Spatial Structuring Elements that can guide spatial development and decision-making in the district and these elements include: -

- Nodes,
- Corridors
- Urban / Settlement Edge
- Waterbodies
- Gateways
- Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs)
- Urban Revitalisation Areas Marginalized Townships

4.J. Nodes / Settlement Classification

'Nodes' are generally described as "areas of mixed-use development, usually having a higher intensity of activities involving retail, transportation, office, industry and residential land uses."

These are the places where most interaction takes place between people and organisations, enabling most efficient transactions and exchange of goods and services. Nodes are usually located at interchanges to provide maximum access and usually act as catalysts for new growth and development.

Nodes are those places where people and transportation routes congregate. The goal of the municipality is to have a "compact, transit-orientated, pedestrian-friendly area where high concentrations of residential, employment, retail and other uses" are located. Nodes area generally located where two or more transit routes intersect.

Major nodes area places where there is a perceived area of continuous activity surrounded by a building density that supports it, whereas minor nodes are areas where activity and density are anticipated to increase over time.

The Northern Cape Spatial Development Framework outlines the following Settlement Classification to nodes within the province. The same distinction has been used for the FBDM SDF to ensure alignment from the National, and Provincial plan through to the district plan.

The Sol Plaatje SDF discusses the importance of nodes in economic generation. He SDF states that by concentrating economic activities, it reduces the transaction costs which in turn contribute to the available expenditure. The economy will thereof be steered to growth and or retain the nodes as identified in the nodal policy.

The SDF further mentions that declining and/or stagnant nodes have a detrimental impact on both public and private investments. It is therefore, important to manage the growth of nodes as a strategic element within the urban context at local and metropolitan levels.

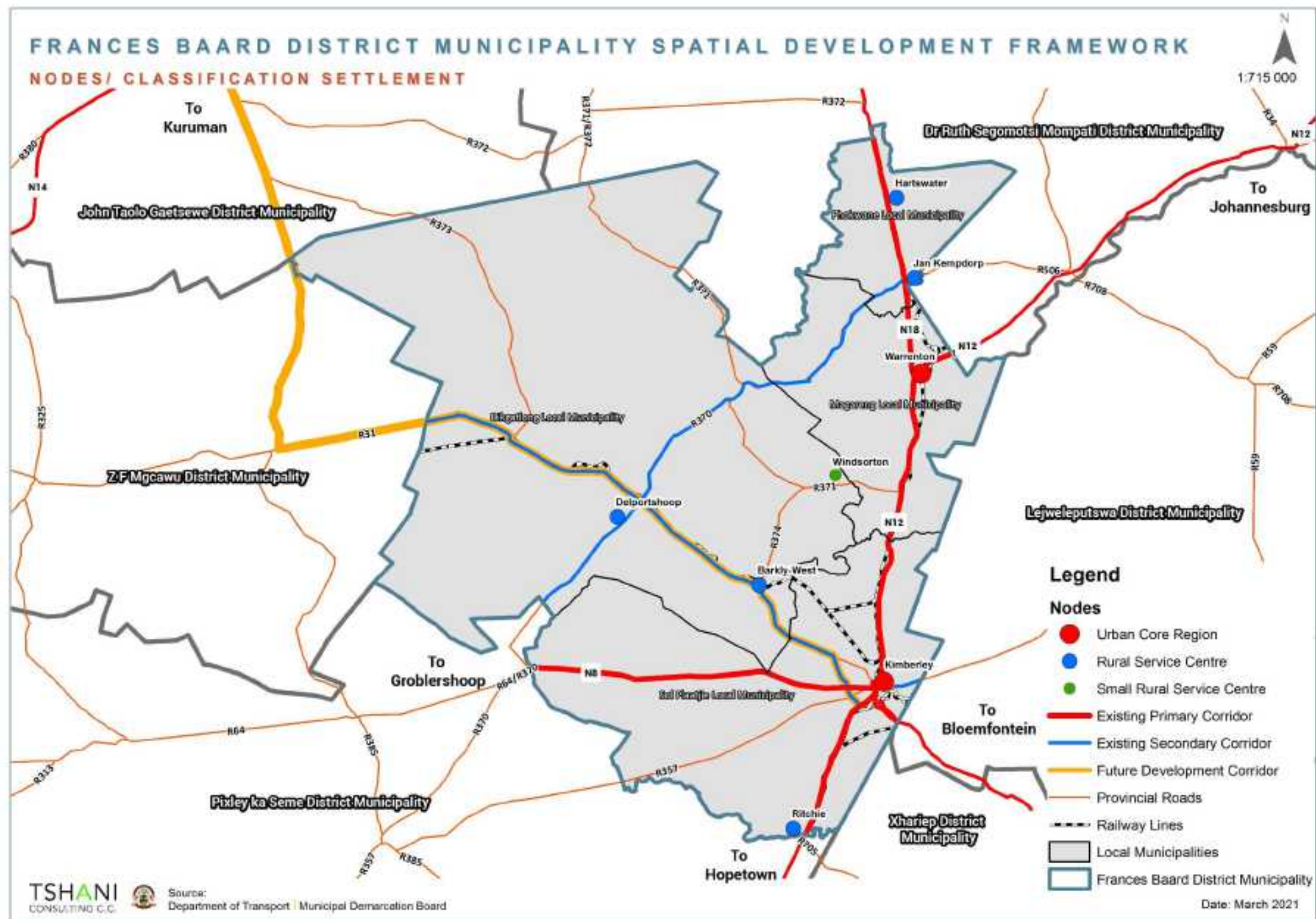
Urban Regions: These include areas where consolidated urban growth in a network of more compact densified and diverse urban development is required. This region needs to support the national network of urban core regions and provides a link to national and international competitive advantages

Regional Growth Centres: These are areas/towns of significance in terms of scale, location, impact, diversity and agglomeration of function (facilities, services and economic activities), which have a significant impact on the Northern Cape as a whole.

SETTLEMENT CLASSIFICATION AND FUNCTION			
Settlement	Primary Function	Secondary Function	Economic Base
Kimberley	Urban Core Region	Administrative Centre	Regional Centre
Ritchie	Rural Service Centre	Agro-processing	Agriculture
Delportshoop	Rural Service Centre		Mining
Windsorton	Small Rural Service Centre		Agriculture
Barkley-West	Rural Service Centre		Mining

Warrenton	Rural Service Centre	Agri-hub	Agriculture
Jan Kempdorp	Rural Service Centre		Agriculture
Hartswater	Rural Service Centre		Agriculture

Table 9: Settlement classification and function



Plan 18: Nodes/Classification Settlements Plan

4.K. Corridors

A “Development Corridor” is normally used to symbolise the area where important economic activities are to be encouraged along a particular transport route.

There is often difficulty in stakeholder perceptions regarding the term ‘corridor’ and the purpose of such planning tool. It is proposed that the use of the term ‘transport route’ be adopted in future because it places emphasis on the transportation activity, which is critical for economic clusters to grow in both urban and rural environments;

Development corridors are described in planning terms as **roads or railway routes that are usually associated with the movement of people between places**. This function of facilitating movement of people along a route also means that these “movement corridors” have the potential to accommodate development of different levels of intensity and a mix of land uses at certain points along the route.

1. Primary Existing Corridors

The following routes have been identified as **Primary existing corridors**:

N8: Groblershoop – Kimberley – Bloemfontein – Ladybrand – Maseru Bridge.

A strong economic and administrative link existing between Kimberley and Bloemfontein. Further studies are required to investigate potential. Corridor development efforts are evident in Bloemfontein whereas Kimberley has still to improve and access future corridor development potential between the cities.

GVA value of 21100 as contributed along the Kimberley section only, the GVA of Bloemfontein has not been included and is in the order of 40000. Compared to Bloemfontein, Kimberley shows poor economic performance taking the balance between GVA contribution, Employment and Population size into consideration. This shows that Kimberley is underperforming and requires catalytic projects to kick-start the local economy. The economic potential between Kimberley and Bloemfontein is not fully exploited and requires urgent development and strategic interventions.

N12: George – Beaufort West – Kimberley – Klerksdorp – Potchefstroom – Johannesburg – eMalahleni

A medium to strong economic linkage coexist between Ritchie, Kimberley, Warrenton towards Christiana, and Bloemhof. Further studies are required to determine the corridor development potential. The route further links to Gauteng and is regarded as a Treasure route.

GVA8 value of 22000 as contributed by the economic potential of the towns along the N12 corridor section. The link between Kimberley and Bloemhof shows economic potential, especially through the diversification of the economic activities taking the agricultural, mining, transportation and administrative activities along the route into consideration.

2. Secondary Existing Corridors

The following routes have been identified as **Secondary existing corridors**:

R64: To Bloemfontein

This route is a key gateway route into the Province of the Northern Cape as well as into the Frances Baard District.

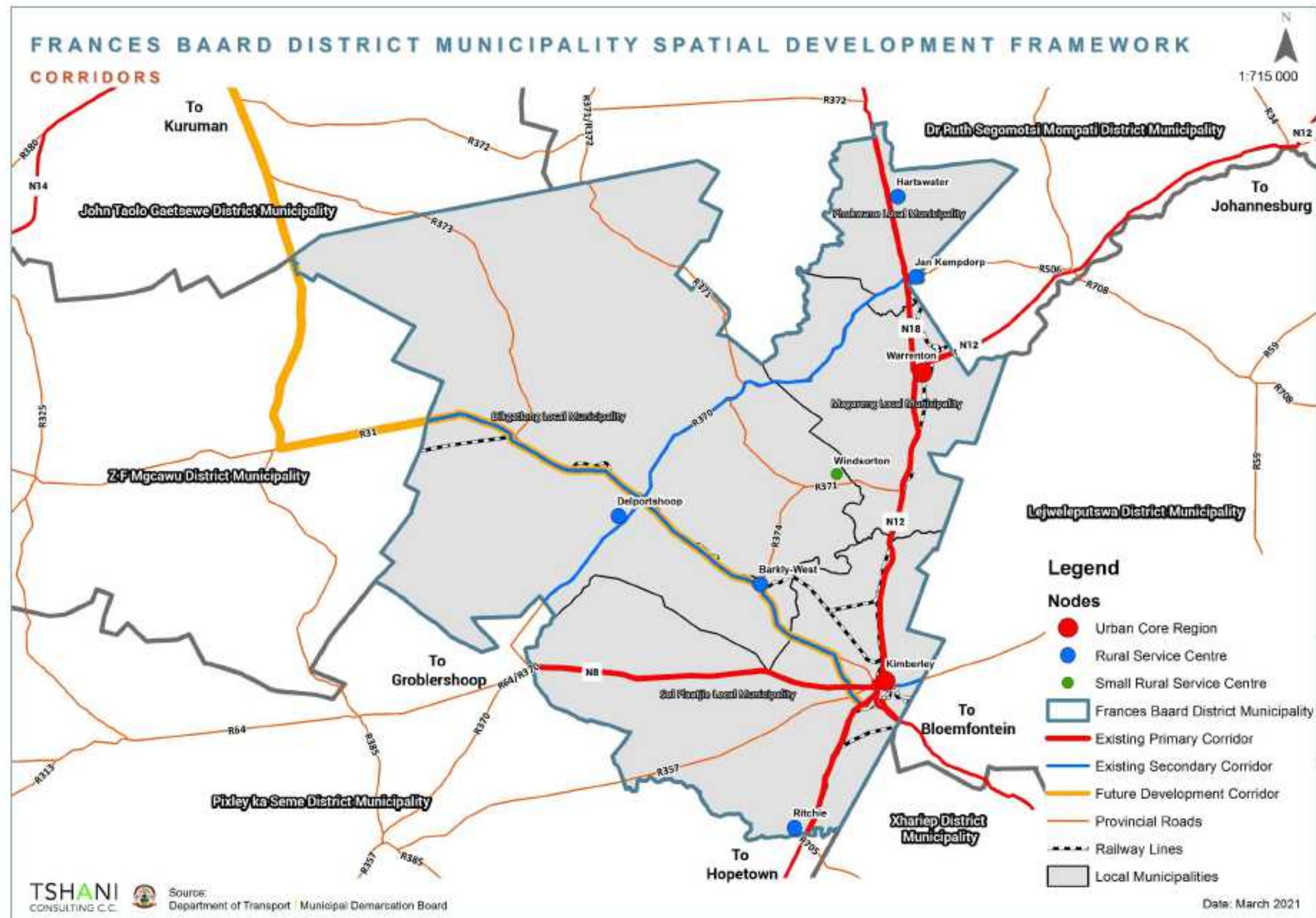
R370: To Jan Kempdorp

This regional Route links Schmidtsdrif to Jan Kempdorp.

3. Future Development Corridor

The Northern Cape PSDF identifies the **R31** to Kuruman as being a Future Development Corridor.

A Future Development Corridor (R31) is proposed to facilitate the expansion of Kuruman, Hotazel and Kathu towards the Sol Plaatje Local Municipality. The Corridor is proposed to unlock the Rural Economic Development Zone, the corridor further links towards the Central Urban Cluster as proposed in the National Spatial Development Framework. The expansion would improve the economic diversity of the Central Urban Cluster as the Gamagara Corridor would be included in the last-mentioned cluster. The proposal would further encourage mixed land use activities, improved access and mobility, improve road safety and increased development potential in the central region of South Africa. Key to the success of the proposed development corridor is to promote freight to rail, thus releasing the preussre experienced on the existing road networks.



Plan 19: Corridors Plan

4.L. Urban / Settlement Edge

A 'settlement edge' is the dividing line or boundary between areas of urban development (a settlement) and non-urban or rural development.

The Guideline set by Department of Rural Development Land Reform for the development of Municipal Spatial Development Frameworks specifies that an SDF should define urban edges around settlements. The delineation of an Urban Edge is vital for the achievement of Spatial Transformation, that is, the containment of urban sprawl, the intensification of development at designated localities, and the improved integration of urban areas. Beyond the Urban Services Edge, rural land uses and densities are intended to be less intense. As a result the Urban Edge focusses more on managing densities.

The DRDLR Guidelines for the development of Municipal Spatial Development Frameworks notes that peri-urban sprawl is a challenge because the increasing housing densities, often on communally owned land, are creating conditions which are too dense for successful rural livelihoods but not dense enough to sustain efficient convenient urban settlements. Peri-urban sprawl is thus considered unsustainable for both residents of peri-urban settlements and for the city. This also highlights the need for sufficient serviced land within urban areas.

Urban / settlement edge defines the logical boundary between areas with different features and purposes, such as the boundary between areas considered environmentally sensitive and those suitable for development.

Settlement edges are used to manage investment and characteristics of infrastructure levels according to the needs of communities and economic activities located within settlement edges or outside settlement edges; and are used to encourage more efficient use of underutilized land existing in a settlement or town, through development of vacant land or the re-use of "brownfield" degraded land areas.

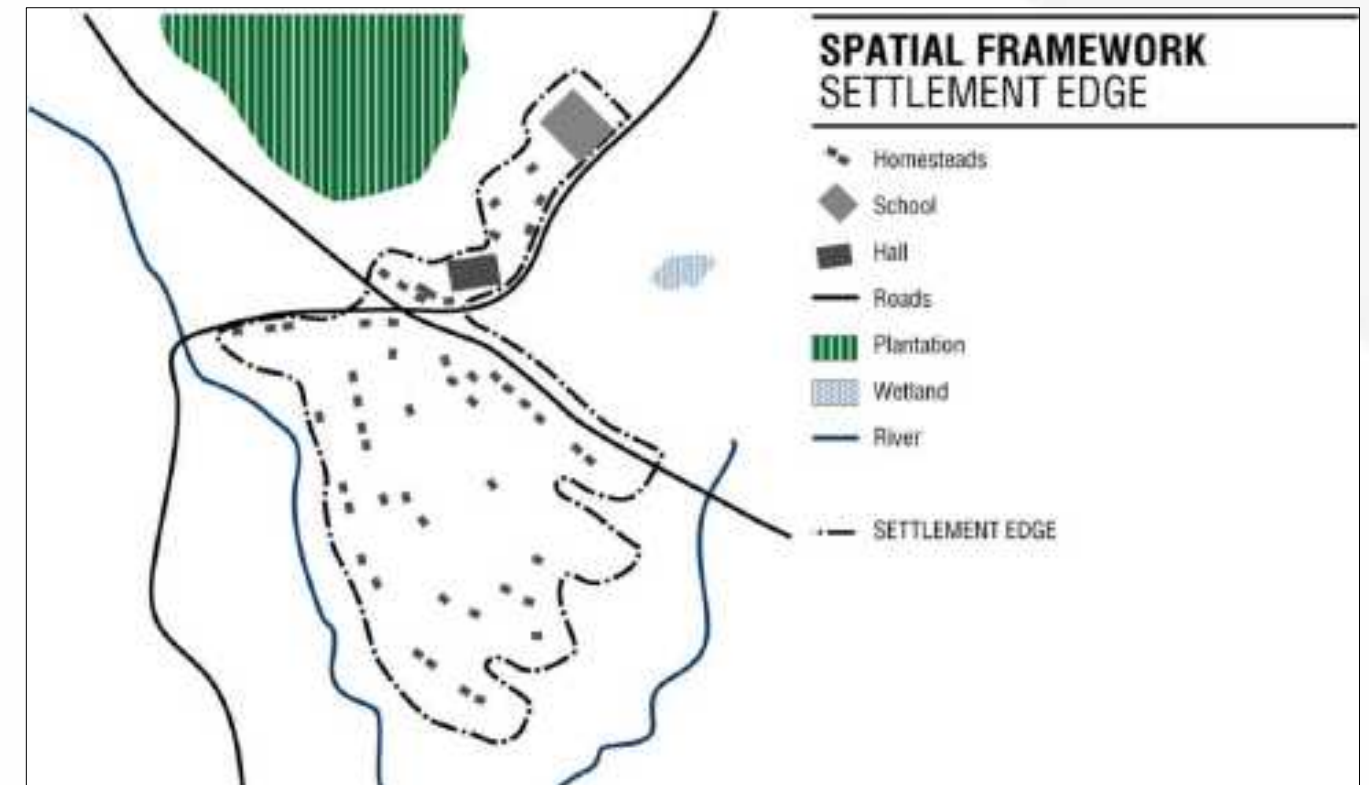


Figure 11: Settlement Edge Framework

Settlement edges are used to [manage investment](#) and [characteristics of infrastructure levels](#) according to the needs of communities and economic activities located within settlement edges or outside settlement edges; and are used to encourage more efficient use of underutilized land existing in a settlement or town, through development of vacant land or the re-use of "brownfield" degraded land areas.

According to the Development Edges: A Settlement Typology Updated Approach and Data Report, 2015, prepared by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, over the last decade, throughout the world, and in South Africa, there has been a new focus on approaches to managing urban growth. The acceptance and use of a number of planning concepts has received widespread support. Many of these concepts and practices are not necessarily new, but they have become part of an integrated toolbox of concepts addressing common approaches.

These approaches are responses to a number of concerns and the need to address a growing awareness of the interrelatedness of issues. The undesirable features that were identified were:

- Urban sprawl, which has several dimensions, unlimited outward and "leapfrog" expansion, as well as being extremely low density.
- Large scale conversion of open space and environmentally sensitive land to urban uses
- Promote Spatial Transformation and restructure growth patterns

- Densify built environments;
- Lead and guide growth expectations;
- Worsening traffic congestion
- Costly requirements to expand roads and other infrastructure
- Conversion of valuable agricultural land to urban uses.
- Protect the finances of the city as required in terms of SPLUMA Principle 7(b)(i) by rationalising service delivery areas to ensure a sustainable level of service provision

The following goals will be achieved through the identification of development/ settlement edges:-

- Achieving Balance (There are two dimensions to this concept of balance.)
- Achieving a Dynamic Balance between the Landscapes of Society
- Achieving Greater Urban Efficiencies
- Protecting Important Elements within Urban Settlements
- Promoting Small-Scale Agriculture
- Managing Urban Wastes
- Issues of Sustainability and Recycling
- Co-ordination of Line and Point Bulk Services to Achieve Efficiencies
- Avoiding Hazards
- Limiting the outward extension of new developments
- Raising densities in both new and existing areas
- Emphasizing public transport
- Creating what is called “sustainable” development (development that limits consumption of resources and is maintainable into the future)

The approaches to achieve these directives included concepts such as:-

- The need to create compact cities that facilitate the provision of efficient infrastructure and transportation;
- The need to be ecologically sensitive;
- The need to manage, direct, or limit urban growth, and the tool used to do this is to create an “Urban Edge”, which is also called an Urban Growth Boundary.

Growth Pressures:-

- This is the most important factor in sizing the Urban Growth Boundary.
- Anticipated growth must have sufficient capacity within an urban growth boundary - if growth is high, then the urban growth boundary must be “roomy”; otherwise, there is a need to change it quite soon. If growth is low then urban growth boundary can be tight.
- The Urban Growth Boundary must be related to anticipate growth pressures in terms of both amount and direction.

Potential for Growth Deflection:-

- Constrained Urban Edges will tend to push growth elsewhere.
- This could be planned to direct growth towards a particular area, and if it is possible to where an adjacent authority will respond to the opportunities, otherwise development could be scattered and /or leapfrogged.
- If an adjacent area is planned then this will not occur, but this depends on the potential for “deflection”.

The following plans outline the urban edge for:

- Barkley West
- Delportshoop
- Kimberley
- Ritchie
- Windsorton

Protection of Agricultural Land:-

- High quality agricultural land will determine a tight and firm edge
- Low quality agricultural land will permit inclusion within urban growth boundary

Infrastructure Capacity: -

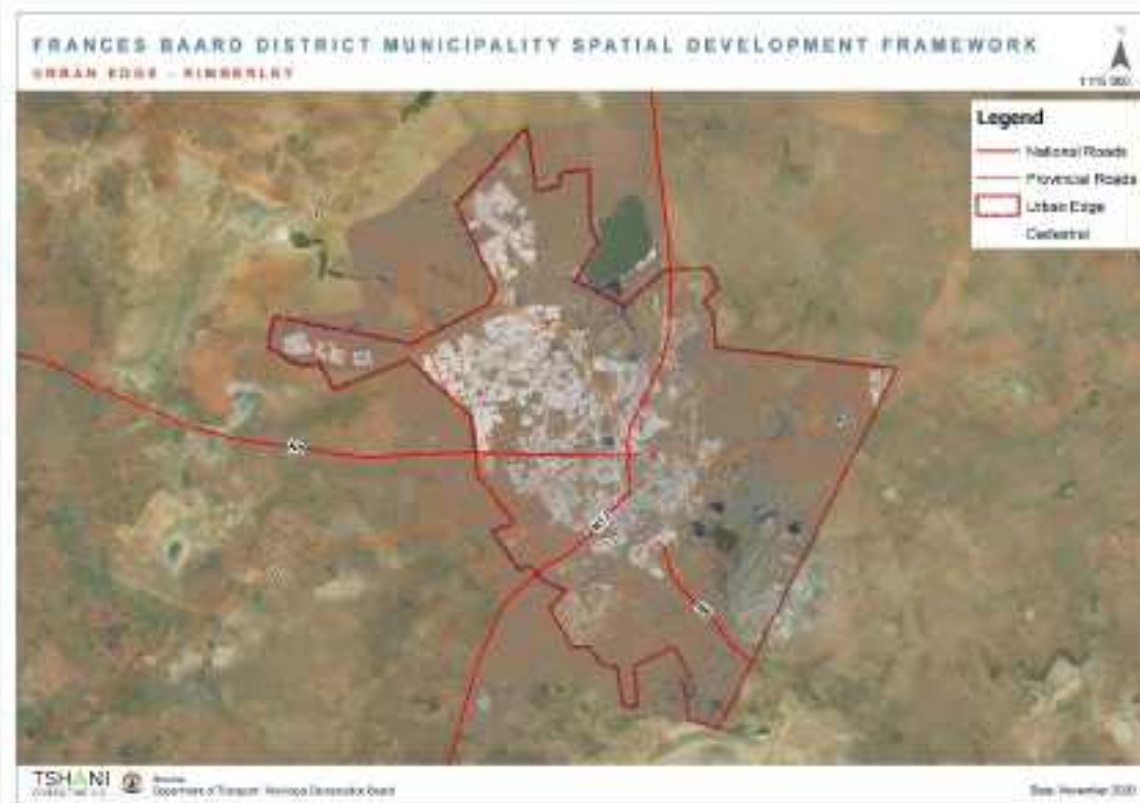
- Limits to the provision of infrastructure will constrain an urban edge and is often a key factor,
- Infrastructure provision is large scale and done over a long period and urban edges need a long-term horizon.
- An urban edge will remain in place for lengthy periods and then large areas are included as capacity is extended or alternatives are available.
- Urban Growth Boundaries can be flexible or be adjusted at regular periods.

Fiscal Capacities and Fiscal Strength:-

- Strong income base will support expansion

In terms of the transformation of human settlements, key objectives are to ensure that people live closer to their places of work and have access to better quality transport. Proposed actions in this regard include:

- Develop a strategy for densification of cities and resource allocation to promote better-located housing and settlements.
- Substantial investment to ensure safe, reliable, and affordable public transport.
- Introduce spatial development framework and norms, including improving the balance between location of jobs and people.
- Conduct a comprehensive review of the grant and subsidy regime for housing with a view to ensure diversity in product and finance options that would allow for more household choice and greater spatial mix and flexibility.



Plan 20: Urban Edge plan – Kimberly



Plan 22: Urban Edge plan – Modderivier



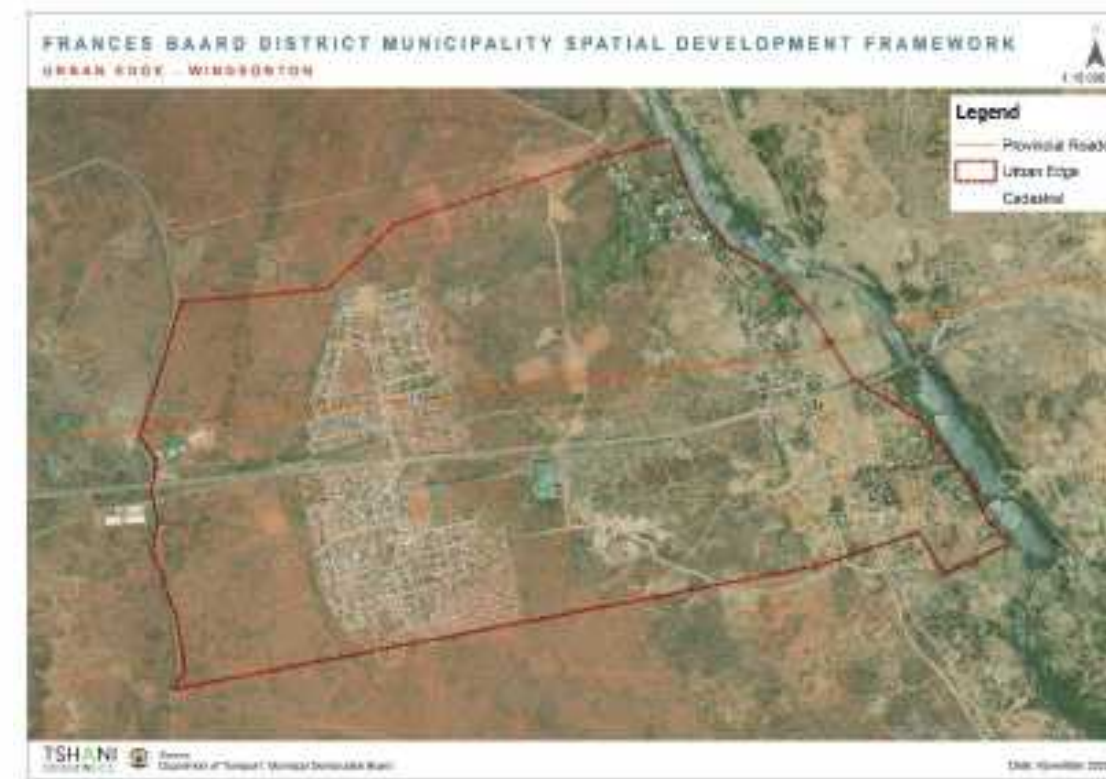
Plan 21: Urban Edge plan – Ritchie



Plan 23: Urban Edge plan – Barkley-West



Plan 24: Urban Edge plan – Delpoortshoop



Plan 26: Urban Edge plan – Winserton



Plan 25: Urban Edge plan – Warrenton



Plan 27: Urban Edge plan – Hartswater



Plan 28: Urban Edge plan – Jan Kempdorp

4.M. Water bodies

Water bodies refer to dams, rivers, wetlands and pans. These structuring elements refer to the following:

River Type	Location
Perennial Rivers:	The Vaal River
	Harts River
	Modder River
Non – perennial rivers	Some of the drainage structures to the west of the Ghaap Mountain.
Surface water	This structure is created by local smaller drainage areas and blind smaller rivers
Ground water	Widely spread boreholes

Table 10: Water bodies

This resource is important to the tourism industry, mining, irrigation and settlement areas. Water resources need to be carefully managed. The Frances Baard District Municipality has no control over the management upstream and therefore the quality of water is under suspicion.

4.N. Gateways

As a planning tool gateways are intended celebrate an entrance and to increase the legibility of the city and serve to welcome visitors to the city. Gateways are normally developed with appropriate land uses and finished with an effective Urban Design treatment. The following Gateway areas are proposed:

- Entrance into the province on the N8
- All key nodes – key intersections of activity
- Entrance to all towns

4.O. Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs)

Critical Biodiversity Areas are irreplaceable, which means there are no other places in the landscape where the conservation and ecological objectives associated with those CBA's can be met. Protected areas and CBA's as primary biodiversity or environmental areas, needs to be conserved and expanded where possible to meet targets as set by the National Biodiversity Framework (NBF) and National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP). Land Management Objectives need to be incorporated into municipal SDF's and Land Use Schemes (LUS's).

4.P. Urban Revitalisation Areas Marginalized Townships

Rural development has been placed high on government's agenda for most of the State of Nation Addresses. The formulation of comprehensive rural development policy, with coordinated implementation by all spheres of government has been significantly lacking, therefore, the Regeneration Strategy is current and aligned to goals set out by international and regional development goals.

A concept which is been introduced to the study is that of "livelihoods planning". This aims to ensure that planning is centered around people and people are centered around planning. Such an approach is also focused on developing land use systems so that it fulfils a relevant purpose particularly in our poorer regions of both urban and rural space. Employing such an approach is intended to ensure that cultural and communal zones form an integral component of a land use scheme.

The aim of the Small-Town Regeneration Strategy is as follows;

- To address poverty in small towns
- To address economic marginalization
- To address imbalances caused by spatial deficiencies
- To build a more inclusive society and economy
- To increase the number of people who are in sustainable economic activities

The slide features a dark navy blue rectangular center containing the chapter title. This center is framed by a thick orange line forming a large, stylized arrow pointing to the right. The background is white, with large, light blue-grey triangular shapes in the corners. The text is centered within the dark rectangle.

CHAPTER 05

Spatial Development Framework

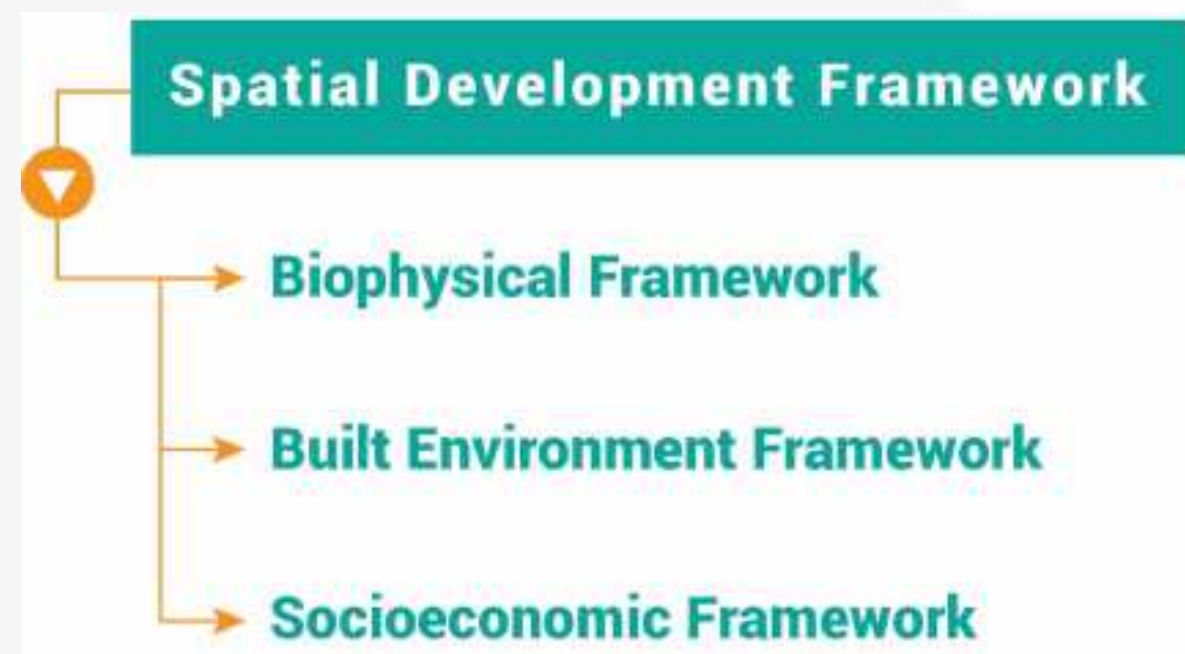
SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

A Spatial Development Framework is a framework that seeks to guide overall spatial distribution of current and desirable land uses within a municipality, in order to give effect to the vision, goals and objectives of the municipal IDP

A Spatial Development Framework is a framework that seeks to guide overall spatial distribution of current and desirable land uses within a municipality, in order to give effect to the vision, goals and objectives of the municipal IDP

The development of the Spatial Development Framework is derived from the outcome of the Spatial Analysis and the feedback from the workshopping sessions regarding the key issues faced by various departments who operate within the space.

The structure of this chapter will be detailed as follows:

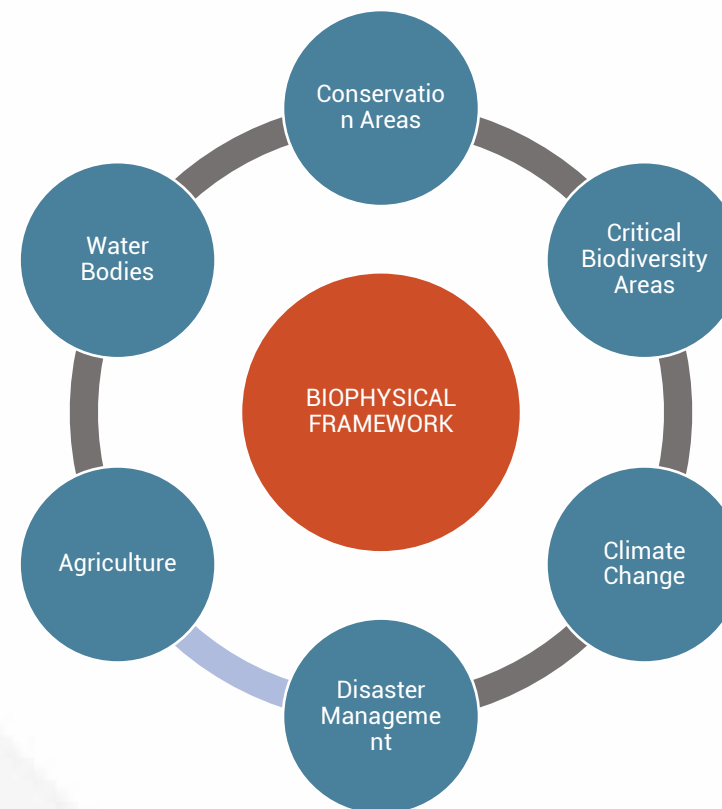


The following process is adopted to ensure that there is alignment and flow through generating the SDF.



BIOPHYSICAL FRAMEWORK

The Biophysical Framework is aimed at proposing sustainable development in the natural environment, further addressing the impacts of climate change. The components of the Biophysical Framework are as follows:



5.A. Conservation areas

Preserving nature is essential to the survival of economic activities such as fishing and agriculture and food security in general. Many communities rely primarily on natural medicines for their health care. Degradation of nature is therefore not purely an environmental issue. It spans economics, health, social justice, and human rights.

Spatial development and human land uses should be planned and managed so as not to disrupt or destroy critical biodiversity areas.

Conservation corridors are stretches of land that link protected areas to ensure healthy, connected landscapes and habitats that support, and are supported by, local communities. Corridors acts as passages for fauna and flora to

move from one region to the next. In light of climate change, they also play a vital role in allowing species to move from a warmer to a cooler region and vice versa. Conservation corridors assist land owners and land users to improve the way they manage the economic, social and ecological aspects of their environment while improving the well-being of local communities.

Managing and Conserving Biodiversity (FBDM Environmental Management Framework, 2019)

- Conserve long-term viable and representatives of habitats of critically endangered species or any species of conservation importance (red data, specially protected species), as well as sensitive and threatened vegetation types.

- Promote formal protection (under NEM:PAA) of areas that need to be managed for the purpose of biodiversity conservation.
- Protection of Nature Reserves (i.e. De Beers owned Benfontein, Dronfield and Rooipoort). Register nature reserves as statutory reserves under NEM:PAA
- Conservation of the Important Bird Areas such as Kamfers Dam, Dronfield Nature Reserve, Benfontein Nature Reserve, and Spitskop Dam (as well as Ganspan).
- Implementation of biodiversity stewardship initiatives in priority areas under private or communal ownership.
- Protect environmental corridors and promotes connectivity. Ecological linkages (including the Ghaap Plateau and rivers) identified on the interface between the district and the bordering municipalities must be taken into account in conservation planning.
- Restore and conserve biodiversity and ecosystem patterns and processes.
- Support species-led programmes to protect threatened species (e.g. Black-Footed Cat and Lesser Flamingos).
- Game farming to remain within the carrying capacity of existing veld resources
- Monitoring programmes for rare and endangered species (GPS) (especially vegetation) and follow up its existence in following years.
- Where land uses conflict with areas earmarked for development, ensure adequate habitat and faunal impact assessments as well as overall feasibility assessments are done and identify appropriate mitigation measures, before any activities are approved or supported.
- Any irreconcilable activities in close proximity to ecologically sensitive species' habitats or initiatives / wildlife industries compatible with regions overall biodiversity objectives (e.g. conservation areas) should be discouraged or strictly controlled.
- Control and prevent the illegal removal of terrestrial faunal and floral species.
- An inventory of popular medicinal plants must be drawn up and efforts to commercially produce these species must be encouraged.

Key conservation strategies to adopt and accommodate within the conservation corridors are:

- Promoting the conservation linkages between existing natural protected areas, thereby reinforcing the natural resource foundation towards mitigating climate change. The linkages can be strengthened by the

extension of buffer/transition zones to embrace large areas suitable for appropriate ecosystem management. The approach explores and demonstrate techniques to sustainable development at the regional scale. Appropriate attention should, therefore, be given to the transitional and/or buffer areas.

- Maintaining landscape connectivity is a major action that municipalities can implement through land use planning to mitigate climate change impacts within the province and South Africa as a whole.
- Mountains, ridges and rivers, including wetland systems, represent important natural corridors in the Northern Cape Province.
- Protection of intact natural habitat, especially wetlands, floodplains and intact riparian habitat is extremely important for reducing the magnitude of flood events as these areas play an important role in regulating hydrological processes, such as storm water run-off. In addition, these areas (especially floodplains) are extremely high risk for communities living in these areas.
- Ensuring that infrastructure and agricultural development is avoided, where possible, in high-risk areas to reduce the long-term impact of climate change, particularly on poor communities.
- For biodiversity conservation to succeed, the maintenance of environmental integrity (as defined by ecological, economic and social criteria) must be one of the primary determinants of land-use planning and development.

Mitigation Measures, (FBDM Environmental Management Framework, 2019)

Measures to safeguard protected fauna and flora species.

- Remove and control terrestrial alien and invasive species.
- The use of residual biocides and insecticides to control nuisance animals must be reduced through education and extension.
- Implement effective veld fire management strategies.
- Where development proposals will result in irreversible biodiversity loss even after mitigation, biodiversity offsets should be considered to offset for the residual impacts of development.
- Manage collision of birds with overhead power lines.
- Maintenance of open space systems in settlements.
- Linear-type development (e.g. pipelines, transmission lines, roads, railway lines) should be aligned along existing and proposed transport corridors rather than along point to point cross-country routes.

- Rehabilitation plans to be developed for natural areas, where disturbance occurs outside development footprint.
- Development footprint should be restricted to already disturbed areas, as far as possible.

Environmental Impact Assessments/ Authorisation

NEMA requires that certain activities need an application for environmental authorisation before commencing such activities. Some of the activities which could trigger the need for environmental authorisations include:

- Most development activities within protected areas as well as within a 5-10km radius of protected areas.
- Development within a watercourse or within 32 metres from the watercourse
- Removal of natural vegetation
- The construction of bulk service pipelines
- Constructing within areas zoned for open space
- The construction or planning of roads
- Railway lines
- Facilities for agri-industrial purposes outside of appropriately zoned areas
- Mining
- Facilities for the concentration of animals and livestock that exceed certain thresholds
- Aquaculture
- The transformation of undeveloped, vacant, or derelict land if the development exceeds certain thresholds

Open Space

Natural open spaces protect and maintain the ecological integrity of natural ecosystems. Open spaces play an important role in the social, mental, and physical wellbeing of residents and wildlife. Open spaces also protect the natural visual quality of the area and maximizes the area's attractiveness, liveability, investment, and tourism potential of the area. It is recommended that valuable environmental components and their buffers be zoned as open space. These areas include:

- Wetlands, dams, rivers, streams, watercourses (and their buffers)
- Endangered ecosystems
- Forests (minimum 50m buffer)

- Mountains and ridges
- Heritage and cultural areas

According to the FBDM Environmental Management Framework, 2019; the environmental feature categories (agriculture, terrestrial and aquatic biodiversity and heritage) highlight areas that pose limitations to certain types of development in FBDM. Conversely, these characteristics promote harmonious types of development that harness the land potential and support the management objectives linked to the sensitive features and attributes.

The sensitivity analysis constitutes a crucial step in the EMF's progression towards delineating EMZs that present a balanced depiction of the district's desired state. These zones are the product of the interrogation and assessment of the status quo information and the realisation of the district's possible restrictions to development pressures and opportunities.

5.B. Critical Biodiversity Areas

The National SDF and the Northern Cape PSDF identifies a framework for Linking the Spatial Planning Categories (CBA Map Categories) to Land Use Planning and Decision-Making Guidelines. The table is outlined below.

CBA MAP CATEGORY	Adaption measures
Protected Areas & Critical Biodiversity Area 1 (CBA1)	<p>Maintain as natural conservation or production landscapes that maximize the retention of biodiversity pattern and ecological process:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Ecosystems and species fully intact and undisturbed ▪ These are areas with high irreplaceability or low flexibility in terms of meeting biodiversity pattern targets. If the biodiversity features targeted in these areas are lost, then targets will not be obtained. ▪ These are landscapes that are at or passed their limits of acceptable change.
Critical Biodiversity Area 2 (CBA2)	<p>Maintain as near-natural production landscapes that maximize the retention of biodiversity pattern and ecological process:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Ecosystems and species largely intact and undisturbed. ▪ Areas with intermediate irreplaceability or some flexibility in terms of area required to meet biodiversity targets. There are options for loss of some components of biodiversity in these landscapes without compromising our ability to achieve targets.

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> These are landscapes that are approaching but have not passed their limits of acceptable change.
Ecological Support Area 1 (ESA1)		<p>Maintain as ecologically functional landscapes that retain basic natural attributes (generally natural or near-natural areas):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ecosystem still in a natural or near-natural state and has not been previously developed. Ecosystems moderately to significantly disturb but still able to maintain basic functionality. Individual species or other biodiversity indicators may be severely disturbed or reduced. These are areas with low irreplaceability with respect to biodiversity pattern targets only.
Ecological Support Area 2 (ESA2)		<p>Maintain partly-functional ecologically landscapes that retain some natural attributes (generally cultivated areas):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Maintain current land use or restore area to a natural state Ecosystem NOT in a natural or near-natural state and has been previously developed (e.g. ploughed). Ecosystems significantly disturbed but still able to maintain some ecological functionality. Individual species or other biodiversity indicators are severely disturbed or reduced and these are areas with low irreplaceability with respect to biodiversity pattern targets.
Other Natural Areas and No Natural Habitat Remaining		<p>Production landscapes: manage land to optimise sustainable utilization of natural areas.</p>

Table 11: CBA categories

Critical Biodiversity Areas are located along the [perennial rivers](#) running through the Frances Baard District, and [dams](#). There are also large parcels of CBA1's that needs to be excluded from agricultural potential land due to the conservancy of critical endangered species and grassland in the Dikgatlong, Magareng and Sol Plaatje Local Municipalities.

There are a lot of [intensive farming](#) and pivots located within the district especially in the Barkley West, Warrenton, Hartswater, Jan Kempdorp, and Pampierstad, along the Harts River and along the Riet River that needs to be protected for food security.

Biodiversity score is derived from the Northern Cape biodiversity plan which classifies the Northern Cape according to biodiversity importance. Protected areas are giving a 0 score as it has no potential for development. CBA1 is also given a 0 since it's seen as critical. Ecological support areas are given a 50% score and already cultivated and used areas are 100 available for development.

5.C. Climate Change

The growing awareness of climate change and the crucial role played by the natural environment in providing the essential ecosystem goods and services upon which all life on earth depends is the context for this theme. Climate Breakdown as it has come to be termed – is regarded as the most significant challenge to human development and, indeed, human survival as a viable species on earth in our era. It is already having – and will continue to have – far reaching impacts on human livelihoods.

According to the Climate Change 2014: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability. Part A: Global and Sectoral Aspects. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), the following measures are recommended to adaption against climate change on the African continent:

Key Risk	Adaption measures
Compounded stress on water resources facing significant strain from overexploitation and degradation at present and increased demand in the future, with drought stress exacerbated in drought-prone regions of Africa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reducing non-climate stressors on water resources Strengthening institutional capacities for demand management, groundwater assessment, integrated water-wastewater planning, Sustainable urban development
Reduced crop productivity associated with heat and drought stress, with strong adverse effects on regional, national, and household livelihood and food security, also given increased pest and disease damage and flood impacts on food system infrastructure.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Technological adaptation responses (e.g., stress-tolerant crop varieties, irrigation, enhanced observation systems) Enhancing smallholder access to credit and other critical production resources; Diversifying livelihoods Strengthening institutions at local, national, and regional levels to support agriculture (including early warning systems) and gender-oriented policy Agronomic adaptation responses (e.g., agroforestry, conservation agriculture)

Changes in the incidence and geographic range of vector- and water-borne diseases due to changes in the mean and variability of temperature and precipitation, particularly along the edges of their distribution

- Achieving development goals, particularly improved access to safe water and improved sanitation, and enhancement of public health functions such as surveillance
- Vulnerability mapping and early warning systems
- Coordination across sectors
- Sustainable urban development

Table 12: Climate Change - Key Risks

According to the FBDM District Development Model, 2020; Climate change will have an impact on water, agriculture and many other human activities. Some 39 key impacts have been identified. The next table provides a summary of the key issues noted by municipalities in the district when analysing the impacts of climate change. These potential impacts and the degree to which they could affect specific districts is recorded. The first column of the table below shows how many of the 44 districts indicated whether the impact needs to be planned for, with the second column showing the percentage of districts so affected. The third column indicates for this district whether or not it rated it as a critical issue for consideration:

Climate Change Impact	# Districts	%Districts	DC09
Increased risks to livestock	28	63,6	Yes
Loss of High Priority Biomes	26	59,1	Yes
Decreased water quality in ecosystem due to floods and droughts	27	61,4	Yes
Less water available for irrigation and drinking	28	63,6	Yes
Decreased quality of drinking water	14	31,8	Yes
Change in other crop production areas (e.g. vegetables, nuts, etc.)	13	29,5	Yes
Increased impacts on traditional and informal dwellings	23	52,3	Yes
Increased Occupational health problems	19	43,2	Yes

Increased impacts on strategic infrastructure	17	38,6	Yes
Increased impacts on environment due to land-use change	17	38,6	Yes
Increased heat stress	15	34,1	Yes
Increased air pollution	8	18,2	Yes

Table 13: Potential Impacts of climate change

5.D. Disaster Management

Disaster management is the process of focusing on reducing and/or avoiding the potential or expected losses from any hazard (e.g. loss of life or livelihoods, economic loss.) There are four important phases of Disaster Management according to the CSIR, 2020; namely:

- **Mitigation/prevention:** Minimising the devastating impacts of the disaster. The focus here is on preventing or reducing the exposure to the disaster and mitigating vulnerability
- **Preparedness:** Planning the response strategy and capacitating emergency managers to provide the best response possible. The focus here is on strengthening various coping capacities
- **Response:** Implementing efforts to minimise the consequences of the disaster and reduce associated mortality and morbidity. In this phase, humanitarian action and aid are often applicable. The focus here is on coordinating of various efforts to preserve life and livelihoods, and to provide essential services and/or subsistence to those affected by the disaster
- **Recovery:** Returning the community and affected groups to a new state of normal. The focus here is on striving to 'building-back' better

These are applicable in any disaster management cycle. Ensuring that timely assistance is provided to affected, or potentially affected, communities; and facilitating the rapid and effective recovery from a disaster event through 'building-back' better. When a disaster strikes (e.g. the spread of an infectious disease such as the COVID-19 outbreak), government departments and sectors, businesses, NGOs, industries and civil society will engage and respond differently with the disaster management cycle according to their mandates, responsibilities and contingency plans.

In the early phase of the disaster management cycle (mitigation/prevention and preparedness), data and information are vital to the success of the subsequent phases (response and recovery). In the case of the COVID-19 pandemic in South Africa, many sector departments faced similar questions at the start of the outbreak.

The development of a Disaster Management Strategy is of Key Importance to ensure that communities are able to sustain through a disaster, whether natural or through a pandemic.

5.E. Water Courses

Water bodies refer to dams, rivers, wetlands and pans. These structuring elements refer to the following:

River Type	Location
Perennial Rivers:	The Vaal River Harts River Modder River
Non – perennial rivers	Some of the drainage structures to the west of the Ghaap Mountain.
Surface water	This structure is created by local smaller drainage areas and blind smaller rivers
Ground water	Widely spread boreholes

Table 14: Water courses

This resource is important to the tourism industry, mining, irrigation and settlement areas. Water resources need to be carefully managed. The Frances Baard District Municipality has no control over the management upstream and therefore the quality of water is under suspicion.

Dams

The following dams are located within the District and provide drinking water to rural towns and communities as well as water for irrigation from the following dams; Spitskop Dam, Vaalharts Dam and Kamfers Dam.

Wetlands

It is recommended that a 100m ecological buffer zone (no development) around wetlands be used as a guide when informing developments located within the study area. This buffer zone will assist in the continuation of the wetland's ecological functioning and protection of natural resources. The width of the buffer zone will depend on the nature and scale of the development.

Developments within 500m of wetlands will be required to apply for a Water Use License under the National Water Act. It is also recommended that no development be allowed within the 1:100 year floodline of rivers and streams or at least 100m where no flood line exists. The National Water Act also requires an application for a water use license to be submitted to the Department of Water and Sanitation for the following activities:

- Road Crossings over a river
- Sewer Crossings over a river
- Potable water pipe crossings over a river
- Attenuation in a river channel
- Attenuation in a wetland
- Housing within a 500m radius of a wetland
- Sewers within a 500m radius of a wetland
- Potable water pipes within a 500m radius of a wetland
- Roads within a 500m radius of a wetland
- Sewage pump station

Interventions, (FBDM Environmental Management Framework, 2019)

- Promote water conservation and demand management through regulation where appropriate. Rainwater harvesting, grey water recycling, re-use of treated effluent from WWTW and similar technical enhancements should be encouraged.
- Dedicated catchment management for important water yield areas (notably the NFEPA and priority sub-catchments).
- Promote the restoration of the NFEPA to deliver basic ecosystem functions to surrounding environments.

- Support of the implementation of the Working for Water and National River Health Programmes as well as other local and provincial conservation authority programmes related to water protection, conservation and sustainable use.
- Ensure that water is fit for use as imposed by the water quality standards.
- Provision of adequate sanitation, storm water and waste management services.
- Provision of basic services to informal settlements.
- Rehabilitation of riparian areas affected by anthropogenic activities.
- Develop drought management plan.
- Consider the potential impacts of Climate Change on long term spatial structure.

5.F. Topography, Slopes & Visual Amenity

The FBDM service area consists mainly of the following dominant features:

The Ghaap Plateau: The Ghaap escarpment forms a dramatic barrier between the western and eastern section of the area. This plateau was created by higher lying Pre-Karoo surface with the main element being the surface dolomite which gives form to the plateau.

The western plateau: The western area is situated to the west of the Ghaap mountain series. The area rises to the west to be part of an escarpment that forms the eastern fringe of the Kalahari.

The eastern plains: This area is situated to the east of the Ghaap mountain ridge and the Vaal- and Harts River system.

Visual amenity: The Ghaap Plateau/ Ridge as well as the Vaal Rivier provides a visual amenity to the FBDM area. The Ghaap Plateau creates passes with major roads (N81 and R31) and also some minor roads. These elements provide for scenic drives and extensive views.

To the east the Vaal- and other Rivers cuts through the landscape which forms dramatic gorges and water elements. These cliffs and water features provide for tourism potential still to be fully developed. In conclusion it could be mentioned that the district consists of three very distinct morphological regions that provides their own individual tourism and agricultural potential.

5.G. Geology

Natural systems form the basis of the pattern of opportunities on the land. The foundation of this pattern is the geology of the area and the distribution of soils arising from that geology. Geology indicates that the District straddles two major geological formations.

To the west of the Harts and Vaal Valley the geology comprises an uplifted dolomite plateau overlain by large areas of sand. This plateau can be said to comprise the eastern edge of the Kalahari.

To the east, including the major river valleys of the Hart s, Vaal and Modder rivers, the major geological formations are sedimentary with scattered patches of shale, dolerite, and andesite found along the eastern boundaries of the District. Eastwards into the Free State Province the patches of shale and dolerite become more extensive. The entire area is overlain with patches of tillite which become more frequent to the east.

This pattern gives rise to the important mining and engineering geology of the area. Historically, this was an important aspect of the District's economic development although it is now diminishing in importance. Kimberlite pipes surface in the eastern part of the District, particularly around Kimberley and Windsorton, in combinations of Shale and Tilite. In some instances, deposits from these pipes have washed down the rivers creating opportunities for alluvial diamond mining.

5.H. Vegetation

These are categorized into TWO different types which are *Kalahari Plateau Bushveld* and *Kalahari Thorn Bushveld*.

- ***Kalahari Plateau Bushveld:*** In general, fairly dense bush veld composed of shrubs and sometimes small trees, in mixed grassland. The principal shrubs are Camphor Tree *Tarchonanthus camphorates* Three thorn *Rhigozum Trichotomum*, Puzzle Bush *Ehretia rigida*, *Grewia flava* and *Maytenus heterophylla*.

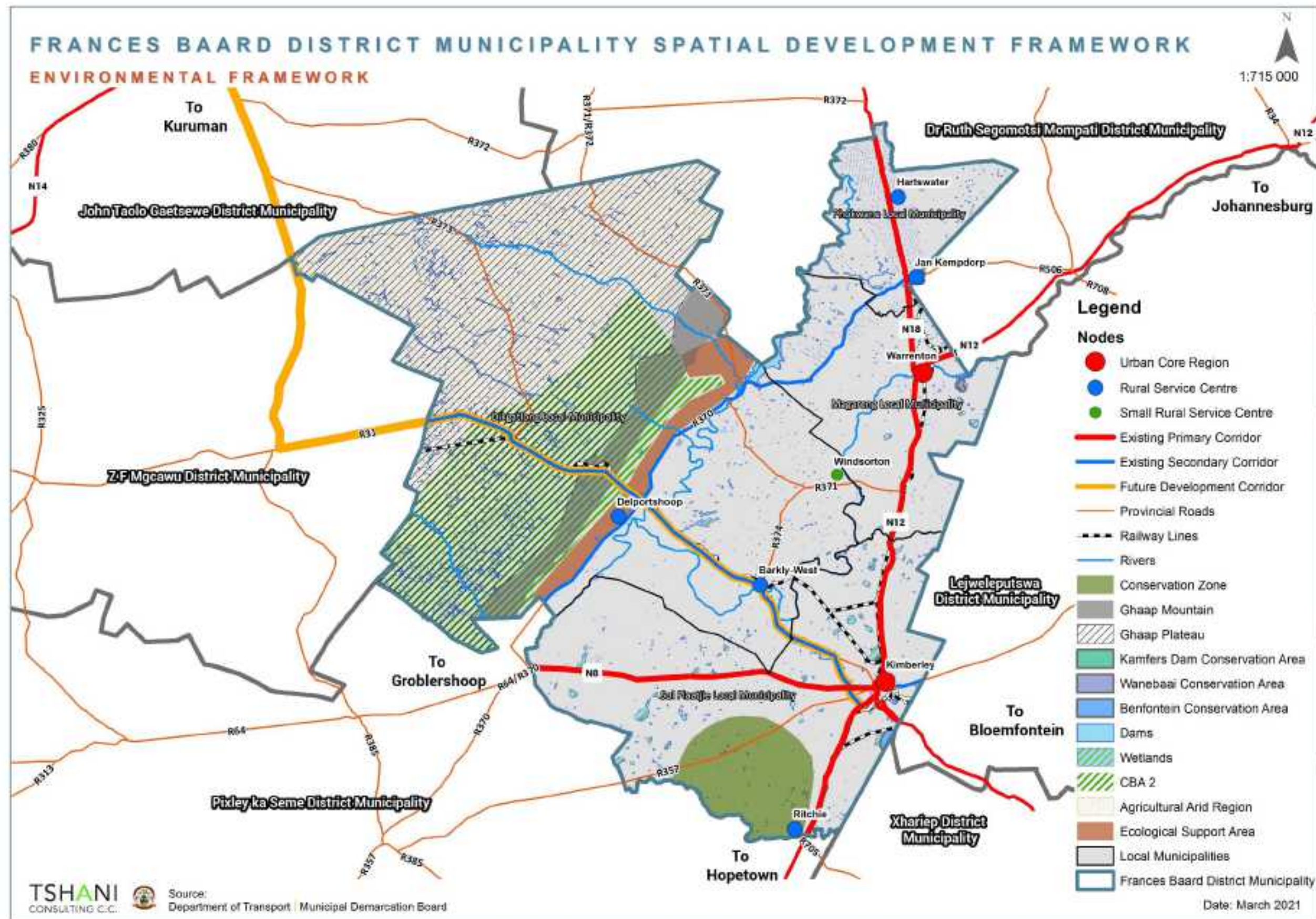
The tree layer is not dominant, but the following species do occur sparsely: Wild olive *Olea europaea* subsp. *Africana*, Umbrella Thorn *Acacia tortilis* and Sheperd's Tree *Boscia albitrunca*. The grass is by nature tall and dominated by Redgrass *Themeda triandra* and other grasses such as Copperwire Grass *Aristida diffusa* and Silky bushman Grass *Stipagrostis uniplumis*. Karoo dwarf shrubs are sometimes accompanied by the

development of thickets of shrubs and trees including Fringed Kereë *Rhus ciliate*, Spikeflower Black Thorn *Acacia mellifera* subsp. *Detinens* and Umbrella Thorn *A. Tortilis*.

- **Kalahari Thorn Bushveld:** Open savannah, with Umbrella thorn *Acacia tortilis* and Camel Thorn *A. erioloba* the dominant tree species, Sheperd's Tree *Boscia albitrunca* and Sweet Thorn *Acacia karroo*.

The shrub layer is poorly to moderately developed in places and individual of Camphor Tree *Tarchonanthus camphorates*, Spike-flowered Black Thorn *Acacia mellifera*, Wild Rasin *Grewia flava* and *Lycium hirsutum* occur widely scattered.

The grass layer is fairly well developed and grasses such as Redgrass *Themeda triandra*, Common Nine-lawn Grass *Enneapogon cenchroides*, Lehmann's Lovegrass *Eragrostic lehamanniana*, *Elionurus muticu* and *Cymbopogon plurinodis* are conspicuous.



Plan 29: Environmental Framework Plan

5.1. Agriculture

Two defined agricultural zones have been established over the years.

- To the west of the Harts- and Vaal River Valley, the geology comprises of an uplifted hard dolomite plateau over lain by sand. In this area extensive grazing, livestock and game farming have developed over the years.
- The area to the east of the service area consists of softer sedimentary areas of the Harts-, Vaal-, and Modder Rivers. The availability of water and the deeper more fertile soil conditions introduced intensive irrigation activities.

The locality of specific agricultural activities is therefore determined by natural elements and in addition the associated surrounding economic activities in the area.

- Prime or unique agricultural land should remain, as far possible, available for production. Land uses for agricultural purposes may only be re-allocated to another use where a real need exists.

Agriculture related investment should focus on supporting and maintaining existing commercial farming activities in the district in the areas where extensive commercial farming and large-scale food production currently occurs; as well as enhancing agrarian transformation in the deep rural areas of Northern Cape Province in line with the objectives of the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP) Typical investment in these areas should include:

- Agri-parks (Including Agri-hubs and respective FPSU's, implemented according to the District Rural Development Plans);
- Support Land Reform Programme with emerging farmers;
- Farming equipment, irrigation systems, agricultural training facilities (colleges) and the establishment of small local fresh produce markets which could lead to the establishment of small scale agro industries focusing on processing and/or packaging of local products before exporting it to larger centres; and
- Artisan and other skills training initiatives and facilities.



5.J. Promoting Agriculture as an economic sector within FBDM

It has been seen through the SDF that FBDM has the opportunity to promote the advancement of the Agriculture sector and further promote jobs in this sector on order to ensure that the district does not only play the role in supplying the agricultural demand within the country but also promoting job creation for the locals, thus ensuring that they are able to benefit by this sector and essentially become in a situation where they are less grant dependent and are able to live more sustainable lives.

In order to achieve this, emphasis needs to be placed on skills training and skills development in agriculture to equip the locals to be able to gain jobs in this sector and for the district to essentially thrive through this sector.

Other sectors which would thrive through this would be the industrial / agro-processing sector as well as the logistics sector to allow for the movement of the produce.

Game farming industry is expanding at a rapid pace within the FBDM. A number of farms in the commercial farming sector have been game fenced and game species introduced. This is an attractive industry, as income is not only derived from trophy and meat hunting, but also through the provision of accommodation to overseas visitors.

The potential for game farming is to be facilitated.

5.K. Rural Development Focus Regions

The District through coordinated support can however attempt to address rural development needs through the identification of critical focus areas. These Focus areas have been identified on the basis of existing funding and institutional support initiatives available from the National Departments such as the Department of rural Development and Land Reform as well as the Department of Agriculture, both two leading role players within the rural context.

Focus Area 1: Food Security

The first focus area is targeted towards food security in both the district and surrounding communities/countries. Food security is arguably the most important rural challenge that could cause social instability in South Africa. Food security could stabilise the current economic tension especially for the rural poor while creating job opportunities. The intention of this focus area is to determine the basic rural food basket requirements. The highest cost items in a

typical food basket are to be identified, where these items (where possible) would require improved value chains to decrease item values. This would indirectly provide cost saving measures for the poorest of the poor.

The food basket approach follows a bottom –up model where we seek to understand the needs of the poor, from here we can start to understand the actual demands and needs. Taking the limited economic climate into consideration the approach should be to target towards the poorest of the poor. The identification of tangible and realistic targets to change the rural climate would be critical in addressing sustainable livelihoods. Targeting the food basket could improve the lives of the poor as well as stimulate economic growth while creating employment opportunities. The food basket approach is striving towards delivering the basic foods to the poorest through existing structures and projects facilitated by government.

Focus Area 2: Agriculture Development

Enhancing equity in agriculture development through farming production support units supporting specialised commodities at Agri hubs with the required Agri processing value chain needs. It is important to understand the agglomeration advantages of the farming production supporting units as well as the Agri-Hubs. The inter relationship needs to be clarified and rolled out to lay the rural development path ahead.

Focus Area 3: Agricultural Value Chains

A value chain is a set of linked activities that add value to a product; it consists of actors and actions that improve a product while linking commodity producers to processors and markets.

Value chains may include a wide range of activities, and an agricultural value chain might include: development and dissemination of plant and animal genetic material, input supply, farmer organization, farm production, post-harvest handling, processing, provision of technologies of production and handling, grading criteria and facilities, cooling and packing technologies, post-harvest local processing, industrial processing, storage, transport, finance, and feedback from markets. A value chain approach in agricultural development helps identify weak points in the chain and actions to add more value.

Commodities targeted and the respective value chains and opportunities within value chains are to be identified. Processing opportunities are to be identified for further economic potential. Agri-processing is key to the creation of job opportunities.

Focus Area 4: Sustainable livelihoods

Subsistence farming is an initiative for the identification of economic potential areas that could accommodate sustainable livelihoods. An attempt is made to seek opportunities that could improve sustainable livelihoods through the creation of jobs and sustainable commonage management, especially through the Agricultural Sector. Other potential economic sectors are considered as well, with recommendations made towards unlocking rural development.

Focus Area 5: Urban-Rural linkages

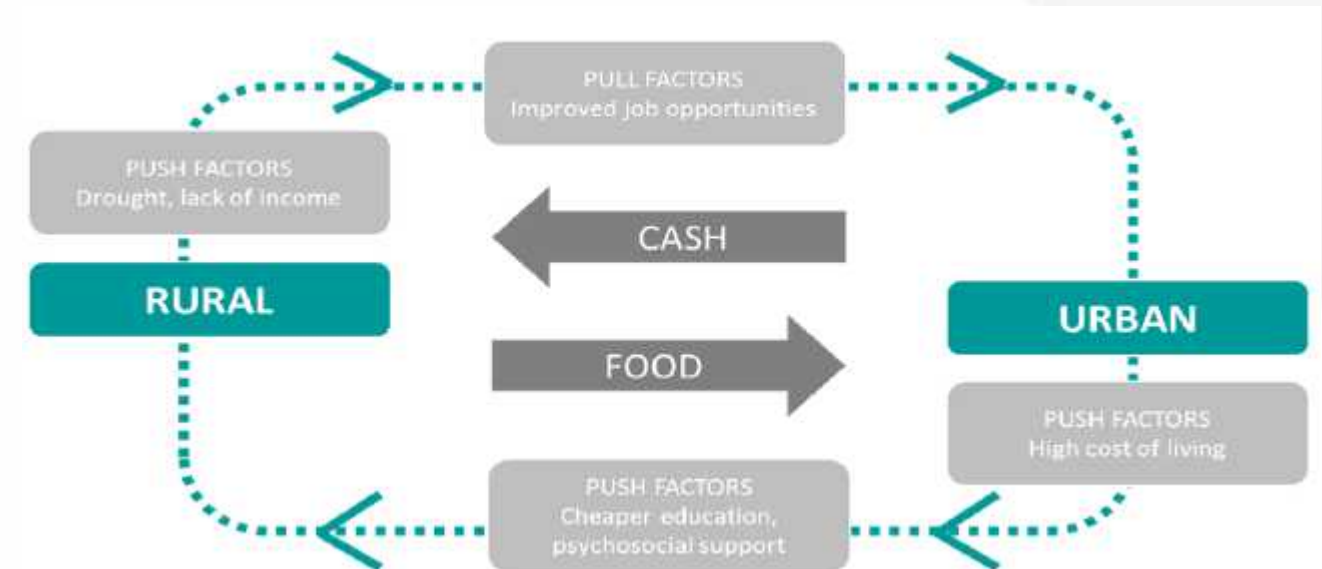
Rural-urban linkages can be defined as the structural social, economic, cultural, and political relationships maintained between individuals and groups in the urban environment and those in rural areas. Rural-urban linkages can also refer to spatial and sectoral flows that occur between rural and urban areas. Spatial flows include flows of people, goods, money, technology, knowledge, information, and waste. By contrast, sectoral flows include flows of agricultural products going to urban areas, and goods from urban manufacturing areas going to more rural areas. Typically, rural-urban linkages are often articulated in the nature and forms of migration, production, consumption, financial and some investment linkages that occur within the rural-urban symbiosis. The exchange of money, goods, visits including social activities, and communication with relatives and friends can all be used as indicators of rural-urban linkages.

Farming areas and cities coexist along a continuum with multiple types of flows and interactions occurring between the two spaces. Typically, it is now widely recognised that there exist economic, social and environmental interdependences between urban and rural areas.

Rural communities are responsible for the stewardship of ecosystem services that are essential for human survival and well-being such as clean air and water, flood and drought mitigation, pollution mitigation, bio-diversity, and climate stabilization.

Urban and Rural linkages are critical towards the success of both the rural and urban built up areas, this section deals with push and pull factors that are required to ensure a sustainable balance between both urban and rural divide.

The nature and form of these linkages are not homogenous as they are determined by both push and pull factors as highlighted in Figure below.



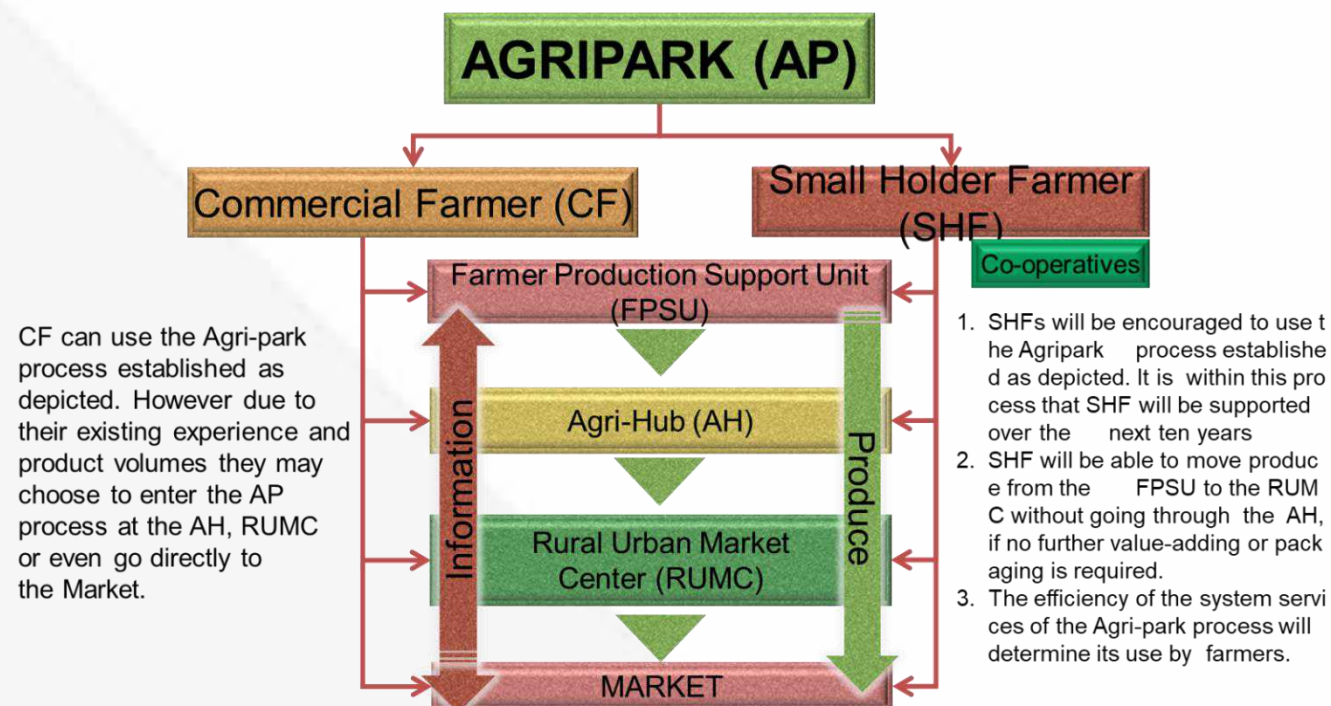
Focus Area 6: Disaster Management

Disaster management is vital in terms of agricultural management, a brief look at potential risk areas is done to inform policy and decision makers.

Temperature dictates crop production, with optimum growth rates under different upper and lower temperature limits in different seasons. The heat unit and chill unit concept depicts this dependence and refers to the period of accumulated maximum/ minimum temperatures above/ below a threshold. Increased minimum and maximum temperatures imply an increase in potential evaporation, which is likely to have profound effects on dryland and irrigated crop production. Rainfall is critical to agriculture, especially the timing, intensity and distribution of rainfall throughout the growing season. Increased intensity of rainfall will affect both ground and surface water resources. In South Africa, a semi-arid country where the average evaporation rate exceeds its precipitation, water is a critical limiting factor for agricultural production.

Soil Depth

The western part of the study area has soil depths of 450mm and less, while the Vaalharts irrigation scheme and the areas to the south along the Modder River shows the cleaner soil. These deeper soils consist of sand. These soils are well drained and provide good potential for intensive irrigation.



5.L. Agri-Parks

The Agri-Parks would be farmer-controlled. The model will have a strong social mobilisation component so that black farmers and agri-business entrepreneurs were mobilised and organised to support this particular initiative. The Agri-Hub will have various activities around processing by adding other services like social services, retail services and so forth. There would be linkages with surrounding municipalities and villages to ensure that production elements and other activities were localised.

Agri-Hub

The farmers produce (input) is processed on a large scale at the Agri-Hub. The Agri-Hub provides quality production support services to the farmers including product development and improvement (i.e. Innovation, Research and Development) and links the farmers to the targeted commodity value chain. (Market: The Agri-Hub mainly supplies agro-processed product through the RUMC and local Market).

Farmer Production Support Unit

The FPSU supplies primary and/or processed farmers produce to the local community market, Agro-processors (at the Agri-Hub) and RUMC). Farmer Production Support Units have been identified and are in the process to be developed in strategic located areas conforming to the type of agricultural produce. The FPSU's are located within Hartswater, Pampierstad, Jan Kempdorp, Ganspan, Barkley West, Delportshoop & Ritchie, creating centralised gathering points which will ultimately transport agricultural produce to the Agri Park for Processing.

Rural Urban Market Centre (RUMC)

The RUMC function as a marketing and distributional channel for primary products from FPSU and processed products from the Agri-Hub. The RUMC also serves as an information nerve centre for the Agri-Park and facilitates for information flow between the market and producers. (Market: The RUMC is a market access facilitator for both domestic and export markets).

Ecological Support Areas (ESA'S)

Good management of the region's water resources, especially the ecological infrastructure that delivers this invaluable resource, ensuring the following:

The NCPSTDF also identifies a **key Agricultural Corridor** which is identified as the **Vaal-Orange Agricultural Zone** and the **Douglas-Hartswater Agricultural Zone**. This corridor constitutes the food producing area from Hartswater and Jan Kempdorp through to Prieska, Hopetown and Douglas. Agricultural zones have been proposed to protect and guide agricultural development along the Orange and Vaal river systems. Key objectives of this zone include:

- To maintain the productive capacity of agricultural activities by frugally managing water resources, protected against contamination, and prevented from becoming conduits for pollution.
- Sustainable water management strategies.
- Sustainable and Environmental sound fertilisation strategy.
- Integrated agricultural value chains
- Integrated transport management system to commute workers, produce in and out of the Province.

To development a detailed **Agricultural Master Plan** for the proposed development zones which needs to improve the effectiveness and management of the region (e.g. irrigation quotas, fertilisers, crop genetics, agro-processing, value chains, transportation of goods and services, SMME development).

- Maintaining the water recharge for water resource areas. Dolomitic aquifers acting as sponges absorbing rainfall and providing valuable sub-terranean (underground) water reservoirs. Land use activities in these landscapes must not interrupt (reduce) or degrade (water quality) recharge of these aquifers.

In addition to the river and wetland features, other important areas for water-related processes include:

- Wetland systems, which plays a key regulatory role in the hydrology of the province by:
- absorbing and storing freshwater;
- maintaining and moderating the flow of rivers;
- improving water quality;
- maintaining the ecological and structural integrity of river systems; and
- buffering surrounding landscapes (and associated land uses) from flooding

Irrigation Scheme

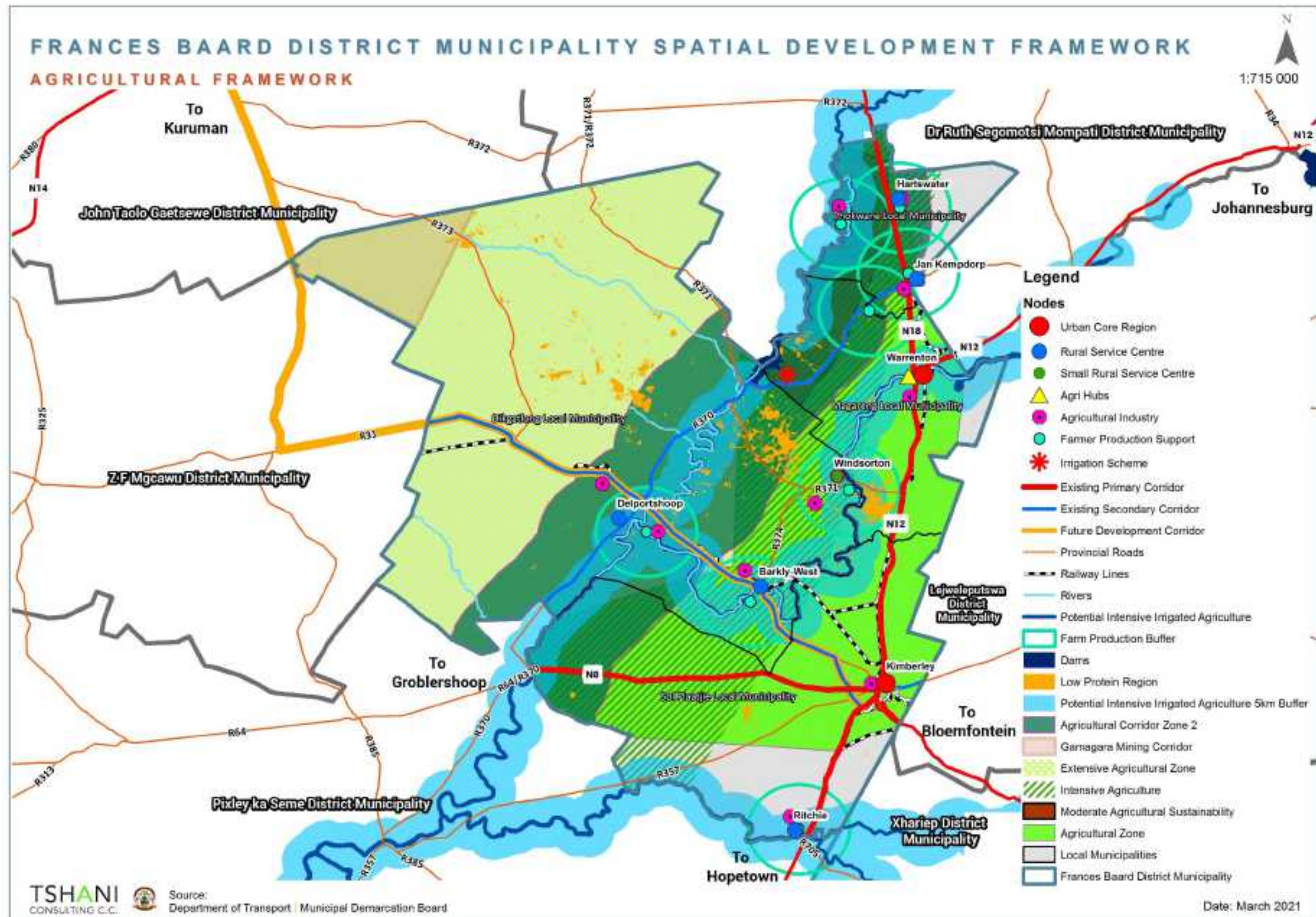
The **Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme** plays an important role in providing water for irrigation to more than 39 000 hectares of productive agricultural land.

The FBDM Rural Development Plan aims to provide a buffer zone of at least 50m from the irrigation schemes and the natural water courses/body into which such irrigation scheme discharges its waters.

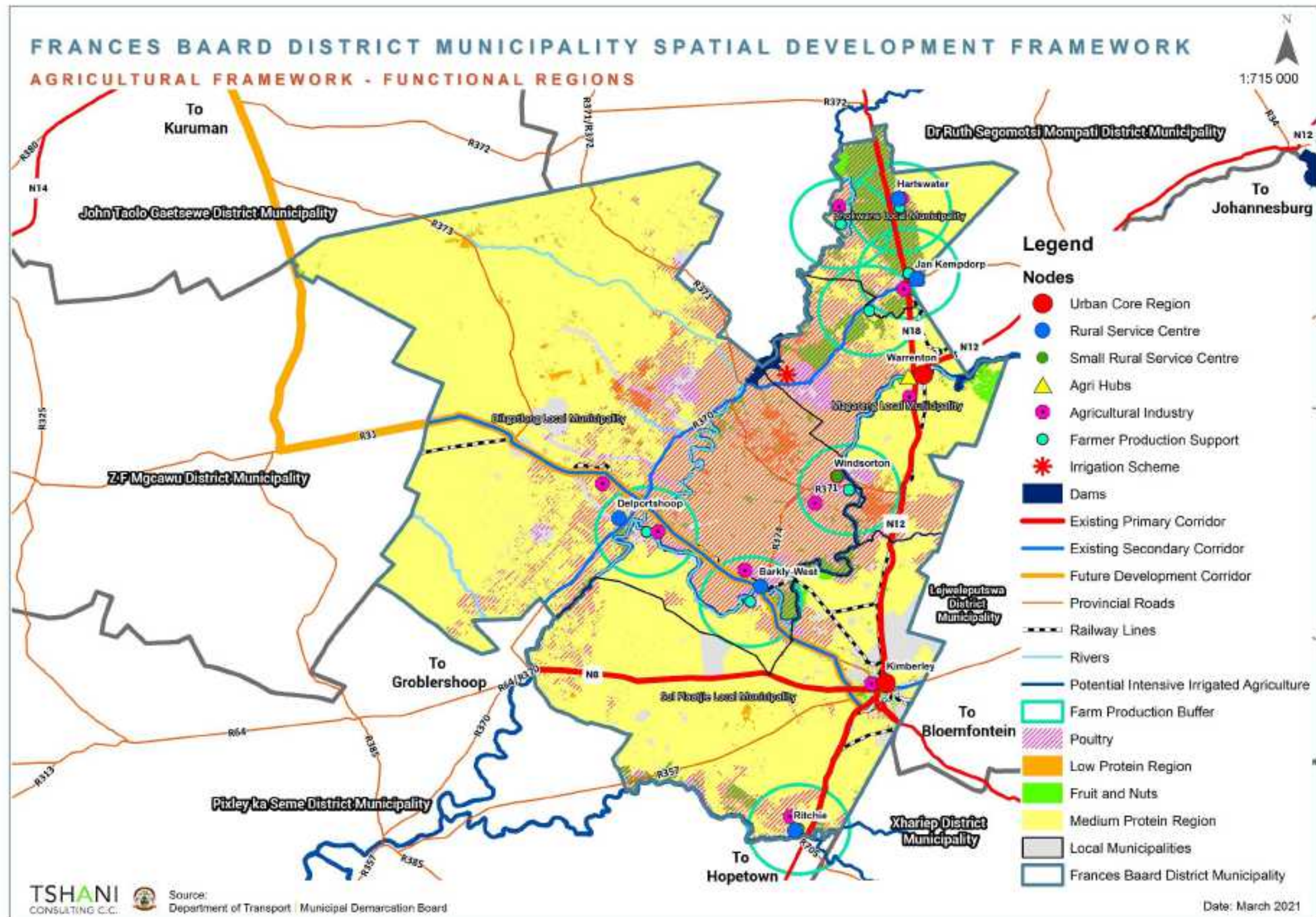
Ghaap Mountain and Ghaap Plateau

Formal conservation areas are located within the District surrounding the Longlands to the south of Delporthoop in Dikgatlong LM and to the north of the N 8 between Kimberley and Schmidtsdrift

- The district contains a large number of Critical Biodiversity One areas scattered throughout the District. This include areas surrounding Barkly West, Windsorton, Kamfersdam to the north of Kimberley and areas on and surrounding the Ghaap Plato.
- Most the Ghaap Plato and areas to the North West are predominantly identified as Ecological Support Areas, specifically focussing on the Aqua environment and species.



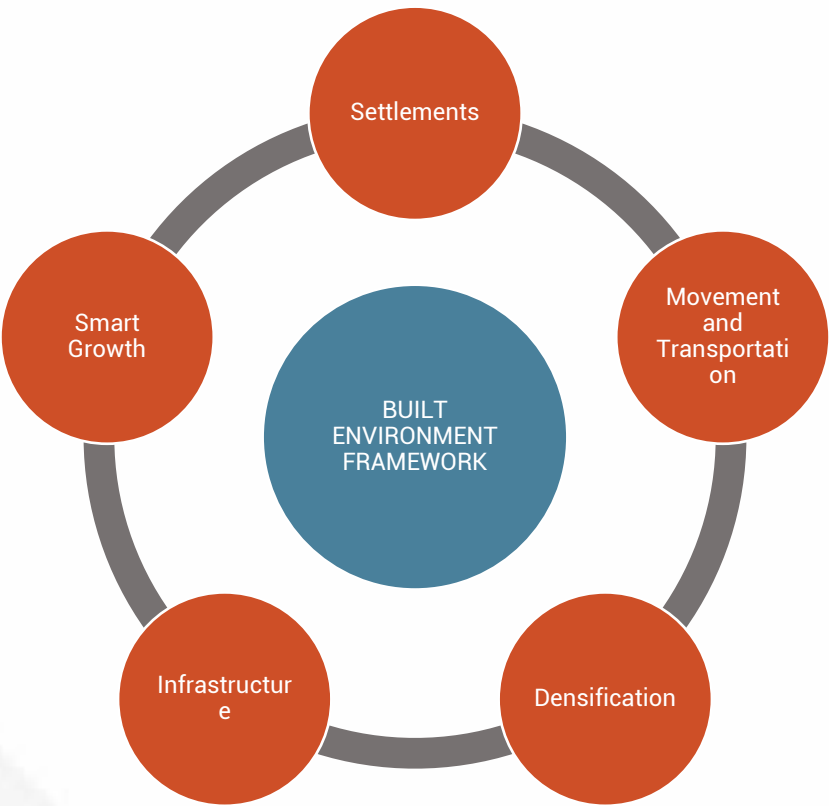
Plan 30: Agricultural Framework Plan



Plan 31: Agricultural Framework Plan

BUILT ENVIRONMENT FRAMEWORK

The Built Environment Framework aims to look at the Built aspect with regards to proposals for the FBDM. The following are components of the Built Environment Framework:



5.M. Settlements

SETTLEMENT CLASSIFICATION AND FUNCTION			
Settlement	Primary Function	Secondary Function	Economic Base
Warrenton	Rural Service Centre	Agri-hub	Agriculture

There is a need to capitalise on the location of Warrenton on the N12 and on the N18 and to explore the potentials of [Warrenton as a location point](#) between Kimberley and Phokwane Local Municipality.

Warrenton also acts as a support to the surrounding mining communities. It offers the supporting social amenities as well as retail, residential, etc.

SETTLEMENT CLASSIFICATION AND FUNCTION			
Settlement	Primary Function	Secondary Function	Economic Base
Hartswater	Rural Service Centre	Administrative Centre	Agriculture
Ritchie	Rural Service Centre	-	Agriculture
Jan Kempdorp	Rural Service Centre	-	Agriculture

[Hartswater](#) is the administrative centre of Phokwane LM and is situated in the centre of the service area. The town is also the commercial hub of the Vaalharts area. A large variety of agri-orientated industries have been established over a period of time while service and smaller maintenance services have been developed.

The following attributes of Hartswater should be focussed on for future development.

- The close proximity of the N18 route and development opportunities associated therewith.
- Redevelopment and strengthening of the commercial and business control to create jobs and support the surrounding agricultural service area.
- Focus on the establishment of agri- orientated business.
- Address the demand for additional land needed for residential expansion of the town.
- Planning for a large section of land to address integrated development principles, introduce a sustainable new future extension direction for the town.

Ritchie is a small town situated 40 kilometres south of Kimberley on the north bank of the Riet River in the Northern Cape province. There is present need for affordable housing for the lower income earning class. There is great opportunities for tourist destinations such as game lodges and resorts. It is an area that is highly dominated with White people. The majority speaking Afrikaans as their home language. There are great opportunities for agricultural related activities in this town.

Pampierstad is situated ± 15km to the west of Hartswater and acts as a dormitory town to Hartswater. Space available for the horizontal expansion of the settlement is limited because tribal land ownership and the river system to the east. Infill planning and densification on existing vacant land is recommended.

The upgrading of social amenities and business opportunities should be considered to serve this large residential component.

Jan Kempdorp has the potential for the development of transport orientated business and activities alongside the N18. It is also noted that there is land availability within this region for residential development.

The town also traverses the Vaal-Orange Agricultural zone and should be developed in order to promote the desired growth of this corridor.

SETTLEMENT CLASSIFICATION AND FUNCTION			
Settlement	Primary Function	Secondary Function	Economic Base
Kimberley	Urban Core Region	Administrative Centre	Regional Centre
Ritchie	Rural Service Centre	Agro-processing	Agriculture

The Sol Plaatje Local Municipality aims to develop Kimberley into a Smart City. In support of this, there is a need for a more compact city with intensified activity around and in accessible locations along main public transport routes, there is a need to halt urban sprawl.

The city centre of Kimberley is divided into the university Node and the inner city node. The development of the Sol Plaatje University injected life back into the Kimberly CBD, which will stimulate regeneration in the avenues of residential and commercial developments. These developments will occur as a result of support structures that will be needed by the University. The University is centrally located in the CBD with a strong element of visibility. The university has adopted an approach to promoting cycling, students are provided with bicycles. The administrative and academic component of the University will have an outreach around the civic open space of the city, with maximum accessibility to the city and surrounds. The Sol Plaatje University has the ability to establish as an iconic advantage and assist the municipality to gain a competitive and comparative advantage. As a proposed knowledge economy, the precinct is becoming more diverse with a mix of student accommodation, middle class apartments as well as retail facilities all available within walking distance from each other this then necessitate densification.

The Inner City Node is the heart of the City, and consists of the core and the frame surrounding it. The core contains the full range of uses associated with a CBD, while the frame accommodates transitional uses at a lesser density. The Inner City Node includes the Civic Centre Precinct and the University Precinct. It is noted that the Inner City is characterised by several listed buildings of heritage significance.

SETTLEMENT CLASSIFICATION AND FUNCTION			
Settlement	Primary Function	Secondary Function	Economic Base
Delporthoop	Rural Service Centre	-	Mining
Windsorton	Small Rural Service Centre	-	Agriculture
Barkley-West	Rural Service Centre	-	Mining

Delportshoop is situated ± 35km to the west of Barkly West and enjoys the advantage of the Vaal Rivier as a development magnet. There is a present demand for the development of lower income erven in the area. The unique agricultural small holding atmosphere is a development attribute but could also be used for residential densification. It is also recommended that the business potential of the R31 to the north thereof should be investigated.

Windsorton is a residential area situated alongside the Vaal River. The two sections of this settlement area are separated by disturbed land created by past mining activities. This disturbed mining property makes future growth and integration of Windsorton impossible. The heritage created by mining and the marketing and tourism of the riverfront should be addressed in the local SDF preparation. Windsorton also serves as a service centre for the nearby Holpan mining community.

Barkly West is the administrative centre for Dikgatlong and is situated 35km from Kimberley. During the preparation of the local SDF the following attributes of the town should be acknowledged:

- Dormitory function to Kimberley and in close proximity;
- Availability of industrial land;
- Development potential of the river frontage;
- Dramatic gateway into town from Kimberley;
- Places of historical interest to be developed;
- Rich mining/digging activities in the surrounding area.

Land Claims

A land claim is a request for the restoration of a right in land, lodged with the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights. Anyone who was dispossessed of a right in land after 19 June 1913 as a result of past racially discriminatory laws or practices, and who did not receive just and equitable compensation at the time of dispossession, can lodge a claim for the restoration of such a right, or equitable redress2.

The table below highlights the total area of the municipality under a land claim process.

	Sum of Land Claims
DC9	593,103
NC total	5006,433
SA total	20617,156

5.N. Movement and Transportation

The focus of movement and Transportation in the FBDM is on the interplay of viable public transportation with the appropriate pattern of land use and settlement development. It is clearly recognised that public transport functions best and most sustainably when it services a user population that resides at sufficient density within the catchments of the transport services offered. Thus, it is emphasised that the theme encompasses the need to plan for public transportation services in tandem with planning for the transformation of inefficient spatial patterns of development over time.

Key Informants and Policy for Transportation in the FBDM

Key Informants and Policy for Transportation and Movement

Key Informants	The FBDM SDF seeks to respond to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Prevailing low density and fragmented settlement forms that pose a challenge to the provision of affordable and efficient public transport and transportation modes, in general;• The need to provide improved connectivity between areas where the majority of residents live and areas of future development potential; and• The need to develop improved connectivity and through-routes for commercial traffic and logistics vehicles.
Global Agreements	UN 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development: Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) <ul style="list-style-type: none">• SDG 9: Innovation & Infrastructure• SDG 11: Sustainable Cities & Communities
National Policy	National Development Plan Vision 2030 (NDP) <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Chapter 8: Transforming human settlement and the National Space Economy• Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF)• Four Strategic Goals• 9 Policy Levers Draft Revised White Paper on National Transport Policy <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 6 Overarching Goals
SPLUMA Section 21_	Relevant guidance drawn from Section 21: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• identify current and future significant structuring and restructuring elements of the spatial form of the municipality, including development corridors, activity spines and economic nodes where public and private investment will be prioritised and facilitated;• identify, quantify and provide location requirements of engineering infrastructure and services provision for existing and future development needs for the next five years.

Table 15: Key informants

The National and Provincial road movement network has been highlighted in the Spatial Structuring Elements.

The Northern Cape SDF identifies a proposed roadway linking Kimberley to Kuruman, the current R31. This would be a key linkage which would have the potential to unlock many economic and tourism opportunities.

Other key movement linkages which would require further upgrades include the N8 and N12 linkages which would ensure safe interprovincial movement.

The railway lines which traverse the district include as follows:

- Cape Town to Gauteng;
- Bloemfontein to Postmasburg; and
- Kimberley to Prieska.

The railway freight has declined over the past number of years and the condition of the facility deteriorated. It has been noted through the Spatial Analysis that there is not much demand in the district for movement of people by rail.

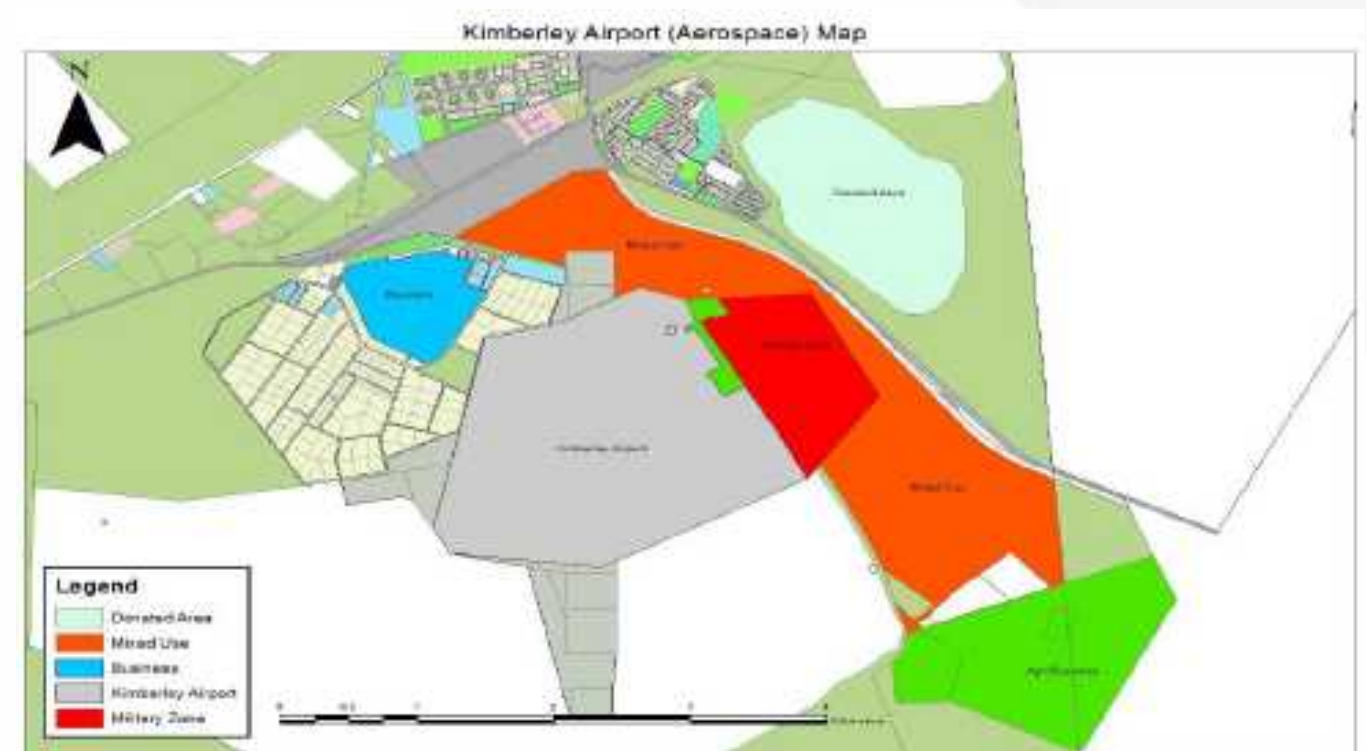
Should rail be upgraded, it should be in line with that of logistics movement, to ensure safe and speedy movement of produce farmed within the district.

The Kimberly Airport carries a national status and is owned and managed by the Airports Company of South Africa. The airport accommodates daily scheduled flights from the City to Johannesburg and Cape Town. It is considered to have an important role in the regional economy. The main purpose of the airport is to transport businesspeople and tourists to the Frances Baard area a limited amount of cargo is also however managed but the main bulk thereof is directed to Upington Airport.

ACSA aims to ensure regular ongoing maintenance to the airport in Kimberley.

It has been noted that the airport in Kimberley is restrictive in that it only services certain routes which restricts movements between other provinces within the country. This further restricts tourism and the movement of people to the district. A demand study would need to be conducted which aims to assess the desirability of expanding the airport in Kimberley.

The prevailing development trend around the airport precinct includes, renewable energy, residential development, mixed use development. The establishment of the airport will have a positive economic advantage to the Green Point Township on the opposite side of the Airport Precinct.



It has further been noted in the NC PSDF, that there are proposals for the airport located in Upington in the ZF Mgcawu District Municipality to be upgraded to allow for the International export commodities. This could support the movement into Frances Baard district for tourism and economic opportunities. The district should aim to support this proposal by strengthening the linkages between areas within the district and Upington. Many agricultural activities occurring within the FBDM could be transported to Upington for export purposes and the both districts could benefit from this.

5.0. Housing

The Frances Baard District (excluding Sol Plaatje LM) has a housing demand of 31 470 (National Housing Needs Register: 12 May 2020), and 30 current projects (COGHSTA Project Information: May 2020) totalling 15 020 units.

In order to address the demand therefore an additional 16 450 units are required.

The total hectares of land required for housing for the demand would be approximately 1748 (calculating 18 units per hectare), therefore, to address the demand an additional 914 hectares of land is required.

Within the District the greatest demand is within Phokwane LM, followed by Dikgatlong LM and then Magareng LM, and the greatest demand type is for home ownership for applicants within the basic subsidy category i.e. no income

and/or less than R3500 per month across the subject Local Municipalities. Renting and Finance Linked Subsidy (GAP Housing) Type housing needs, in the three subject local municipalities, are minimal (National Housing Needs Register: 12 May 2020).

With regards to Human Settlements, the State of the Province Speech 2020 indicated:

- In the next five years the province would implement multiple programmes in the District Development Model to build integrated settlements and realise spatial transformation.
- That 10% of the annual human settlements budget of the province would be used to rectify defective houses in the province.
- Ensure that over the medium to long term, there are no informal settlements but rather planned smart settlements.

The FBDM Draft Annual Report 2018/19 indicated housing as a district wide priority (FBDM Draft Annual Report 2018/19:9) and indicates for the district that Land and Housing is a priority (FBDM Draft Annual Report 2018/19: 10). The FBDM Draft Annual Report 2018/19 indicates that the district continued to support Local Municipalities with regards to housing in accordance with the Service Delivery Agreement between the district and Local Municipalities.

Formal and Informal Dwellings

In the Frances Baard District, there are 17 660 households or 15.6% of residing in informal dwellings according to STATSSA Community Survey of 2016. 83.7 % households within the District live in formal dwellings, and 15.6% in informal dwellings. The percentage of households residing in traditional and “other” dwelling types is 0.3% and 0.4% respectively. (CS: 2016).

To note the following household numbers per Municipality, reside in informal dwellings (2016):

- Sol Plaatjie: 9 829.
- Dikgatlong: 3 204.
- Magareng: 1 221; and
- Phokwane: 3 406.

RDP / Subsidised Dwellings

Within the Northern Cape 30.1% of households reside in government subsidised or RDP dwellings. This percentage is above the national average (CS:2016). Despite Frances Baard District within the province having the highest number of households, in terms of households residing in government subsidised dwellings it does not have the largest number as Pixley Ka Seme leads in that regard.

Formal Housing Typologies

Most households in the Frances Baard District (76%) reside in a formal brick structure. There is however a noticeable portion of the households in the District that currently occupy an informal dwelling (12%). The below graph indicates the housing arrangements across the District and within local municipalities.

Asbestos Material Housing

The Housing Status Quo Report (2017), indicates approximately 28% of existing structures observed within the District Municipality have asbestos material in one form or another. Asbestos utilisation as a building material ranges from being roofing sheeting to walls on superstructures, broadly representing:

- 69% as Housing with Asbestos Roof.
- 14% as Housing with Asbestos Superstructure.
- 13% as Outdoor Structures with Asbestos Roof; and
- 4% as Outdoor Asbestos Superstructures.

Housing Supply

Current housing delivery has been hampered by concerns with regards to bulk infrastructure being able to provide the required human settlements demands and therefore there are currently projects underway to address upgrading waste water treatment and improvement to water quality which will ensure sound human settlements projects with regards to water and sanitation. The strategic scorecard suggested includes indicators and targets for the different elements that make up a sound and credible human settlement project such as road access/transport routes, stormwater, energy, lighting, and waste removal as well as importantly the LED beneficiation from project implementation in the area.

Institutional arrangements including project steering committees for projects coordination are included in the strategic scorecard framework.

In addition, responsible tax paying consumers to increase the revenue bases of the LMs and the DM through consumer workshoping is a key indicator for consideration.

The following housings programmes, subsidy mechanisms and financial instruments are available to help address the housing demand identified in the district municipality:

- The National Upgrading Support Programme (NUSP)
- Upgrading Informal Settlements Programme
- Enhanced People's Housing Process (EHPH)
- Integrated Residential Development Programme (IRDP)
- Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)
- Finance Linked Individual Subsidy Programme (FLISP)
- Department Of Water Affairs (DWA)
- Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA)
- National Housing Finance Corporation Ltd (NHFC)
- Rural Housing Loan Fund
- The National Urban Reconstruction And Housing Agency (NURCHA)

The legislative context emphasised the importance of moving from housing development to sustainable human settlement development through: (1) reforms to the current planning system, (2) development of a strategy for densification of cities, (3) substantial investment into public transport provision, (4) a national spatial development framework and norms to improve the balance between location of jobs and people, (5) a comprehensive review of the grant and subsidy regime for housing, (6) a national spatial restructuring fund, (7) a national observatory for spatial data and analysis, (8) citizen activity for local planning and development initiatives, and (10) more effective land markets for the poor. The strategies developed attempt to address these key elements if and where possible (FBDM Housing Sector Plan, 2020).

5.P. Growth Management Strategy

"The spirit and purpose of planning is to guide the future development and use of land. Planning is about where development should happen, where it should not and how it interacts with its surroundings. This involves promoting and facilitating development while protecting and enhancing the natural and built environment in which we live, work and spend our leisure time."

Source: Draft Rural Land Use Management & Regulatory Guidelines 2017: DRDLR

As per the national planning policy discussed in the Section 3 it is clear that the National Government policy such as the City Transformational Outcomes contained in MFMA Circular 88 essentially compels a municipality to limit urban sprawl and directs all cities to adopt the Compact City Model in order to achieve Spatial Transformation.

By Definition the Compact City model requires the City to adopt an effective Growth Management Strategy to lead and direct urban growth according to its spatial strategy and its budget. All the metros have adopted the Compact City model and consequently all have a Growth Management Strategy.

The Growth Management Strategy is guided by several components:

- SPLUMA Principles
- Planning Strategies and Policies
- Planning Tools

5.Q. Densification

A planning decision to densify existing residential development, usually to achieve thresholds for public transportation, will require constraints on the direction for growth and on limiting the aerial extent of the built-up area and will be matched with changes of zoning within a fixed area.

Promoting Densification in and around strategic locations is an important antidote to urban sprawl as it looks at providing high numbers of housing units in strategic, highly accessible locations with high levels of access to economic and social opportunities. If the housing demand, or part thereof, can be satisfied through centrally located high quality higher density residential development then there will be less demand for low density residential developments on the periphery. The secret to success for stimulating the demand for higher density residential living

is the quality of the urban environment in which these developments are located. These areas should therefore be focus areas for public investment in infrastructure, social services, streetscape and urban design, open spaces and general high quality, positive performing urban environments.

It is essential to contain development within the urban edge or towns to minimise urban sprawl and to manage growth and development within the towns. This also allows easy management of infrastructure and service provision of social amenities.

Managed expansion refers to the gradual and incremental outward growth of a settlement (i.e. the so-called ripple effect), but within demarcated urban development boundaries (or urban edge), as opposed to leap frog developments that are not physically and functionally integrated with the main urban area.

Simply put the concept of Densification works together with the Urban Edge towards the achievement of a more Compact City by encouraging the intensification of residential land uses in areas within the urban edge and thereby limiting urban sprawl. Densification can be achieved by:

- Allowing the development of smaller residential erven (access to these smaller erven by using 'panhandles' and Right of Way servitudes needs to be carefully considered).
- Encouraging higher densities in 'low cost' housing developments, bearing in mind that this will need to be achieved in many cases as an outcome of an extended "dialogue" between the needs and expectations of a given beneficiary community and the Municipality and its representatives.
- Encouraging development of flats and townhouses (cluster housing) in areas of high accessibility (especially in the Integration Zones)
- Discouraging subdivision of agricultural land (outside of the Urban Edge) by setting a minimum subdivision size of 10ha. This will encourage densification within the Urban Edge and protect valuable agricultural land.
- Encouraging development of 'Social Housing' in the Integration Zones identified within the Urban Edge.
- Supporting the range of generic settlement models proposed in the Frances Baard District Municipality in the Land Reform & Settlement Plan with respect to peri-urban and rural settlement formation.

The Sol Plaatje SDF also identifies the necessity of densification within the Local Municipality. The SDF further states that densification within the urban centres is a necessity to counter the increased urban sprawl on the periphery of the Local Municipality (but is existent throughout the district). It is seen as a positive aspect to accommodate for the demand for housing within the LM.

The Sol Plaatje SDF outlines the importance of densification due to the following:

The viability of existing and proposed public transportation infrastructure and services increase in areas of higher densities given the increased potential number of uses.

- Higher density development optimizes the use of land and provides accommodation in close proximity to urban opportunities.
- Densification promotes the efficient use of existing infrastructure and can be implemented in a phased manner with obvious cash-flow advantages.
- Appropriate densification can improve residents' quality of life as it brings them closer to urban opportunities and reduces travel time.
- Densification reduces pressure for the development of open spaces and environmentally sensitive areas due to the optimal use of available land. Densification together with appropriate sustainability measures can reduce air, water and land pollution.

5.R. Mixed use strategy

Live, work, play communities spur economic growth, social interactions and quality of life.

Connected communities also reduce the need for private vehicles, increasing the viability of public transport, walking, and bicycling as well as more shared community spaces like plazas, parks, and sidewalks all of which foster interaction. Public transit-friendly neighborhoods benefit local economies. Less time commuting and more walking increases support of local businesses.

The demand for live-work-play (LWP) communities drives the need for mixed use developments. The demand for mixed use development will grow as the digital transformation continues. This trend has been boosted because of COVID 19 where work-from-home or working and living in the same building is set to become the new normal. It is proposed that the SDF support the live-work-play development trend in appropriate locations.

Live-work-play (LWP) communities: Mixed-use commercial and residential developments where people have the opportunity to live, work and play (shop, dine, etc.) all in a relatively close distance to one another.

Mixed-use development: Generally three or more significant revenue-producing uses (such as retail/entertainment, office, residential, hotel, and/or civic/cultural/recreation) that promotes urban integration and higher densities and creates a walkable community with uninterrupted pedestrian connections.

5.S. Infrastructure Framework

1. Green Infrastructure

Green Infrastructure can be broadly defined as a strategically planned network of high quality natural and semi-natural areas with other environmental features, which is designed and managed to deliver a wide range of ecosystem services and protect biodiversity in both rural and urban settings. More specifically Green Infrastructure, being a spatial structure providing benefits from nature to people, aims to enhance nature's ability to deliver multiple valuable ecosystem goods and services, such as clean air or water. One of the key attractions of Green Infrastructure is its ability to perform several functions in the same spatial area. In contrast to most 'grey' infrastructures, which usually have only one single objective, Green Infrastructure is multifunctional which means it can promote win-win solutions or 'small loss-big gain' combinations that deliver benefits to a wide range of stakeholders as well as to the public at large. However, for this to happen, the ecosystem must be in a healthy condition. Green Infrastructure encourages a more sustainable and resource efficient development process in line with National Development Plan 2030 Strategy.

The Sol Plaatje SDF places importance on Green Infrastructure stating that developers within the LM would need to consider green building techniques for all developments including in the following:

- Management;
- Indoor Environmental Quality; Energy;
- Transport; Water; Materials;
- Land Use and Ecology; Emissions, and
- Innovation.

Solar Energy

Solar energy generation can also be found in areas surrounding Kimberley, these solar plants are however directly connected to the Eskom grid and does not supply any settlement directly.

The FBDM Rural Development Plan, 2018 mentions the expansion of Solar corridor in the District in order to unlock potential for solar energy for the Agri-Hubs and FPSU's.

2. Broadband Connectivity

High-speed Internet access is not a luxury, but an essential service that we all depend on to communicate, make a living, and access essential goods and services. Without broadband, families and businesses are unable to fully participate in many aspects of contemporary life. Lack of broadband negatively affects the civic, economic, and social engagement of community residents; makes it difficult for start-ups and small businesses to succeed and scale; and impedes ward development, job creation, and the economic health of the city. Many of Frances Baard District Municipality households do not have Internet service at home, with major disparities in households above and below the poverty line.

Speed and connectivity are also features of the urbanisation that is gripping South Africa and the rest of the developing world. Technology brings a demand for speed, not just in connectivity but in addressing service delivery issues and diffuses power away from the government to the people, who increasingly demand speedy response times to problems.

For the South African public sector to be able to benefit from these changes in technology it will be necessary to embrace technology and forge strong partnerships with the private sector. Public-private partnerships have proven to be beneficial, as the public sector will have to learn from private sector initiatives, as most of the expertise rests with them. The demand for services by the public forces the South African Government to look to technology for solutions and it is understandable why measures are being put in place to improve the technological environment. The technological environment is also receiving priority attention because of its wealth-creating capabilities. South Africa's average, annual growth rate of 4% energised business, but globalised competition resulted in lean business organisations, despite flexible laws. The South African Government's manufacturing strategy meant shifting public resources to invest in research and development in a few, selected, high-tech sectors and rapidly advancing technology was chosen as a key driver of economic activity.

3. Water/ Infrastructure

A Water Service Authority (W SA) should be able to guarantee assurance of supply to its water users from the supply, demand and performance of the resources under existing climatic conditions. Although not defined, it is suggested that assurance of supply is met if water resources can meet the peak demand of users by utilising less than 80% of the resource capacity.

There is no separate Water Service Provider contract in Sol Plaatje, Magareng, Phokwane or Dikgatlong. In all cases the municipality, as the W SA, provides water services.

- Sol Plaatje's receives their water from:
 - Vaal River
 - Riet River with support from Vanderkloof Dam
- Phokwane receives their water from:
 - Vaal River via the Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme
- Magareng receives their water from:
 - Vaal River
- Dikgatlong receives their water from:
 - Sedibeng Water
 - Vaal River

4. Telecommunications

A dramatic increase in household's access to telecommunications is visible in the Census of 2011. A 54% increase is shown for FBDM households with access to Cell phones with a total of 83%, this percentage is the second highest within the District. Access to Landline/ Telephone for the FMDM households has decreased with 18% and access to internet increased from 0% in 2001 to 31% in 2011, this percentage is the highest percentage of accessibility to the internet within the District.

5. Solid Waste Management

A professional waste management strategy should adhere to the following principles as stipulated in the National waste management Strategy:

- Waste management planning should be addressed on an integrated manner;
- Waste should be minimized by the recycling process;
- Waste collection and transportation facilities to be managed; and
- The proper management of waste treatment and disposal.

The present solid waste management system in the Frances Baard Service Area is in an unsatisfactory state:

- **Sol Plaatje Municipality:** The landfill site is registered and situated to the west of Kimberley. The site is poorly managed and for this reason results in environmental pollution. Site positioning in terms of prevailing winds is poor.
- **Magareng Municipality:** The Warrenton landfill site is positioned approximately 9 km to the west of Warrenton and is in the process of registration.
- **Phokwane Municipality:**
 - Jan Kempdorp: The informal Jan Kempdorp dumping site is situated to the west of the town in close proximity to the golf course. The Ganspan dumping site is illegally used and there is an occurrence of extensive illegal dumping close to the Ganspan residential area.
 - Hartswater: The existing Hartswater dumping site to the west of the residential area is in the process of closure. A new landfill site has been registered to the east of the town and the opening thereof is expected before the end of 2013.
 - Pampierstad: The landfill site for this residential area is situated to the south-east thereof. The facilities at the site are well planned but the management needs upgrading.
- **Dikgatlong Local Municipality:** The primary landfill site for Barkly West is in the process of being registered.

5.T. NSDF – North-western Transformation Corridor

The Northwestern Transformation Corridor is identified in the NSDF as national priorities on this region. The FBDM falls within this region. It is to be ensured that the FBDM SDF promotes the growth of the district in order to achieve the board goals at a national scale.

Within this Corridor, Sol Plaatje has been identified as an Urban Core and Barkley West, Hartswater, Jan Kempdorp, Pampiestad and Ritchie.

The NSDF aims to ensure the following for North western Corridor:

- Extend and improve the transportation networks, ensure regular maintenance and upgrading of existing infrastructure, notably roads, increase investment in high-speed ICT infrastructure and enhance urban-rural and rural-rural connectivity;
- Develop a network of (1) strong and vibrant existing and emerging cities and large towns to fulfil the role of fully-fledged national urban nodes, (2) viable regional development anchors, and (3) well capacitated rural service centres;
- Ensure effective city and town management to prevent sprawl, ensure innovative settlement planning and urban land reform, well-managed land-use, enabling infrastructure investment.
- Provide catalytic, innovative, and contextually suitable sustainable infrastructure, social and basic services to support enterprise development, well-being, and inclusive growth with both an ecological and human-focussed approach.
- Prioritise human capital and people-centred enterprise development, e.g. arts and culture, tourism, knowledge creation, education and innovation;
- Optimise the agricultural opportunities in the region and support the establishment of small-scale farming activities, agri-enterprises and agri-led industrialisation, to foster productive rural regions, enhance national food security, and strengthen national water security;
- Develop the tourism sector and creative industries in the region, with an emphasis on small-and-medium-sized farming activities, and agri-eco production;
- Ensure the protection and management of ecological infrastructure and national resources and protected areas, including SWSAs and high-value agricultural land; and

- Establish strong regional growth and development compacts, including all role-players, i.e. the three spheres of government, traditional leaders, communities (notably youth), the private sector, CBOs, NGOs and organised labour, and ensure regional, cross provincial and cross-municipal boundary collaborative spatial development planning and governance.

The Plan below highlights the Northwestern Corridor as outlined in the NSDF:



5.U. Smart Growth

The settlement edge is not an isolated management tool, but rather part of a package of urban growth management tools that all need to be employed equally vigorously by the local authority in order to achieve desired, sustainable and efficient urban growth management.

Internationally, a sustainable approach to growth management aptly called “**smart growth**” is seen as the most efficient way of developing urban areas. Smart Growth is a collection of urban development strategies aimed at reducing sprawl and promoting growth that is balanced and fiscally, environmentally, and socially responsible. Smart Growth tries to promote growth and development in areas with optimal opportunity and offers an antidote to the sprawl that has resulted from unlimited low-density development further and further away from the urban centres. Rather than simply restricting development, smart growth is focused on how and where new development should be accommodated.

The principles of smart growth are:

- New growth and development must be leveraged to improve existing areas of opportunity.
- Redevelopment of existing areas must be promoted rather than abandoning existing infrastructure and facilities only to rebuild it farther out.
- Development must be “town-centre”, transit and pedestrian oriented.
- Integrated, mixed-land uses must be promoted in strategic locations.

It is further noted that the Concept of Smart City is of a long term planning goal. There are developmental steps that are to be undertaken in the interim before we get to the Smart City goal for the District.

5.V. How can the Smart City Concept be applied in the FBDM Context

When discussing Smart City Concepts, it is essential to ensure that we are able to link it to the particular nature of the study area; such as the unique characteristics of the FBDM.

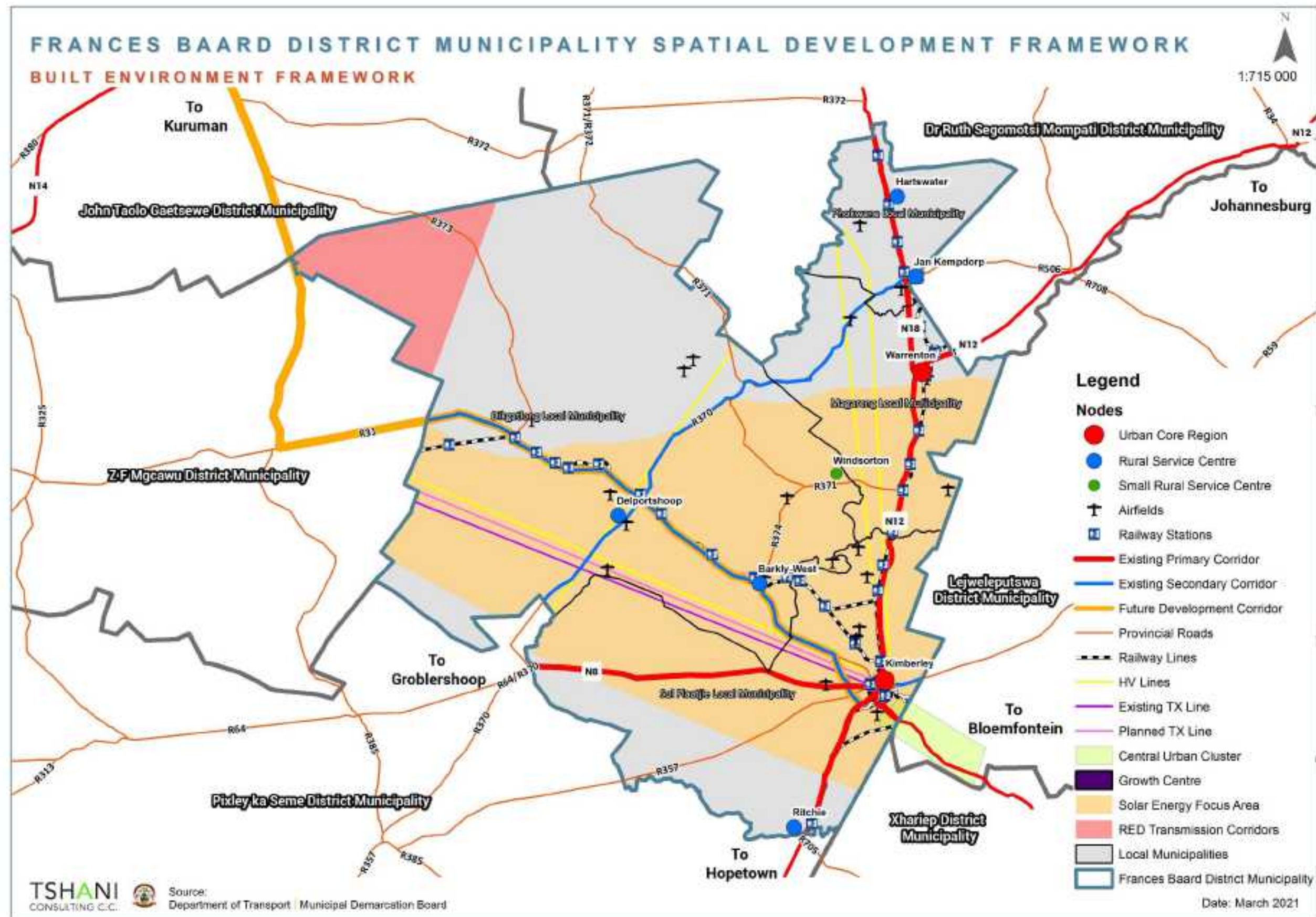
The values and principles of the Smart City concept with relation to the FBDM concept includes as follows:

- To establish an ecological civilisation oriented smart district toward the future;
- To pursue inclusive and balanced growth for the Frances Baard District Municipality's geographical built environment;
- To promote and facilitate scientific and technological innovation as a path to smart district development;
- To build and enhance a smart and accessible information society;
- To foster an open and sharing multicultural society;
- To build friendly and livable communities with social cities/towns, and
- To pursue balanced urban-rural built environment development.

It is known that government investment for service provision sustainability needs to be focus-driven and benefit communities in areas intended to be recipients. The integrated efforts and approach by the FBDM through the smart city initiatives will ensure return on investment made by local government with the outcome addressing the socio-economic conditions of communities is realised be it infrastructure, community development and economic growth which in turn will lead to community wealth.

The primary objective of Smart city initiatives is to develop smart solutions to problems that are sustainable in the long run as well as to find ways in which to solve unique problems by considering environmental concerned as using them as an advantage instead of a hinderance and to transform planning that works in synergy with the environment which still allowing the maximum benefits for the locals. 1

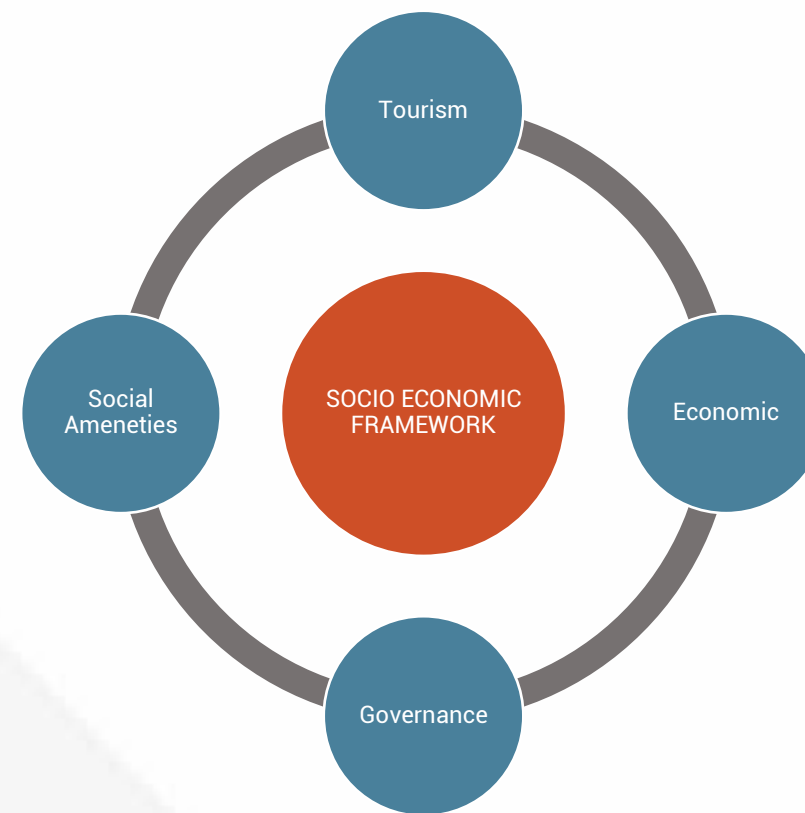
In order to ensure the growth of the district in this nature, a Smart District Strategy needs to be developed for the FBDM wherein, the a guide would detail how this vision can be realised, including the steps that need to be undertaken in order to reach this vision.



Plan 32: Built Environment Framework Plan

SOCIO ECONOMIC FRAMEWORK

The Socio-Economic Framework aims to address the social and economic issues pertaining to the FBDM. This includes skills development in the District as well as social amenities that may be required. This framework also addresses the tourism aspects as it has been noted in the SWOT Analysis that the District has huge potential for tourism.



The objective of the Socio-economic Framework includes aiming to provide skills to locals to be able to sustain themselves as well as identifying areas of potential for social amenities.

Areas which the FBDM need to focus on include the following:

- Employment generation
- Increased growth and output;
- More even income distribution;
- More equal spatial distribution of economic activity;
- Transforming ownership and control of production;

- Enhanced technological capacity.

5.W. Tourism Framework

It has been seen through the Status Quo assessment that Tourism within the FBDM has been on the decline. This has been due to several reasons including the following;

- Decline in mining tourism
- Lack of promotion of emerging tourism opportunities
- The effects of the COVID 19 Pandemic

Ensuring that the district is able to be resilient in this sector is of key importance as the district boasts many tourism assets serving the local market from within the province, local market from within the country as well as international markets.

The district is one of the provinces in South Africa that is heavily impacted upon by exit migration of the population seeking opportunities elsewhere.

The district is found in the diamond field tourism region adjoining the Kalahari region to the north west, Green Kalahari to the west and Karoo region to the south and east the Free State.

Kimberley is the only airport found within the district with regional connecting flights to major centres.

Local demand includes all forms of domestic tourists and includes in particular the two sizable visitor markets namely, Gauteng and Western Cape which have approximately 7.1 million inhabitants, followed by the Northern Cape with 1,145,861 inhabitants. Marketing Focus needs to be directed towards the North West Province with 3,509,953 inhabitants and the Free State province with 2,745,590 inhabitants and the Eastern Cape Province with 6,562,053 inhabitants. Recent Eastern Cape tourism statistics identified that half the inhabitants undertook domestic trips nationally. If the same assumption can be made at a National Level, this can imply that there could potentially be approximately 10,5 million active domestic travellers.

MICE (Meetings, Incentives, Conventions and Exhibitions)

Description: Private businesses and government groups seek closer out of town facilities to host brain storming/teambuilding sessions etc. Kimberley, Upington, Sishen are key points.

Market Size: Potentially a medium to large segment and high revenue earning potential. Excess of 7 million visitors based on local and national studies.

Profile: Require high value-added service/experience

- Short on time
- Tend to make last minute booking alterations
- Generally arranged through third parties such as in-house travel agents

LOCAL COMMUNITIES

Description: The Development will need the support of the towns, villages such as Kimberley, Windsorton , Boshof, Campbell, Douglas, Warrenton, Hope Town and Barkly West to support and visit the facility.

Market size: Excess of 160, 000 potential visitors

Market Profile: Low – High income, rural and peri urban High proportion of the local community are unemployed however may possess of basic skills

Local tourists seek affordable activities and accommodation for 2-day or weekend visits. These are shorter trips which would support their needs of a “weekend getaway”. Opportunities surrounding this market should be addressed such as nearby and unique tourism attributes.

NEW URBAN AFRICAN TRAVELERS

Description: Middle to low income of peri urban areas embarking on low-cost day trips

Market Size:

- Has huge potential for growth
- Still small and would require incentive intervention
- Likely to be led by school and church groups

Profile:

- New travel experiences
- Seek package prices
- Travel in groups

METRO MIDDLE MARKET

Description: Middle income from surrounding town/ cities who seek good value day trips and short holidays. Includes the VFR Market.

Market size: Large segment which can produce strong visitor flows over weekend and peaking in school holidays and over long weekends

Profile:

- Budget conscious
- Likes outdoor country surroundings seeks affordable accommodation and dining
- Adventurous market
- Individuals and young couples
- Extends across all racial groups

METRO UPMARKET

Description: Higher Income Generating individuals from Kimberley, Barkly West Sishen, Upington etc seeking individualized day trips / short breaks. Includes visitors from other provinces North West and Free State

Market size: Potentially can be sizeable.

Profile:

- Family/couples
- Special interest niche markets
- Travel in small groups of friends
- Have own vehicle

INTERNATIONAL DEMAND

The following information depicts the foreign markets and the potential thereof: -

Description: Tourists entering through international boundaries/gateways generally travelling either independently or in coaches/ part of prearranged itineraries

Market size: Largest share of the market are from the European Countries, USA and Australia have featured. Relatively small but a potential to be a large market is tourists from African Countries especially with regards to community-based tourism concept.

Profile:

- Small numbers
- High spenders
- Seasonal peaks in March- May September- November
- Mainly UK, Germany, America, Australia
- All Itineraries are arranged by tour operator/guides

Conservation sites that have been prioritized can be listed as follows – Benfontein, Rooipoort, Kanfersdam, Wane Baai. The Barkly Iron Bridge and Museum, Canteen Kopje dates back to 1869 first alluvial diamond diggings. Gong Gong falls, village and san drawings, Nooitgedacht Glacial Pavings, are other sites of interest Mattanu Private Nature Reserve provides commercialized tourism offerings.

It has also been noted that there is a high demand from the International market relating to hunting within the Northern Cape, which could also be enhanced through the Frances Baard District. Consideration is to be given to this market to ensure sustainable growth for this sector to thrive without harming the natural system.

Opportunities for growth exist in heritage, conservation (eco) also including adventure/challenges, education and business prioritized Kimberley Triangle and link it to Community based initiatives. Heritage and cultural tourism can be further improved for example the old diamond miners community at Gong Gong and the link with the Vaal River. The Xu and the Xa San Communities still found in the Barkly West Surrounds.

Archaeological, Agri tourism and Mine Tourism can also be seen as potential options for further investigation as similar form have found to be popular in adjoining provinces.

There are also opportunities that the proposed development could be a hub for other community-based tourism projects i.e. Pebble Project, etc. Other community-based tourism projects in close proximity to the Gong Gong development can support each other.

There are also opportunities for growth with 'arranged events', which would be able to attract local markets, currently making use of older facilities in more established areas.

More strategic marketing efforts need to be encouraged for the various social media platforms and including the transport mediums that traverse the district such as the Gauteng / Modderfontein and the N12.

Storytelling, use of the veld, tracking pose huge benefits for tourism and linking to the major attraction of the district that is the Big Hole in Kimberley.

Tourism / hospitality sector will improve synergies and communication amongst communities and other

Visitor demographics


Demographics of visitors can be broken into the following: -

Seasonality: Annual and weekly seasonality shows an average 43% occupancy throughout the year with 54% in peak periods. Week occupancies range between 29% and 50% during the week (peaks during week) and weekends respectively. Also peaks during months of April, September and November;

Visitor Origin: Local surveys revealed that 93% of visitors originated from domestic markets and 7% where foreign visitors. Only 13% where local tourists;

Length of Stay: 94% of people identified stays between 1-4 day's, which is typically characterised by domestic tourist stays, with 6% staying between 5-10 days, which is a mix of local business and leisure markets;

Purpose of visit: the business market accounts for 71% of stays. The business market has experienced recent growth both domestically and locally. And 24% for the leisure market lack of activities and marketing can be contributing factors. Lack of facilities and activities was identified as needs of tourists.

94% 
of people identified stayed between
1-4 DAY'S

58% 
of visitors were aged between
35-44 YEARS OF AGE

55% 
showed that persons paid between
R251-R900 PER STAY

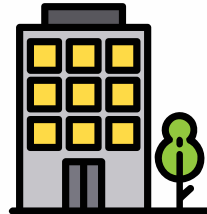
Age profile: identified that 58% of visitors were aged between 35-44 years of age. 27% 45-54 years of age. The largest proportion being the active and mature working class also including the family market

Expenditure: the majority of 55% showed that persons paid between R251 – R900 per stay. Stays were generally short and activities minimal resulting in low expenditure compared to domestic visitor expenditure of R1500 per person per day.

93% 
of visitors originated From Domestic
MARKETS

Business Market
**ACCOUNTS FOR
71% OF STAYS**



43% 
occupancy
THROUGHOUT THE YEAR

Gong Gong Tourism Opportunity

Gong - Gong Area, situated outside Barkly West, was identified as an area of intervention with specific focus around the 'Gong - Gong Falls,' which is a unique natural occurrence on the Vaal River.

Opportunities for growth exist in heritage, conservation (eco) also including adventure/challenges, education and business sectors, where Gong - Gong can align to these market opportunities.

Eco tourism opportunities with focus on conservation can also attract educational groups to the Gong - Gong area with its unique heritage attractions.

Eco challenges and competitive outdoor sports have been popular trends for local and even national participation, where consideration can be given for the following:

- Tri Athlon events with a Gong - Gong and / or adventure challenge that can include collecting specific local tokens from point of interest to complete the race, involving various sporting disciplines such as, canoeing/swimming, cycling and running.
- The proposed tourism interventions can serve as a hub for community based tourism initiatives i.e. Pebble Project, Alluvial Mining Tours etc. This form of tourism cooperation would increase the activity base for potential visitors and also support remote community projects thereby increasing its sustainability.

- There are also opportunities for growth with 'arranged events', which would be able to attract local markets such as country fairs, expos etc., currently making use of older facilities in more established areas.

Heritage Resources

The Northern Cape according to DEAT (2004,9) is divided into the following five tourism regions. These include:

- the Diamond Fields with its historic and cultural heritage;
- the Green Kalahari with the impressive Orange River and Augrabies Falls;
- the Kalahari with its hot and dry desert landscapes;
- the Karoo region with its distinct semi-arid landscapes, sheep farms and fossil treasures; and
- Namakwa with its spring flowers and rugged coastline

The Diamond Fields region is within the FBDM area. According to DEAT (2004, 22) the "Diamond Fields" is probably most famous for the Big Hole and its mining heritage. Kimberley, the provincial capital boasts a modern infrastructure and a wealth of museums, monuments and other historic and cultural heritage attractions. Other principal features of the region include the Nooitgedacht Glacial Pavings near Barkley West, the impressive Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme near Hartswater, and a number of hunting venues and historic battle sites located throughout the region.

Township Tourism

Township Tourism is growing at a rapid rate nationally, and areas within the FBDM have the perfect opportunities for its identified Townships. The focus of Township Tourism will be specifically on:

- Route Marketing including heritage sites
- Products promotion;
- Sport Nodes Enhancement: Swimming Pool, Stadium; etc.
- Release of Municipal and State Land for Township Economy
- Facilitate the reuse of abandoned buildings
- Facilitate urban agriculture - food security and produce for sale to market
- SMME Support
- Develop training centres and provide training and skills development to support entrepreneurs
- Provide Business/Financial Support

- Develop industrial hives/incubators
- Upgrade informal trading areas;

Promoting the Tourism Sector

1. PARTNERSHIPS WITH OTHER STAKEHOLDERS

The district could facilitate partnerships between investors and stakeholders.

Partnerships between municipalities and businesses or community organisations can also provide useful institutional vehicles for LED. Different types of partnerships work well at the programme level and at the project level. The detailed conditions and requirements of the Municipal Finance Management Act need careful investigation in this regard.

2. PARTNERSHIPS AT A PROGRAMME LEVEL

Local government will often form partnerships with other stakeholders to assist in the co-ordination of programme-level LED initiatives, and to help secure a shared community vision as a basis for LED. These have the status of a legal person. This means that the company may contract with other organisations and individuals. It may also hold assets and liabilities in its own name. Expensive and time consuming to establish. The Registrar of Companies has to establish that the company is being formed for the purpose of its stated objective, rather than as a profit-making venture. This makes the process of legal establishment lengthier. Limited liability in the case of bankruptcy, members of Section 21 companies are protected from being held personally liable for the debts of the company. In this respect Section 21 companies are similar to ordinary companies.

Complex structure. Ownership of Section 21 companies is usually separated from management.

For example, in the case of an LED institution, the owners of the Section 21 company will be community stakeholders, excluding the municipality. However, the company will be run by a Board of Directors. This may make decision making more complex and time-consuming.

Independence allows flexibility and effectiveness. The independence of Section 21 companies allows them to operate with maximum flexibility and effectiveness. Structure and management style of commercial enterprises. Section 21 companies are equipped to undertake a wide range of LED activities, secure funding from a range of sources, and

interact with a variety of stakeholders. The accountability framework of a Section 21 company provides safeguards when spending public funds. Further, the company structure helps bind a partnership of stakeholders into the LED initiative through the Board of Directors. The directors are legally obliged to prioritise the interests of companies.

Founders may lose control of the company. The same independence that is mentioned as an advantage has an important negative aspect. Unless community groups are able to retain close control over the Section 21 company through ownership or funding, there is a danger that the institution may become increasingly distant, and even eventually break away from the founders. Communities should be aware of this danger and be alert to the need to retain effective control over the management of Section 21 companies set up for the purpose of promoting LED Transparency and tight legal framework. The tight legal framework under which Section 21 companies operate tends to enhance transparency and minimise the scope for individuals or interest groups to manipulate or mis-use the company.

Partnerships may range from unstructured or informal partnerships, to formal and tightly structured arrangements.

Some possible types of Programme-Level Partnerships are:

Informal networks: These are loose networks, which often develop through personal relationships or social ties.

Co-ordinating structures: These structures which do not necessarily have a legal status. A common type of co-ordinating structure is a Local Economic Development Forum Independent implementation organisations: Examples include Section 21 companies and community development trusts.

3. PRIVATE COMPANY OR CLOSE CORPORATION

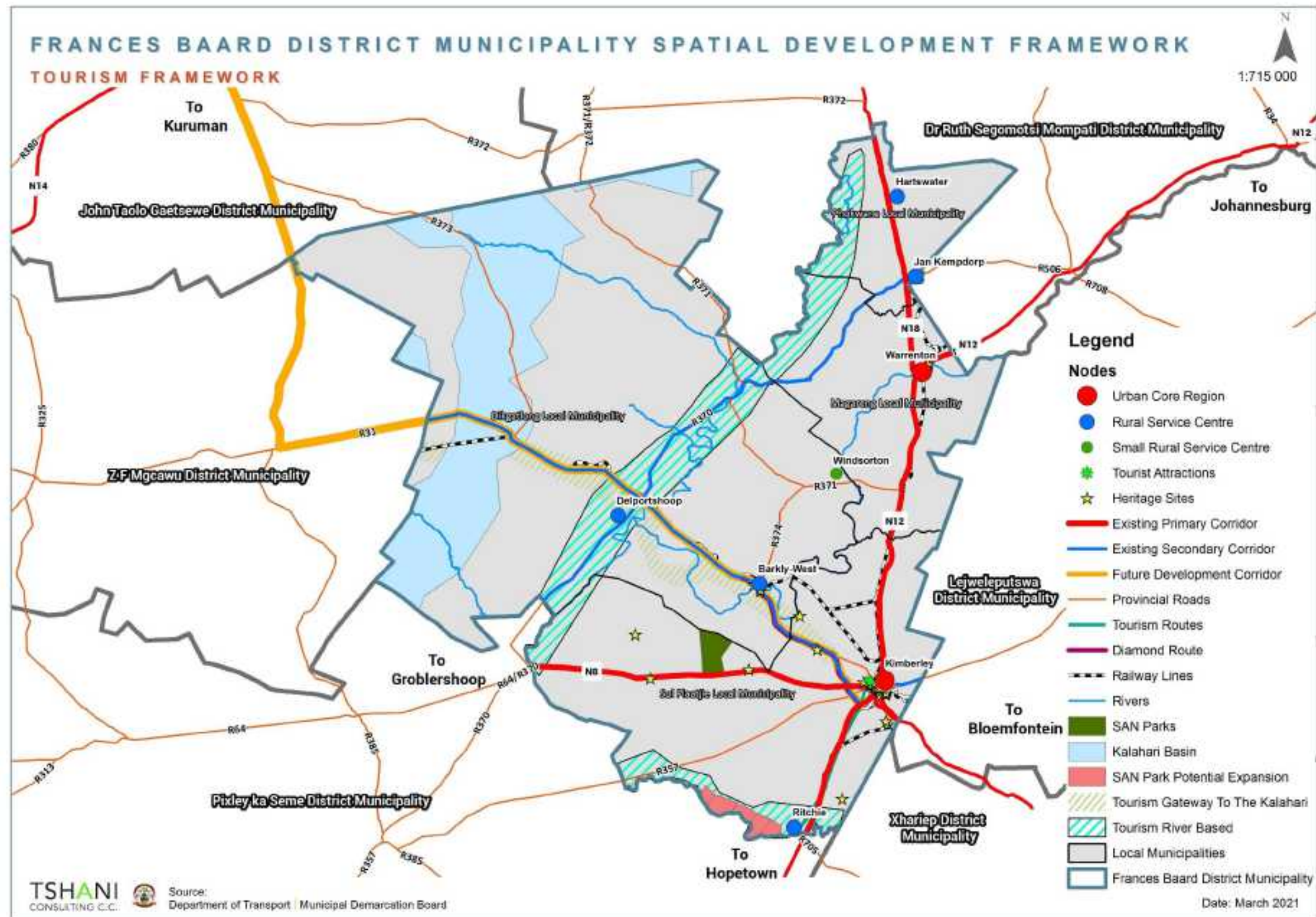
Most businesses register with the Registrar of Companies in Pretoria as either a Private Company (Pty) Ltd or a Close Corporation (cc). Application forms are obtainable from a business consultant or chartered attorney.

Tourism Initiatives

The following have also been identified as Tourism Initiatives that would bring about resilience for the tourism sector within the FBDM:

- Marketing the natural environmental assets within the district

- Constant maintenance and upkeep of these natural assets
- Promote Township Tourism
- Develop a "Key Places" Cleansing and Maintenance Programme aimed at ensuring that major gateways, routes and destinations in the FBDM are beautified and maintained
- Enhance existing tourist attractions, thus encouraging revisits
- Promote Heritage Tourism - Utilize and promote all of BCMM's heritage resources to attract Tourists



Plan 33: Tourism Framework Plan

5.X. Economic Framework

FBDM has the strongest economic potential in the Northern Cape, accounting for **36%** of the provincial GDP.

The key economic sectors within the FBDM (as also outlined in the Status Quo phase) is as follows:

- Agriculture and Mining – 14%
- Secondary Sector – 9% ((Manufacturing, electricity and construction)
- Tertiary Sector – 77% (Trade, transport, financial and social services)

The Key Performance Area related to economic development as identified in the District IDP identifies the need to *“Facilitate growth and diversification of the district economy by optimizing all available resources”*. Some of the aims to achieve this goal is as follows:

It has been noted that unemployment is high in the district. It is with this understanding that the key objective for the Economic Framework is Skills development as well as investment and financing mechanisms.

Other key economic sectors which can be looked at for the FBDM are:

- Renewable energy sources
- Agro-processing
- Knowledge economy

Renewable Energy

FBDM's cities and towns should also promote the use of renewable energy sources and build low-carbon eco-cities/towns and should strive to advocate the conservation of resources and to promote environment-friendly materials and manufacturing. The districts cities/towns and their citizens should, in doing so, join together to create sustainable smart districts environment lifestyles and promote an ecological civilisation in which people and built environment co-exist in harmony.

The FBDM should work with the local municipalities and other government agencies to develop solutions to bottlenecks through transmission modernisation, new facilities, and smart transmission technology. Smart grid technologies can also enable greater integration of distributed generation technologies and allows consumers to better manage consumption, helping to reduce both peak and total energy loads. The district should support the development of a comprehensive strategy to deploy smart grid technologies.

Power regulators and others are looking at what a carbon-minimal future requires and what we need to do to get there, recognising the difficulties of the status quo, including costs. Offshore wind, microgrids, and distributed energy generation can work here as they do in other districts, but the roadblocks need to be removed. Renewable energy sources must account for a significant proportion of the District energy mix.

Agro-processing

Agroprocessing refers to a subset of the manufacturing sector that processes raw materials and intermediate products derived from the agricultural sector. The aim is to develop and advance new processing technologies from lab to pilot and commercial scale implementation, using tools to demonstrate product and process capability at various scales.

Competitive performance of the agriculture and agro-processing industries is likely to contribute to inclusive economic growth and sustained development through back-forward linkages. Initially, by providing various opportunities for earning income in the primary food production, then in processing and value-add and distribution, and finally, in the retailing phases of the agro/food value chain. The growth of the agro-processing industry has the potential to stimulate and spur demand for raw material from the agricultural industry and thereby create novel output markets that increase the income of farmers, which in turn enables investment in capital equipment to improve productivity. The growth and development of the agro-processing industry is intertwined with the agricultural industry. Therefore, the latent potential of agro-processing activities is noted as capable to contribute towards the reduction of unemployment, inequality and poverty levels through backward and forward linkages. (DRDLR, 2018)

Knowledge Economy

The district should focus developments in science and technology are pointing the way to new directions in sustainable urban and rural developments. Investing in science and technology will allow the district to become truly integrated into the knowledge economy, and innovative towns can develop significant advantages in globalisation.

At the same time, investing in science and technology will enable high-tech activities that are expected to experience strong growth of the district.

It is essential to ensure growth in knowledge economy for the betterment of the local community as well as to industries that invest heavily in research and development (R&D) and intellectual capital, thereby benefiting from opportunities to cluster and share information. To prepare for future economic growth, the district should support the

existing sectors which have the potential to thrive (such as agriculture) as well as future innovation clusters, which will be dynamic, mixed-use small business districts that benefit from sharing knowledge and resources.

Rural Economic Strategy

In the context of the project to develop a Land Use Management and Regulatory Guideline for Rural Areas, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reforms has applied the definition that was used by the RDF (1997) as it fits well with the other definitions and provides a functional context from which to develop the guidelines. The definition is as follows:

"...A rural area in this context refers to areas that were previously known as homelands. It also extends to villages and areas under the control of traditional authorities, community property associations and also areas that were dispersed from the central areas of municipalities and did not form a part of a formal municipal town planning scheme and was included in a peri-urban areas town planning scheme 1975..."

Source: Draft Rural LUM & Regulatory Guidelines 2017: DRDLR

Rural areas can be defined as areas outside urban settlements where densities are less than 150 people per km² and where dwelling densities are less than 1du/ha.

Source: Guidelines for the development of Municipal Development Frameworks: DRDLR

The following rural issues need to be addressed:

- Land reform
- Small scale and commercial farming
- Economic linkages with urban areas and access to export opportunities
- Rural tourism

The Guidelines for the development of District Spatial Development Frameworks specifies that issues relating to urban–rural linkages should be carefully considered. In particular the urban and rural transition around the Urban Edge requires careful management for the following reasons:

The protection of agricultural and scenic land abutting the Urban Edge is particularly important. This area is often the most valuable land from an agricultural or tourism point of view because of its close proximity to an urban area. The area should not be blighted by piece-meal or leap-frogging development with urban type densities.

The guidelines for rural land use planning and management in South Africa strive to achieve the following performance qualities, namely:

- Expanding and increasing rural livelihood quality of life: Rural areas providing a unique lifestyle and sustainable livelihoods for all residents.
- Strengthening functional integrated settlements: Human settlements and surrounding rural areas functioning as interconnected systems.
- Promoting and supporting a mixed range and scale of human settlements: Rural development reinforcing a logical network of human settlements of varying sizes and functions.
- Celebrating rural landscape cultural, religious and heritage diversity: Maintaining the authenticity of the unique rural areas, which involves:
 - o preserving the dominance of working agricultural landscapes,
 - o ensuring that new development in the rural landscape is as unobtrusive as possible and responds to the 'sense of place',
 - o securing and consolidating the conservation estate, and integrating rural development with existing regional and sub-regional movement routes.
- Optimising historical investment in rural infrastructure and adopting sustainable technologies in new investments.

Source: Draft Rural LUM & Regulatory Guidelines 2017: DRDLR

The Land Reform and Settlement Plan(2000) identified 2 types of Settlement Models that are appropriate in rural areas: Model 2 and Model 3 Settlements.

It is understood that urban settlements are the future centres of economic activity and will likely increase in importance in this aspect, an appropriate focus on both socio-economic and transformative spatial development and land use management is crucial in rural areas. This is so for a few reasons. Firstly, rural areas largely remain the terrain where key ecosystem services (water, carbon capturing vegetation, fertile soils etc.) originate and need to be conserved and managed appropriately. Secondly, rural areas fulfil important roles for the citizens of the area in respect of food production and livelihoods as well as being places of residence and important socio-cultural heritage.

The revitalisation of Rural Economies is always high on the National Agenda. However, at a district and local level, rural economies appear to struggle. Larger scale job creation through agricultural enterprises is required. It is advised

that the Key Agricultural Enterprises be identified and implemented to assist rural communities and households. Food security is a growing concern and rural areas could offer a solution through the sustaining agricultural enterprises.

Other sectors that can influence the economy in rural areas is in Tourism and Conservation. These sectors have never been sufficiently exploited and mainly due to the fact that the Return on Investment is lower than other sectors and the capital investment is relatively high.

Household Food Security:

One of the environmentally sustainable options for ensuring household food security is adopting the Permaculture concept.

Permaculture is a system of agricultural and social design principles centred on simulating or directly utilizing the patterns and features observed in natural ecosystems. The term permaculture (as a systematic method) was first coined by Australians Bill Mollison and David Holmgren in 1978. The word permaculture originally referred to "permanent agriculture" but was expanded to stand also for "permanent culture," as it was seen that social aspects were integral to a truly sustainable system as inspired by Masanobu Fukuoka's natural farming philosophy.

It has many branches that include but are not limited to ecological design, ecological engineering, environmental design, construction and integrated water resources management that develops sustainable architecture, regenerative and self-maintained habitat and agricultural systems modelled from natural ecosystems.

Permaculture is a philosophy of working with nature, rather than against nature; of protracted and thoughtful observation rather than protracted and thoughtless labour; and of looking at plants and animals in all their functions, rather than treating any area as a single product system.

Small Town Revitalisation

The small-town regeneration approach is one which focuses on a town's unique traits and the key sectors which can be capitalised on in order to build a strong local economic and spatial base. The Spatial Development Framework aims to offer strategic guidelines on the prioritisation of infrastructure in Small Towns.

The revitalisation programmes aim to promote, encourage and support the economy in and around small towns. Economically vibrant small towns play an important role in economic development, as they provide employment and commercial opportunities for people residing in such towns, as well as in the surrounding rural areas. Many small

towns, where communities can fast become economically active and that are situated along the identified transport corridors, have been earmarked for revitalization programmes.

A concept which has been introduced to the study is that of "livelihoods planning". This aims to ensure that planning is centered around people and people are centered around planning. Such an approach is also focused on developing land use systems so that it fulfills a relevant purpose particularly in our poorer regions of both urban and rural space. Employing such an approach is intended to ensure that cultural and communal zones form an integral component of a land use scheme.

The aim of the Small Town Regeneration Strategy is as follows;

- To address poverty in small towns
- To address economic marginalization
- To address imbalances caused by spatial deficiencies
- To build a more inclusive society and economy
- To increase the number of people who are in sustainable economic activity
- To develop infrastructure
- To reduce unemployment through local economic development initiatives

The Northern Cape Provincial Spatial Development Framework and the Frances Baard District Spatial Development Framework identifies Small Town Regeneration as a major tool for development and renewal of certain areas within the Province. Therefore, the areas of Warrenton, Jan Kempdorp, Hartswater, Windsorton, Ritchie, Barkley West and Delportshoop have been identified as areas for proposed Small Town Revitalisation Strategies to be developed.

The Integrated Small Town Revitalisation Strategy also stipulates the current challenges facing the initiatives which make mention of;

- Limited funding or budget
- Individual isolation uncoordinated Projects
- No clearly defined and articulated programme of action
- Duplication of Government effort
- Staffing constraints
- Limited Community

The Sol Plaatje SDF has identified the inner city of Kimberly as a revitalisation area. It is expected that the Sol Plaatje University will stimulate regeneration in the avenues of residential and commercial developments. These

developments will occur as a result of support structures that will be needed by the University. The public space is likely to have a strong impact on regenerating the CBD in the retail and services sectors.

The towns identified for STR is as follows;

- Ritchie
- Barkley West
- Delporthoop
- Jan Kemp Dorp
- Hartswater

Public Private Partnerships

World trends indicate that a developed private sector, linked to a robust public-private partnership, and an achievement based and inclusive public-private sector dialogue, encourage better orientation of the economy in meeting human needs. The Private Sector is a strategic vehicle through which the Frances Baard District Municipality will achieve its objectives including deeper integration and poverty alleviation. The business environment of the district will be determined by agreed policies for private sector development and the willingness of the District Municipality to address existing and potential impediments which hamper development of business.

Institutionalise Public-Private sector dialogue through the development of a District Municipality Policy. The Private Sector will be adequately represented at all decision-making levels of the FBDM structures where Private Sector related issues are being discussed, and National Private Sector Institutions will be incorporated into the residents of FBDM.

Mining Activity

The location of mining activities in the Frances Baard Area is also dictated by the position thereof in the natural environment. Therefore mining is exploited in the following manners.

- Alluvial diamond exploration is taking place alongside and in close proximity to the Vaal- and Modder River beds.
- Diamond digging is also taking place in Kimberlite pipes spread in the central and eastern section of the service area.

- Lime is produced on a commercial scale at Ulco situated in the Ghaap Plateau.

The mining industry contributes to the economic base of the Frances Baard Area but it should also be noted that:

- This activity should be professionally managed because it comes into conflict with tourism and agricultural activities and causes environmental decay;
- Applications for exploration permits and the rehabilitation of diamond digging activity should be better controlled.

Mining Spatial Challenges

The following has been identified as Mining Spatial Challenges:

- Difficulty is faced with sustaining mining towns or settlements, after mineral deposits are depleted, or become financially unviable.
- Financial cost of expanding basic infrastructure to areas in close proximity to mining activities.
- High level of water use and environmental degradation is associated with mining or extractive industries.
- As the main headquarters of mining houses are situated within the Gauteng Province, the income and profit are registered and allocated to the Gauteng Province.
- Continuous conflict between mining and agricultural land uses

Mining Opportunities

The following has been identified as Opportunities relating to the Mining Sector:

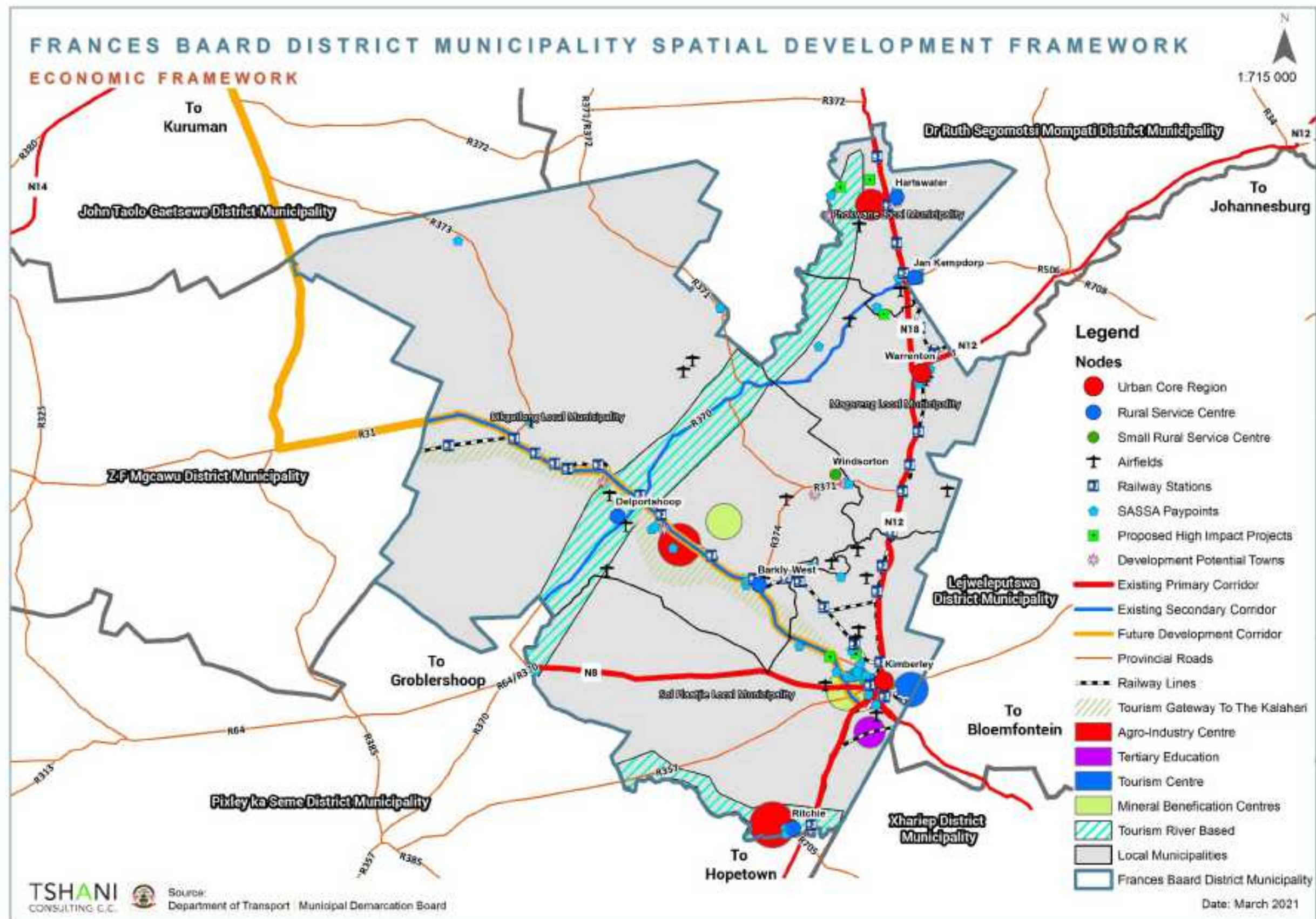
- Mining is a major economic driver, providing numerous job opportunities and economic development.
- Promotion of manufacturing activities that support the mining industry.
- Development of a strategy to address the establishment and inevitable decline of mining towns (no mine towns to be established or extended) and guidelines for the provision of mining housing.
- Development of clear regulations for extractive industries located in high potential agricultural land, and in close proximity to crucial water resources.

Rehabilitation of Mine Dumps

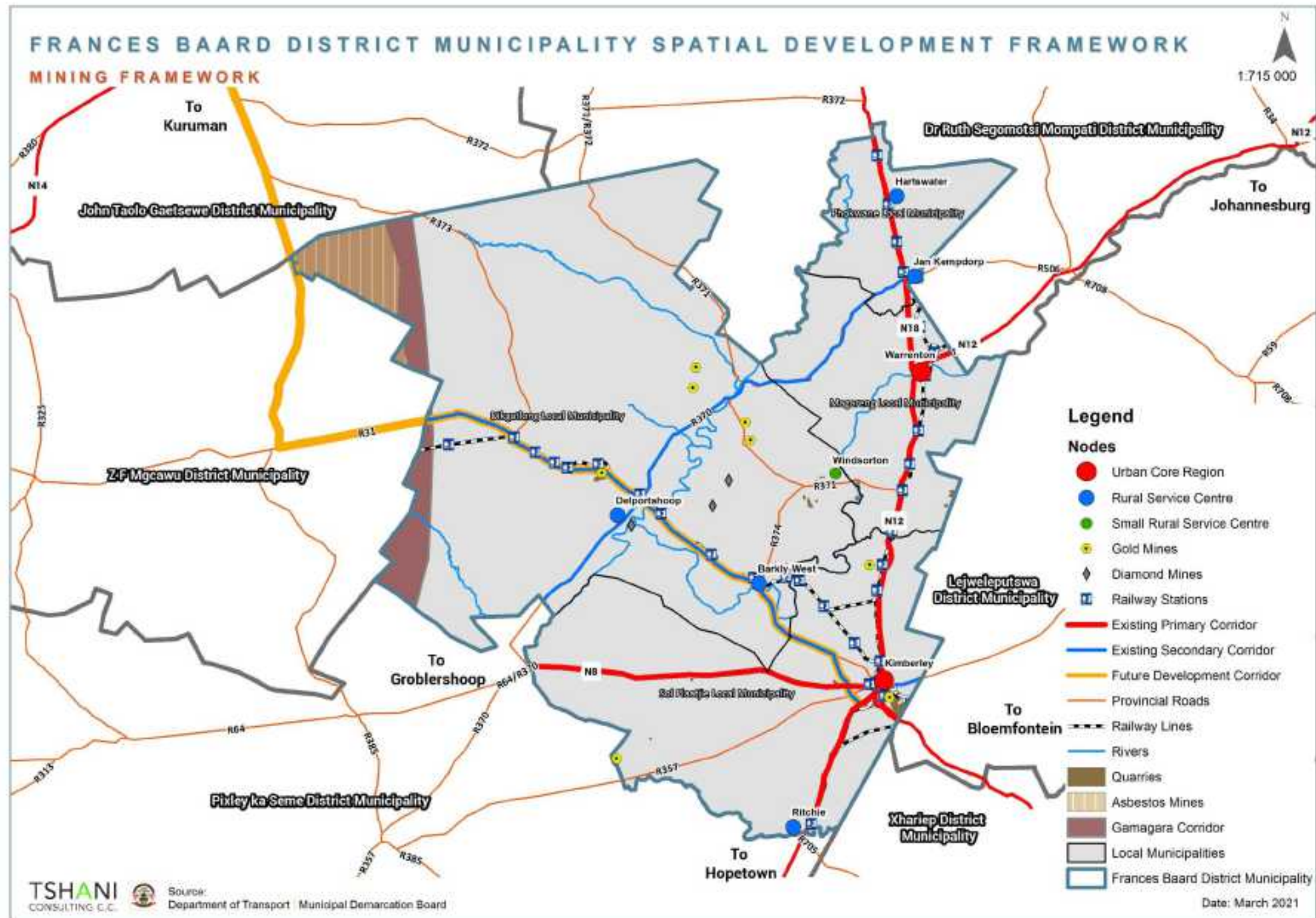
Large parcels of land are occupied by mining activities within the FBDM, mainly in the eastern areas of Kimberley. Noting that the mining sector is on the decline, the rehabilitation plans of mines are an important factor as this would unlock the value of land. Old mining sites should effectively be reconditioned and rehabilitated for use later post the lifespan of mining. A special programme to clear mine dumps and unlock the value of land would stimulate the economy. Non-compliance in terms of the rehabilitation process must be taken up through intergovernmental relations. In terms of the environment, the Vaal River has been abused to a greater extent during the mining of alluvial diamonds, which further exacerbates the water supply issue in the municipality.

The presence of the Big Hole, which is the largest open mine in the world, shows that there has been a significant amount of space taken up by past mining, while it has been developed to be tourist attraction, more needs to be done to generate the multiplier effect in the economy.

There is a world-wide phenomenon in which informal settlements emerge close to perceived and/or factual areas of socio-economic opportunities. This is largely a result of rural-urban migration wherein the poor migrate from rural areas to urban areas in search of better prospects. They usually arrive in the city without any prior arrangements for accommodation. As a result, they resort to settling informally and in backyard shacks. In most instances informal settlements are vulnerable to floods and fires, exacerbated by their location in flood or ponding-prone areas and on sand dunes; inferior building materials; and inadequate road access for emergency vehicles.



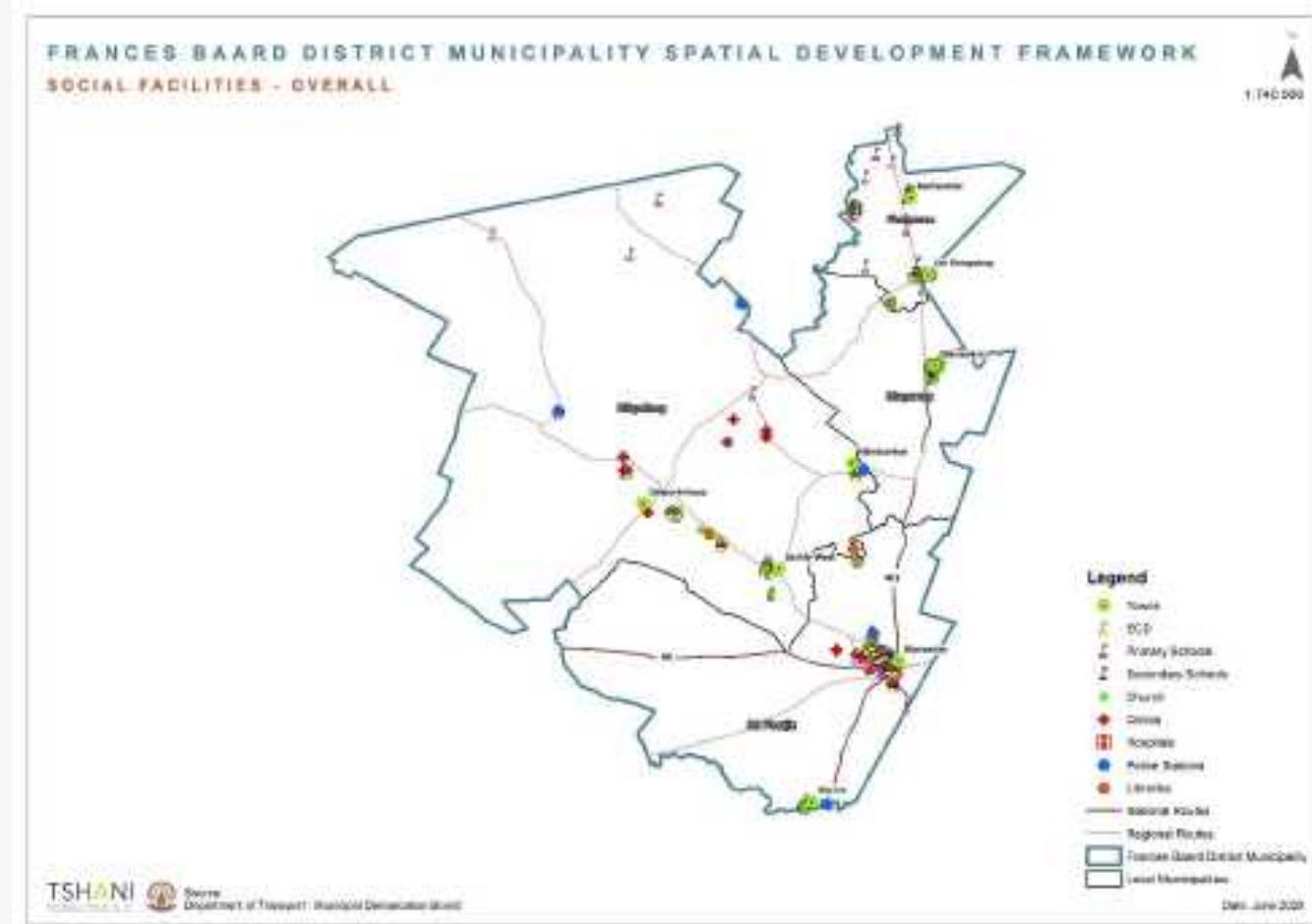
Plan 34: Economic Framework Plan



Plan 35: Mining Framework Plan

5.Y. Social Amenities

The plan below identifies the current dispersion of social amenities within the district.



Plan 36: Social Facilities - Overall

5.Z. Governance Framework

National, regional, and local governance rely on values and principles that are held by the public. Governance relies heavily upon the political relations between the state, civil society, and the private sector, even though the purposes of these sectors vary depending on the priorities and principles of a set social system. Governance is found within the political, economic, and administrative sectors, and it can affect expansion, which includes the potential for sustainable environmental management, market efficiency, and the understanding of basic rights. First-rate governance is able to realise economic development and the potential to produce fresh opportunities for improving human well-being, as well as general development.

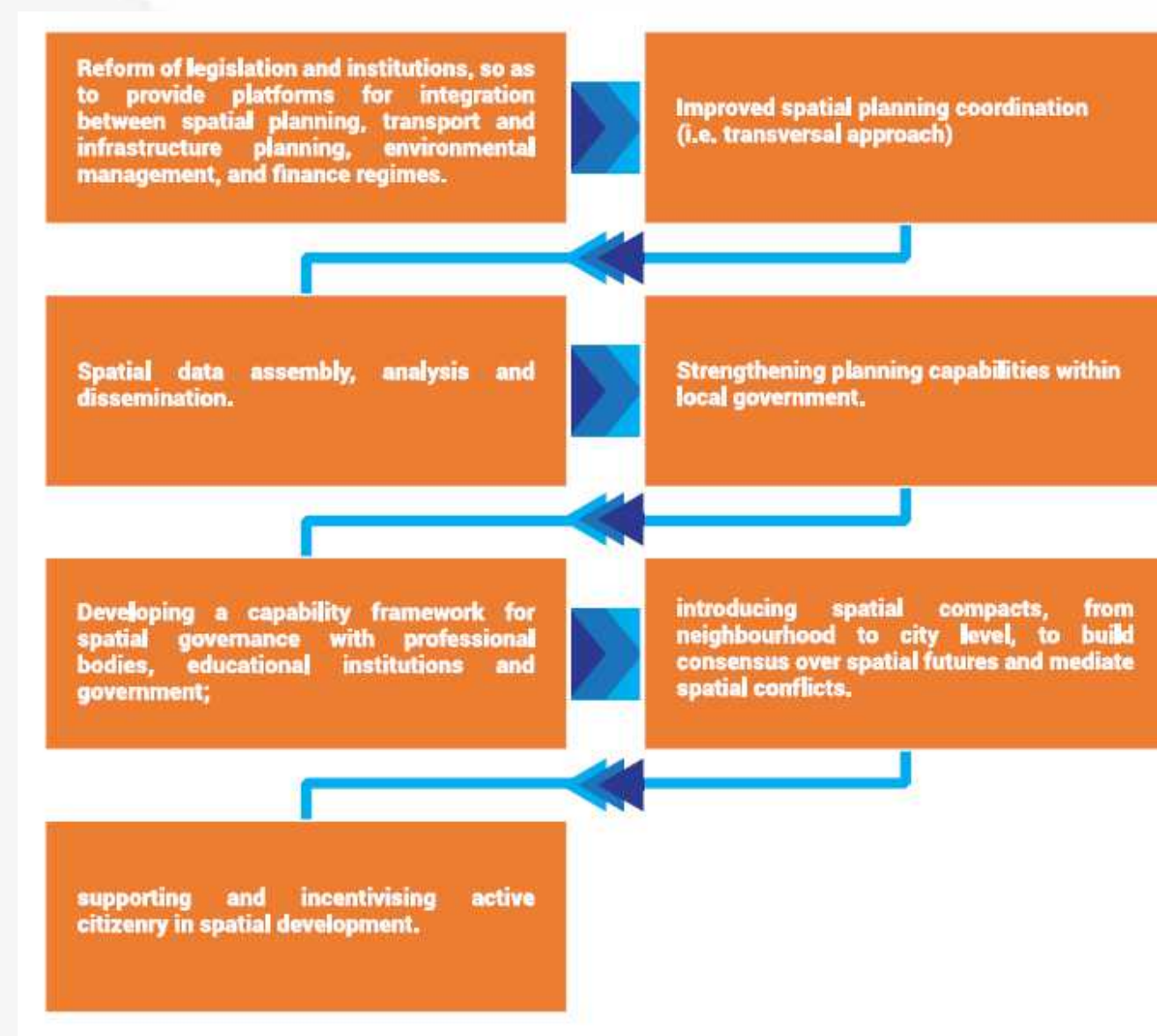
Good governance involves government agencies applying original policies and programmes to boost the quality of public service with the eventual aim of increasing economic growth. Ground-breaking programmes and policies tackle facets of governance such as transparency, participation, accountability, and professionalism. Standard criteria for corporate governance include attentiveness to the analysis of good governance, the level of understanding and implementation at local government level, and the degree of alignment with international standards.

However, the number of existing political risk factors is large, ranging from expropriation laws, acts of terror, or the announcement of war, to unexpected changes in tax regulations and sanctions arising from trade regulations. Political risk can be defined as the probability that business will either earn less money, or suffer losses in profit, as a result of the actions and reactions of stakeholders in relation to events, decisions, and policies within a political system.

Where the public service is too insulated from political pressures, this leads to concerns that it is failing to serve the interests of the local government and is therefore not fulfilling its democratic mandate. However, where the public service is insufficiently insulated, standards can be undermined as public servants are recruited on the basis of political connections rather than skills and expertise, or access to state resources and services is defined by political affiliation rather than citizenship.

The NDP emphasises the importance of effective spatial governance, and acknowledges the country's weak capabilities in this regard. It ascribes these weaknesses to: Constitutional ambiguities in spatial planning responsibilities; parallel, outdated and sometimes conflicting legislation; and capacity constraints in all three spheres of government. A consequence of weak governance is that the private sector often determines spatial growth patterns, whereas this is government's responsibility.

The NDP prioritises building capabilities for effective spatial decision-making and implementation, and acknowledges that this will take time. To develop the necessary capabilities, the National Planning Commission recommends:



FBDM IDP

The FBDM IDP outlines Good Governance as a Key Performance Area.

There are various aims of this KPA. The first as outlined in the IDP is to **“Create, Strengthen and maintain a positive opinion of the district through effective channels of communication”** with regards to communication and media.

The objective of this goal is to provide information to improve public understanding and facilitate collaboration of government activities.

With regards to Municipal Internal Audit, the districts aim is to **“Facilitate the Provision of internal audit services in the district”**. By this, the district aims to assess matters relating to compliance with legislation in contributing to the sustainable management of the financial affairs of FBDM and to assess matters relating to compliance with legislation in contributing to the reliability and integrity of financial and non-financial information in FBDM.

The district also aims to support the local municipalities in terms of legal compliance services. This is in terms of assistance with vetting and drafting of contracts.

The district further aims to identify, assess, document, report and prioritise potential risk events within the district by implementing policies, procedures, strategies and implementation plans necessary to minimise identified risks. In line with this, the district aims to establish an anti-fraud culture underpinned by high levels of awareness, integrity, impartiality and transparency within the district through implantation of fraud prevention policy, strategy and implementation plan.

Municipal Planning Tribunals

SPLUMA, 2013 outlines the need for and the required composition of Municipal Planning Tribunals (MPT). The Act mentions that the MPT should consist of:

- Officials should be in the full-time service of the municipality
- Persons appointed by the Municipal Council who are not municipal officials and who have knowledge and experience of spatial planning, land use management and land development or the law thereto
- It must consist of at least 5 members or more;
- A chairperson and deputy chairperson must be elected

SPLUMA further states that Municipal Councillors may not be appointed as members of the Municipal Planning Tribunal.

The need for the MPT is to have a tribunal in order to determine land use and development applications within a municipal area.

5.AA. Financial Profile

The financial profile aims to outline the critical financial information and findings within the district and its municipalities. Some of the key areas that form part of this section; audit findings, cash balance, capital and operational budget spending and the general financial sustainability and revenue source. This section of specifically relates to the following driver as set out in the PGDP: **Driver 4: Accountable & Effective Governance**

Local government audit outcomes are detailed below and are indicated by the following:

Unqualified with no findings – The municipality was able to produce financial statements free of material misstatements (material misstatements mean errors or omissions that are so significant that they affect the credibility and reliability of the financial statements); measure and report on their performance in accordance with the predetermined objectives in their IDPs and/or SDBIPs in a manner that is useful and reliable; and comply with key legislation (Score 5 in analysis below).

- Unqualified with findings – The municipality has been able to produce financial statements without material misstatements, but has struggled to align their performance reports to the predetermined objectives to which they had committed in their IDPs and/or SDBIPs; set clear performance indicators and targets to measure their performance against their predetermined objectives; report reliably on whether they had achieved their performance targets; and determine which legislation they should comply with, and implement the required policies, procedures and controls to ensure that they comply (Score 4 in analysis below).
- Qualified with findings – These municipalities face the same challenges as those that were financially unqualified with findings in the areas of reporting on performance and compliance with key legislation. In addition, they were unable to produce credible and reliable financial statements. Their financial statements contain misstatements which they could not correct before the financial statements were published (Score 3 in analysis below).
- Adverse with findings – The financial statements of these municipalities have so many material misstatements that the Auditor-General (AG) disagrees with virtually all the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements (Score 1 in analysis below).

- Disclaimed with findings – Those municipalities could not provide evidence for most of the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The AG was unable to conclude or express an opinion on the credibility of their financial statements (Score 1 in analysis below).
- Audit not finalised at legislated date (Not considered in averages).
- New auditee (Not considered in averages).

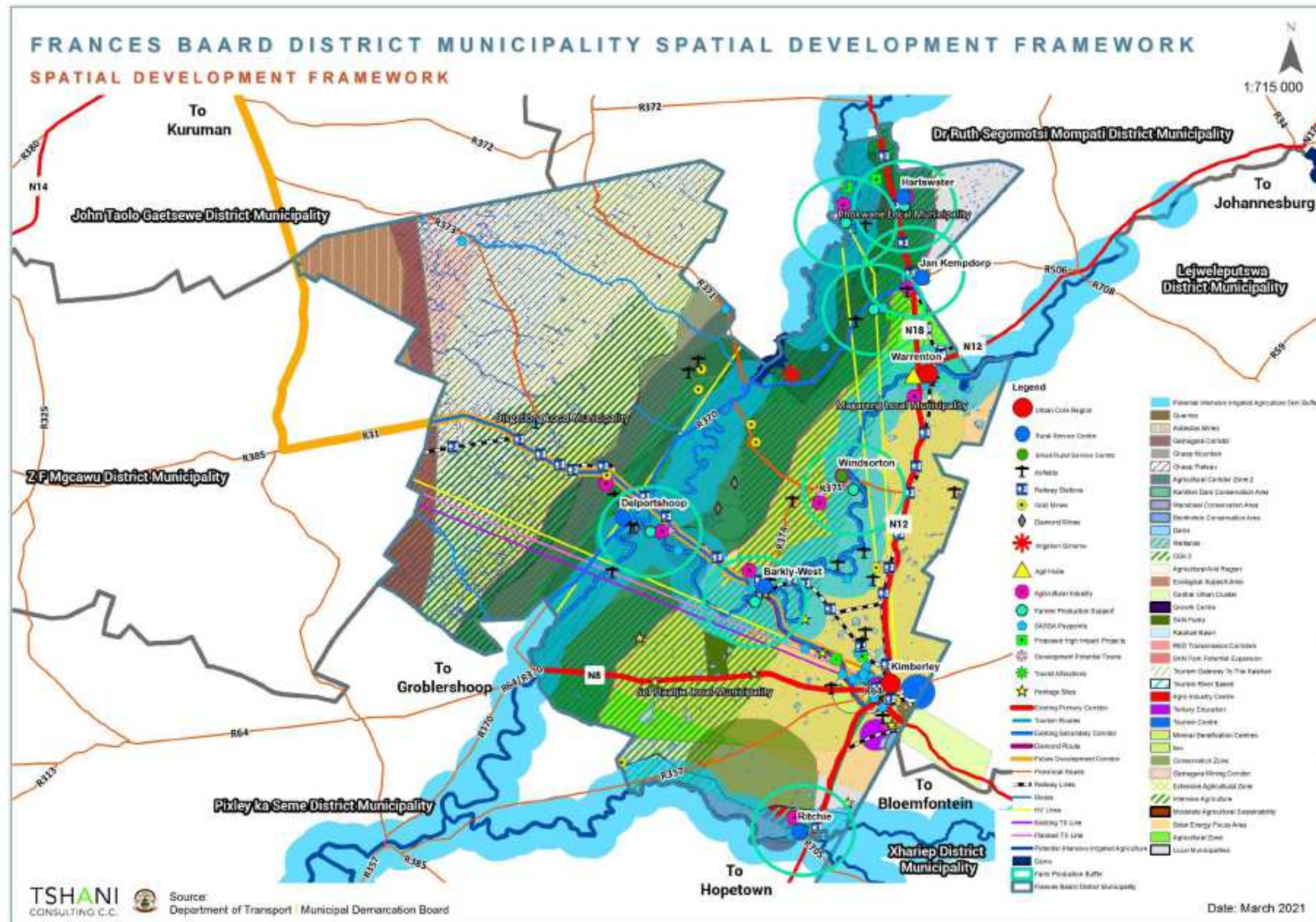
Measures of municipal finances look at financial distress information from National Treasury, covering eight specific areas from the MFMA, with scores attributed to the following eight variables:

- Cash Coverage: this measures the amount of cash on hand a municipality has to meet its monthly payments as and when they fall due. National Treasury suggest that municipalities should have three months of average operational expenditure available at any time.
- Cash Balance: Identifies whether cash shortages / bank overdrafts pose a 'chronic' problem for the municipality.
- Reliance on capital transfers: This determines the levels at which municipalities are able to generate own funds to finance revenue generating assets to enhance and sustain revenue generating streams
- Overspending: This measures the overspending of operational budgets and tests the effectiveness of municipal spending in accordance with resources available to them, what is the credibility of the budget and are municipalities able to adjust expenditure should planned revenue not materialise.
- Underspending of capital budgets: This shows the effectiveness of municipal spending – but also provides an indication of whether municipalities are compromising on capital programmes to resolve cash flow challenges, or whether there are planning deficiencies which are impacting on service delivery.
- Debtors growth – this shows the year on year growth in debtors and provides information on whether the municipality is exercising fiscal effort in collecting outstanding debt. It demonstrates the extent to which financial distress is the result of poor debtor management.
- Debtors as a percentage of own revenue: this shows the revenue management capabilities of municipalities.
- Creditors as a percentage of cash: whether the municipality is able to meet its monthly commitments.

OVERALL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

The overall Municipal Spatial Development Framework is an accumulation of all the identified frameworks; built environmental, socio-economic and biophysical frameworks. These frameworks thus serve as basis for the future development trajectory of the municipality.

The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA), 16 of 2013 is the primary legislature that guides spatial planning and land use management in the country. The principles presented in this legislation of also been identified as key pillars towards the development of the three identified frameworks that lead to the overall SDF.



Plan 37: Spatial Development Framework



CHAPTER 06

Land Use
Management
Framework

LAND USE MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

"To implement a [Spatial Development Framework] it is clearly necessary... to have mechanisms in place to encourage the desired types of land development. This makes the Municipal Systems Act terminology, land use management, that much more appropriate, as it suggests a function that is broader than merely controlling development" - White Paper on Spatial Planning and Land Use Management (Dept Land Affairs, 2001)

The term land use management includes the following activities:

- The regulation of land-use changes such as, for example, the rezoning of a property from residential to commercial use;
- The regulation of 'green fields' land development, i.e. the development of previously undeveloped land;
- The regulation of the subdivision and consolidation of land parcels;
- The regulation of the regularization and upgrading process of informal settlements, neglected city centres and other areas requiring such processes; and
- The facilitation of land development through the more active participation of the municipality in the land development process, especially through public-private partnerships.

Land-use management has two main underlying rationales. The first is the widely felt resistance to the idea of uncontrolled land development and the second is the commonly expressed wish by particular sectors in society to promote various types of desirable land development.

The resistance to uncontrolled development is motivated by a number of concerns, the precise mix of which is determined by the particular social, economic and political contexts of different times and places.

Essentially however these concerns include the following:

- Environmental concerns: uncontrolled development of land can have adverse effects on natural habitats, cultural landscapes and air and water quality.
- Health and safety concerns: uncontrolled development can lead to overcrowding and unsafe building construction. Certain land uses can also be detrimental to the health and safety of neighbours.

- Social control: the control of land uses and building types has long been a means of exerting social control, particularly through the exclusion of certain types of person, household or economic activity from certain areas through the application of particular development controls limiting, for instance, plot sizes, plot coverage and home industries.
- Efficiency of infrastructure provision and traffic management: increasingly it has become clear that the where the granting of development permissions is not coupled with the provision of adequate infrastructure and traffic management the consequences can be severe. Similarly, where infrastructure is provided, generally at high financial cost, without taking into account likely and relevant land-use and settlement patterns the opportunity costs to society are very high.
- Determination of property values for purposes of rating: the market value of land is the basis on which property valuation is determined and the extent and nature of the development permitted on the land is a key factor in that determination.
- Aesthetic concerns: the control of land development enables government to prescribe certain design parameters for buildings.

The wish to promote desirable development is also driven by a number of different concerns:

- The land development needs of the market seldom match precisely the social and political needs of government: government may well want to promote a type of land development in an area that the market neglects. It then has to take certain steps to facilitate that development or provide incentives. The history of land ownership in South Africa also inevitably skews the land market in favour of white people, thus creating a situation where the needs of the market reflect only those of an already privileged minority.
- Investment promotion: changing the applicable land-use management instruments is often seen as a prerequisite for attracting certain types of investment to certain areas. This can take the form of both relaxing

controls in those areas and increasing controls in other areas which might be more favoured by the market. These strategies are likely to be linked to local economic development initiatives".

Land Use Management & the District Municipality

With due regard to the above, the setting of Land Use Management Guidelines in a District Spatial Development Framework poses some complex challenges, given the fact that the District Municipality is not, in the first instance, the primary Land Use Regulator charged with reviewing land development applications.

Rather, it is understood that the function of Land Use Regulator falls within the broadly applicable term "Municipal Planning" and is the responsibility of a designated Land Use Regulator at the local level, that is the relevant Local Municipality (unless this function has expressly been assigned to the District Municipality). It is further understood that all of the Local Municipalities in the Chris Hani District have been assigned the Municipal Planning function and perform this themselves (or, in certain instances, are assisted by external agencies or make use of service providers).

Therefore, and in line with its mandate, it is accepted that the Chris Hani District Municipality ultimately seeks to support and facilitate activities that would assist the Local Municipalities in the district to formulate appropriate Land Use Management Systems when enabling legislation such as the Spatial Planning & Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013 is implemented.

In the interim, for the purposes of this SDF Review, the approach adopted is that the Land Use Management Guidelines from the District Municipality's side are intended to assist, guide and direct the activities of Local Municipalities in day to day consideration of their land use management function as well as serve as a platform for the formulation of a LUMS System in future.

Whilst, in terms of the timelines applicable to the implementation of SPLUMA, every LM will have 5 years from the date of implementation of the Act to develop a single, integrated Land Use Scheme and associated regulations (an integrated Land Use Management system), it is proposed that it is possible to set in place procedures and protocols based on adopted principles relating to best practice. This is the ultimate objective of these guidelines.

Accordingly, this section sets out some key elements to a more holistic approach to land use management. These are noted as follows: -

- Firstly, in reflecting on the current land use management system(s) in place, a brief overview of the currently applicable legislation and relevant spatial planning and land use management tools is provided;
- Secondly, in considering the character of the settlement pattern and typical forms of land use arrangements found in the Frances Baard District, the importance of Land Use Management as an activity that underpins the sound use of resources and contributes directly to economic and environmental sustainability is affirmed;
- Thirdly, broad input is given on the need to manage relationships and formulate binding agreements and protocols on how to deal with land use management issues in the district

SPLUMA Impact

As noted above, SPLUMA is a national "framework" law set in place to guide and direct the activities of National, Provincial and Local government agencies that engage in spatial planning and land use management.

The complexity of providing for the implementation of SPLUMA is making itself felt but the implementing department, the national Department of Rural Development & Land Reform (DRDLR), has indicated that the Act will be brought into implementation during the course of 2015.

It should be noted, however, that as SPLUMA is a national Act and does not provide for the repeal of Provincial-based laws relating to spatial planning and land use management, it may well be the case that the initial effect of SPLUMA will be focused on the transformation and re-configuration of institutional arrangements for the management of land use. Thus, the fact that a complex pattern of fragmented legislation applies across the Frances Baard district may not, in effect, be simply dealt with unless and until the Northern Cape Provincial government enacts Provincial legislation. In this regard, then, it should be noted that the Province is presently engaged in such a law-making process.

Therefore, in the interim, it is suggested that the specific role that Chris Hani DM may be called up on to play in the implementation of SPLUMA will be focused on the following activities: -

- Supporting Local Municipalities to respond to the requirements placed upon them by SPLUMA, most likely in the first instance in taking required decisions regarding the establishment of decision-making bodies (Municipal Tribunals) to consider land use management applications;

- Where it appears that Local Municipalities wish to participate in shared institutions (Tribunals) the DM may be called upon to facilitate this or even to assist in the establishment of a District-level Tribunal and associated logistical support.

Spatial Planning Categories

SPCs are generally consistent with UNESCO's MAB Programme and include all land zonings that are provided for under the existing Zoning Scheme Regulations. The designation of SPCs does not change existing zoning or land-use regulations or legislation. SPCs merely help to clarify and facilitate coherent decision-making that can lead to better zoning, laws and regulations. The SPCs, furthermore, provide a framework in terms of which land-use decisions can be standardised throughout the province. It is advisable that all zoning scheme regulations be aligned with the SPCs. The SPCs are to be applied in land-use classification at all levels of planning in the Northern Cape (refer specifically to the preparation of IDPs and SDFs).

A comprehensive set of SPCs and Sub-Categories have been created to serve as a guide for more detailed land-use planning at the district and local municipal sphere. The sub-categories may be refined as required to address site-specific needs at the district and local municipal sphere.

Some of the key applications of SPCs in decision-making and planning include the following:

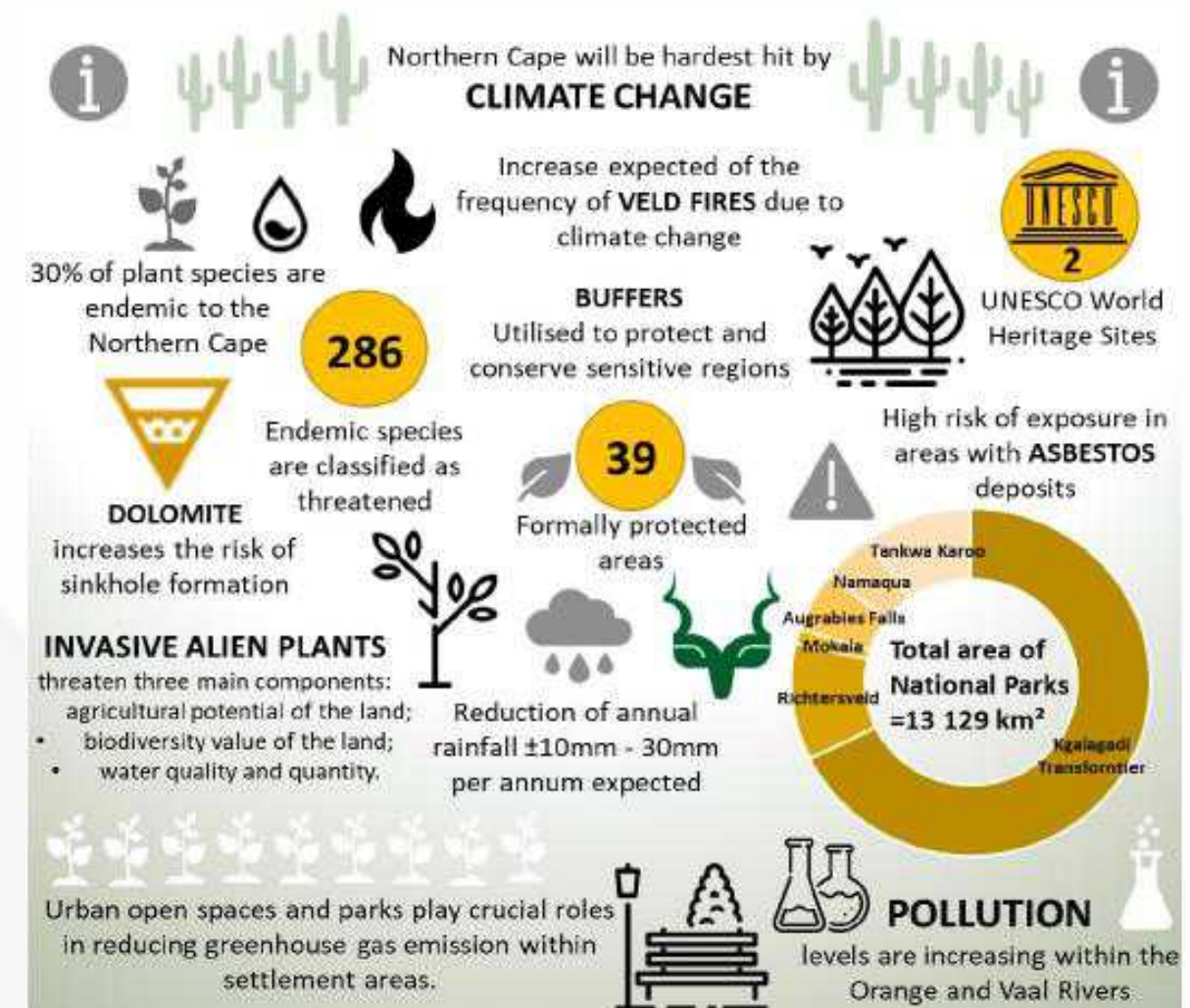
- The SPCs provide a system in terms of which all land units or entities within the district will eventually be recorded in the Spatial Planning Information system (SPISys), facilitating effective administration of land-use issues.
- The SPCs can be used to indicate both the status quo of official land-use and the desired land-use of all land within a planning area. In addition, they identify specific types of landuses that are not included in the existing Zoning Scheme Regulations, providing for a nonstatutory and more detailed land-use classification.
- The SPCs indicate desired land usage which might in certain instances be aligned with the current zoning of properties and in other instances differ from that.
- Existing Zoning Scheme Regulations are to be amended/upgraded in order to include these new concepts. It is envisaged that the Provincial Model Scheme Regulations will contain certain new overlay zonings in this regard.

- The SPCs facilitate decision-making regarding applications for a change in land-use. In this regard, it is important to note that an SPC designation which differs from the current zoning, implies that any new development will be considered a diversion from the status quo, requiring that applications will have to be considered by the relevant authorities in accordance with specific guidelines.
- Application of SPCs in natural landscapes – SPC A and SPC B and, to an extent, SPC C areas primarily relate to the natural landscape, which contain the inhabited (human-made) landscape (SPC C.b, D, E, and F).

Spatial Planning Category A & B: Core and Buffer Areas

SPC A areas constitute sites of high conservation importance including terrestrial land, aquatic systems (rivers, wetlands and estuaries) and marine areas (beach or rocky headlands). Due to their highly irreplaceable status, such areas should be protected from change or restored to their former level of ecological functioning.

Below is an excerpt from the NC PSDF with relation to the Spatial Planning Categories



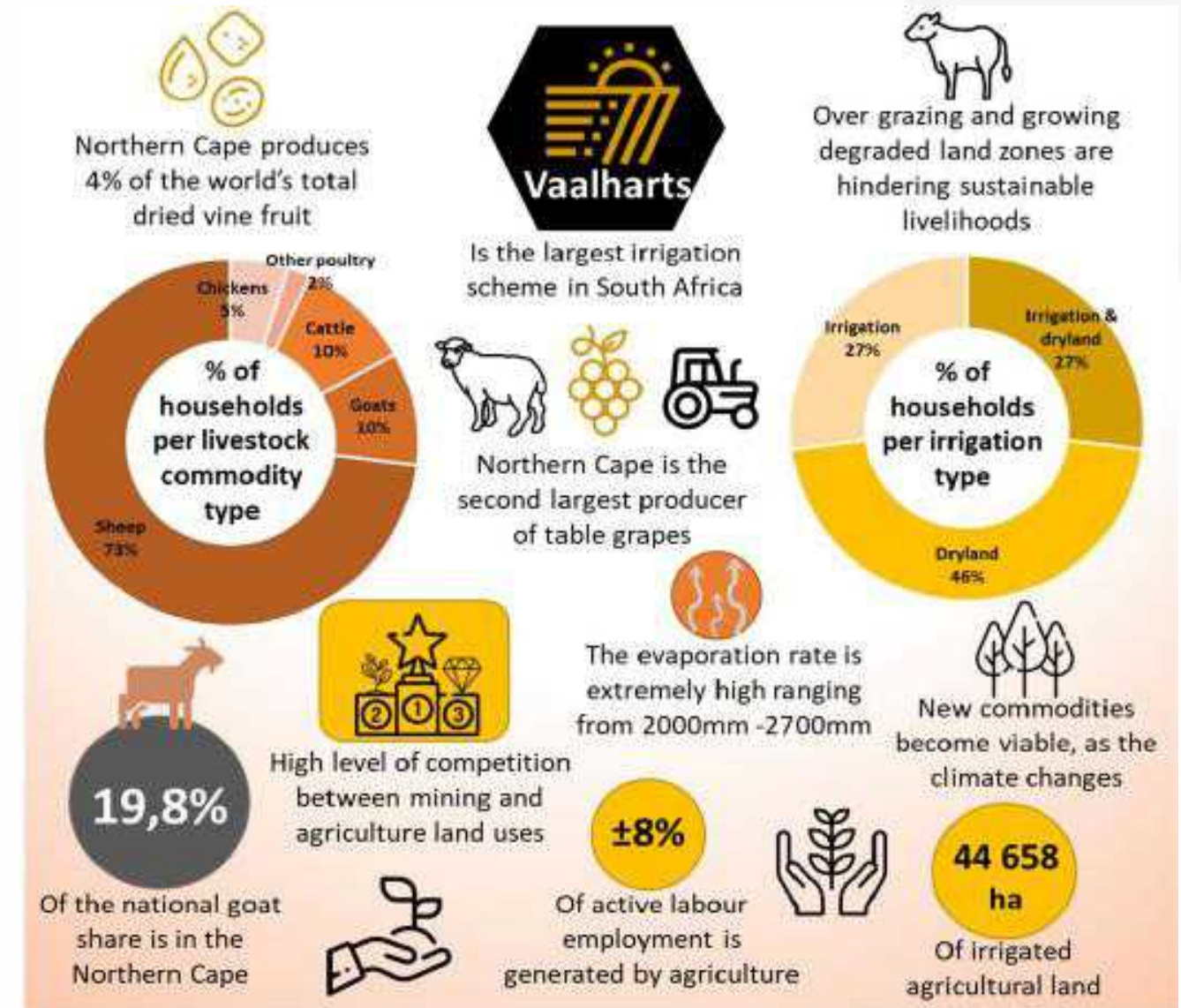
The Key Strategies and Interventions related to A & B is as follows:

- Implementation of the provincial and a local municipal air quality and waste management plan.
- Conserve existing ecological corridors and consolidate and rehabilitate any remnants of corridors that link coastal ecosystems with one another and with terrestrial ecosystems.
- Secure additional potential SPC A areas with the aid of institutions such as the WWF, IUCN, SKEP, SANParks Private Sector and GEF.
- Establish a system of protected areas incorporating the diverse coastal landscapes, ecosystems, habitats, communities, species, and culturally significant sites. The Special Management Area concept in combination with an efficient Stewardship agreement is to be implemented.

Spatial Planning Category C: Agriculture Areas

The protection and appropriate use of high potential agricultural land (in particular the areas along the Orange River, Vaal River and Harts River and those falling within the existing irrigation scheme areas) is of critical importance for sustainable economic growth and food security. High potential agricultural land in close proximity to settlements are often subjected to non-agricultural development pressure, while negative social impacts associated with such settlements often have a significant detrimental impact on the production potential of such land. It is therefore imperative that the highest priority be given to the protection of high potential agricultural land and that measures be instituted to create and maintain circumstances conducive to sustainable agriculture (PSDF, 2018)

Below is an excerpt from the NC PSDF with relation to the Spatial Planning Categories



The Key Strategies and Interventions related to C is as follows:

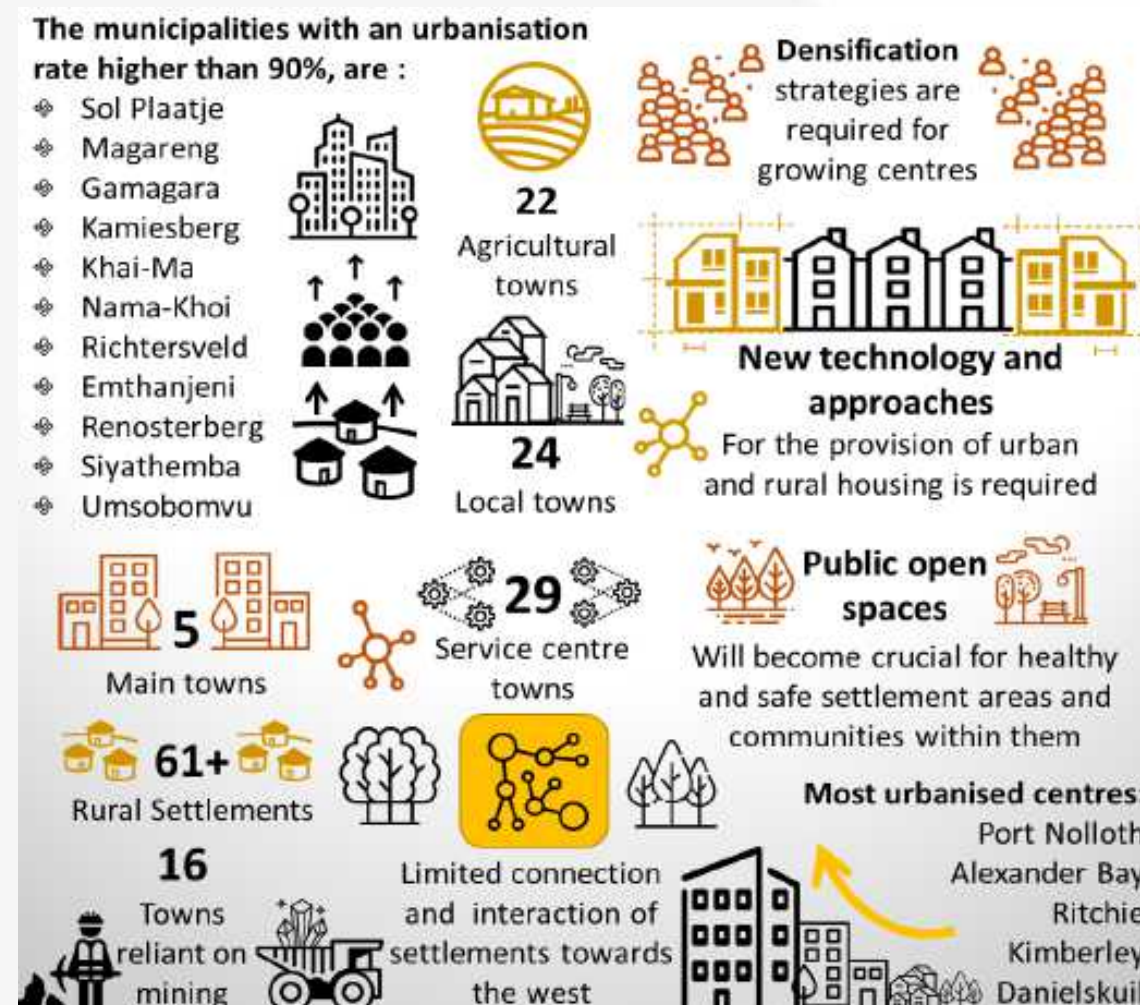
- Give effect to the ideals of the sustainable Development Goals (SDG 2 and 12) pertaining to the promotion of sustainable agriculture and rural development
- Development of an Agricultural Master Plan for the Province to identify and protect the most fertile land for cultivation and food security purpose.
- Consider the rezoning of low-potential agricultural land as a mechanism to promote sustainable economic development by unlocking the latent capital vested in non-agricultural uses through the Sustainable Development Initiative (SDI) approach.

- Encourage bona fide game farms to combine their landholdings to create extensive SPC B areas that would support biodiversity conservation in a meaningful manner. Such areas should be managed as Special Management Areas.
- Encourage local processing of farm products and the provision of local farm services to enhance the rural economy, increase the viability of agricultural production and reduce rural poverty.

Spatial Planning Category D: Urban and Rural Areas

The relationship between rural and urban areas is increasingly changing throughout the world. Rural and urban areas are no longer mutually exclusive. Farming areas and cities coexist along a continuum with multiple types of flows and interactions occurring between the two spaces. Typically, it is now widely recognised that there exist economic, social and environmental interdependences between urban and rural areas.

Below is an excerpt from the NC PSDF with relation to the Spatial Planning Categories



The Key Strategies and Interventions related to D is as follows:

- All spheres of government, especially municipalities, must provide quality spatial data and interpretation to land managers to assist decision-making and adaptive management, and make regional natural resource information and knowledge widely available or accessible (i.e. the SPISYS).
- Accelerate and streamline township establishment processes and procedures to ensure sustainable development.
- Prioritise government spending and private sector investment in urban and rural development in accordance with a settlement category determined by the socio-economic potential of towns and the needs of their inhabitants.
- Improve the quality of subsidised housing settlements through innovative urban planning and design and cross-subsidising.
- Ensure that development scale and design are determined by the carrying capacity of the environment.

Spatial Planning Category E: Industrial Areas

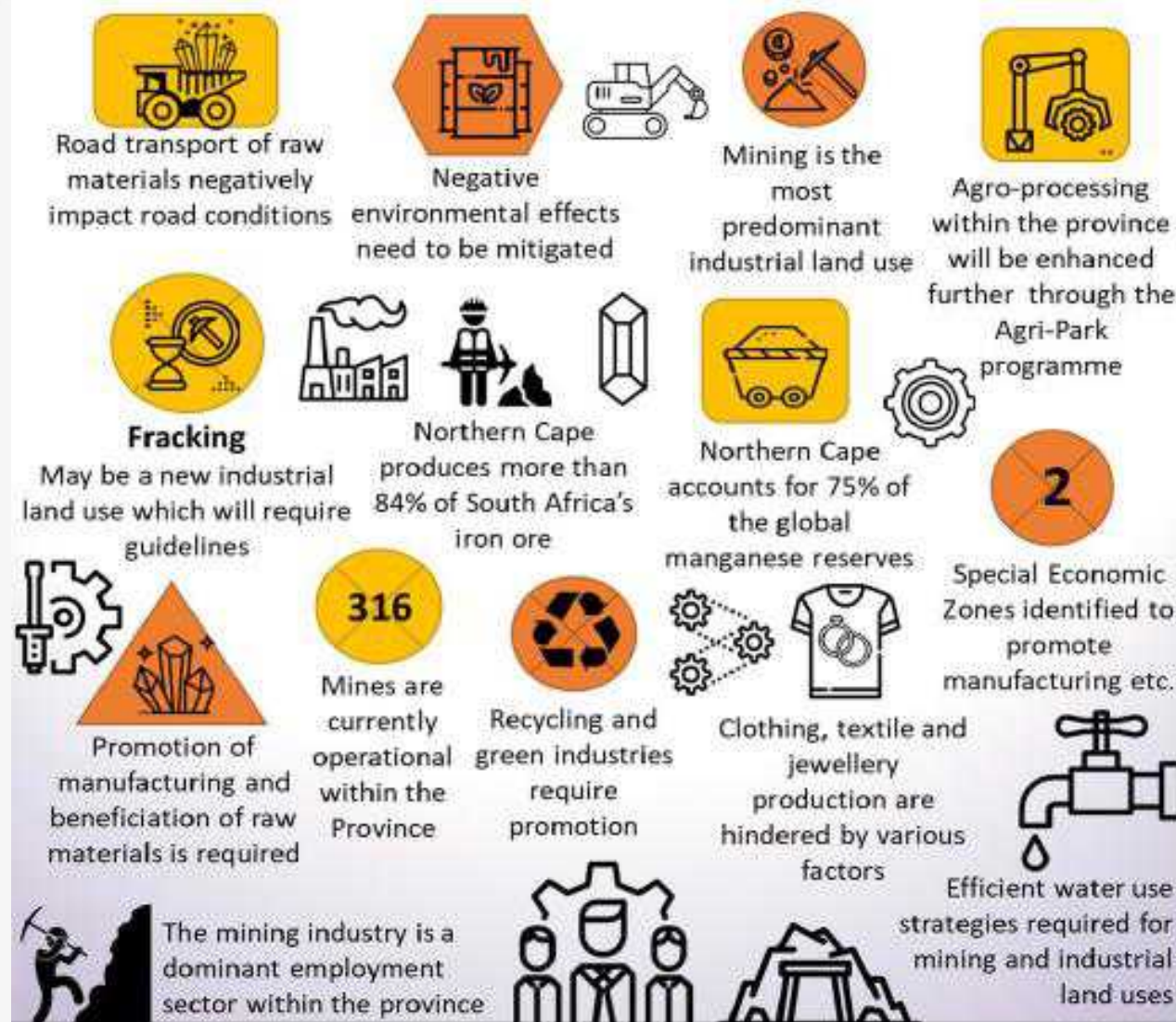
A key challenge is to broaden and unlock the opportunities presented by the availability of natural resources. Industrial activities, whether large- or small-scale, have the potential to stimulate economic diversification and development in the province.

While immediate industrial development opportunities related to mining in the Northern Cape and Frances Baard lie in brown-fields expansions and various types of downstream value-added activities (art, jewellery, souvenirs etc.) there are a number of other possibilities in side-stream and indirect activities. 'Side-stream' activities refer to the service network, vendors and key contracting firms directly affiliated with a particular mineral project's operations. Not only is this sector significant in terms of contributing to broadening the local and provincial employment base and enhancing the potential for further employment spin-offs, but it is of critical importance to the functioning of all departments within a particular mineral-based operation.

Spatial Planning Category F: Surface Infrastructure and Buildings

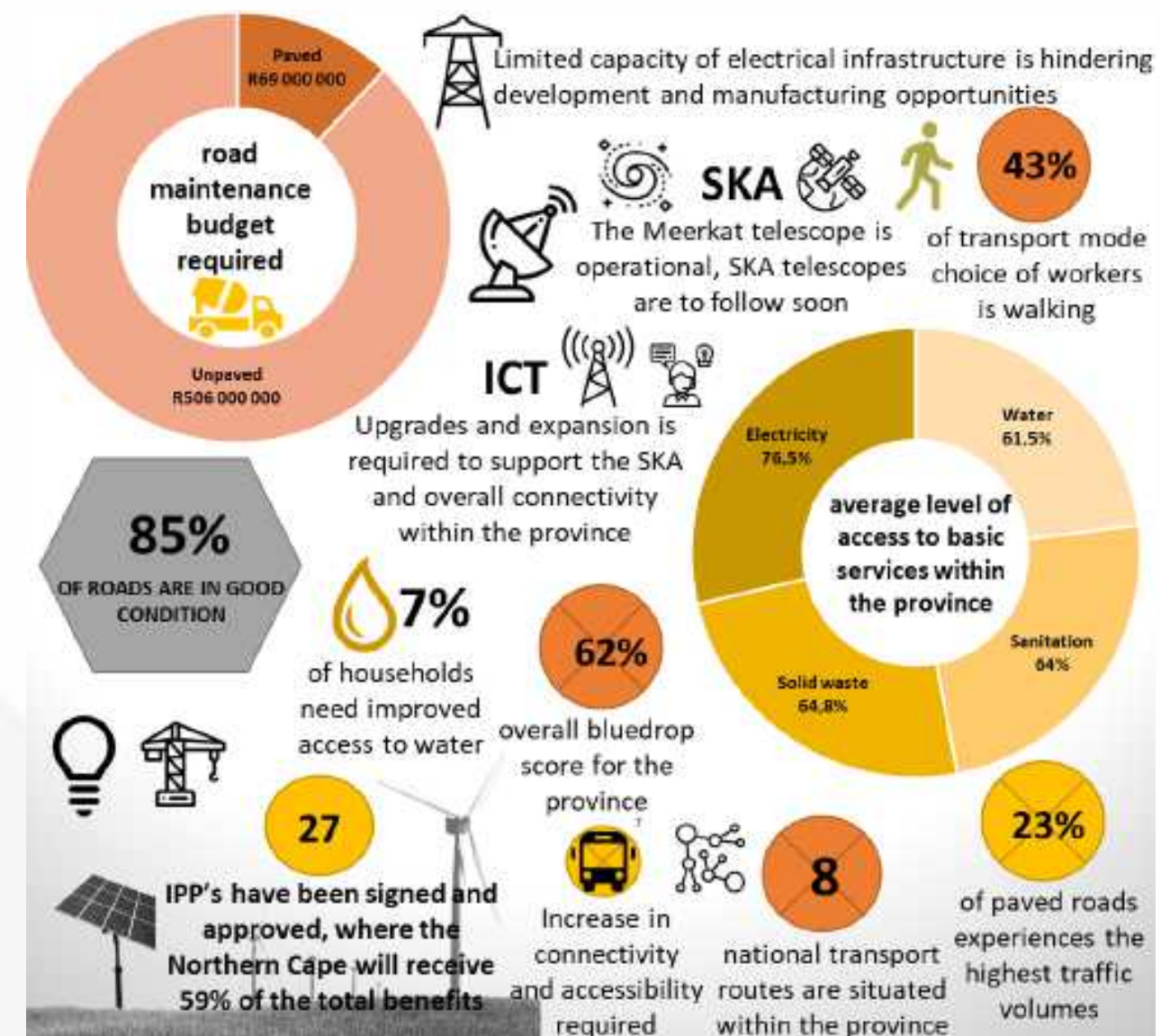
An effective, competitive and responsive infrastructure network is imperative for ongoing economic development of the province and the FBDM.

The FBDM's ability to convey goods effectively and efficiently is a key aspect to be addressed. The relevant sectoral departments therefore have a vitally important task in providing the infrastructure and bulk services required by the various economic sectors, the human settlements of the province, and the rural hinterland. Key challenges are a lack of basic infrastructure in rural areas and the proliferation of informal settlements in urban areas. Both these challenges are beyond the sole institutional and fiscal capabilities of the relevant municipalities. It is therefore important that the relevant funding mechanisms and institutions function efficiently and equitably.



The Key Strategies and Interventions related to E is as follows:

- Develop the required industrial amenities and infrastructure in the defined development corridors which respond to the availability of Environmental Capital (e.g. water, suitable agricultural soil, mining resources, etc.) and Infrastructural Capital (e.g. roads, electricity, bulk engineering services, etc.).
- Develop and adopt strategies for efficient water use and increase water conservation at mine sites.
- Continuous rehabilitation of mined land for agricultural and other rural development projects.
- Adjusting existing risk-identification processes to incorporate additional heat related health risks for industrial activities, such as underground mining.
- Prepare a provincial industrial development strategy.
- Prepare a Provincial Disaster Risk Reduction and Adaptation Plan.



The Key Strategies and Interventions related to F is as follows:

- Development of a Master Infrastructure Plan to align and coordinate infrastructure investment Improve the levels of mobility, infrastructure development, and synergies in the transport planning activities.
- Maintain road, built and bulk infrastructure development and integrate into the infrastructure planning activities throughout the province.
- Conduct Strategic Environmental Assessments in areas suited for renewable energy generation, to incentivise and streamline the administrative and development processes.
- Consider a carbon tax with tariffs that effectively penalise producers and emitters of high levels of carbon dioxide either in the manufacturing or vehicle industry.
- Investigate how affordable and sustainable mobility in rural areas can be enhanced through the roll-out of non-motorised transport initiatives, including the provision of safer pedestrian pathways and facilities and the expansion of the Shova Kalula bicycle programme.

The Importance of Land Use Management in the Frances Baard District

From the preceding sections of this document, it is clear that the nature of land use and settlement dynamics in the FBDM is distinct in that, socio-economically, the patterns observed are dominantly rural and peri-urban in nature, with only a few of the towns exhibiting characteristics of intensifying urban environments.

Within this context, it is acknowledged that the most important economic resources available within the district relate to its natural endowments: agricultural potential in the first instance; and scenic attractions as these relate to the possibilities of developing a sustainable tourism industry in the second instance.

If this is accepted, it is necessary, too, to acknowledge that, to a large extent, the dynamics informing people's choices regarding settlement in the areas outside of formal urban environments is less formal in nature (at least, less formal in the legal sense). Settlement patterns appear to be spontaneous in many cases or, at the very least, poorly regulated, with people drawn to settle closer to main transportation routes or to areas where potential economic activity is evident.

In the urban context, this "informality" also is a feature. The existing towns remain important nodes of economic activity (Service Centres) but their effective functioning is deeply compromised by a history of inadequate spatial planning, maintenance of infrastructure and the enforcement of basic land use management and building controls.

Therefore, in order to ensure that the most important resources available to support and facilitate economic development now and in the future, it must be acknowledged that the practise of land use management to engender wise land use is a critical need in the FBDM.

In order to achieve this objective (of wise land use), it is necessary to accept that, in the Chris Hani district, the possibility of practising sound land use management faces some difficult challenges:

- The challenge, in many cases, of poor local capacity to appreciate the importance of land use management and to support its practise in a technically sound manner;
- The challenge of an institutional "environment" within which overlapping jurisdictions (in both a legal and a perceived sense) complicate decision-making processes in relation to settlement and land development permissions;
- The challenge of a legal system that remains flawed in so far as legislation exists but often is insufficient to unravel the complexities of overlapping land rights in less formal settlements (leading to an almost resigned response of letting things develop as they will).

Land Use Management comprises a Spatial Development Framework; Plans and Reports; Land Use and Development Policies and Strategies; Land Use Management Guidelines and the regulation of land use involving Zoning Schemes and Building Regulations. The purpose of creating a Land Use Management System is to promote coordinated and environmentally sustainable development. This is important in order to achieve the following:

<i>Amenity</i>	A pleasant living environment is established by residential areas that look good, where people feel safe, and which are close to facilities.
<i>Conservation</i>	Certain buildings, places or areas need to be conserved for future generations.
<i>Convenience</i>	People need to located in neighbourhoods in order to be able to access employment opportunities and community facilities.
<i>Efficiency and Economy</i>	Maximum use of scarce resources.

<i>General Welfare</i>	By creating a healthy and safe environment, and by ensuring that adequate provision has been made for all necessary services and facilities, the whole community is benefited.
<i>Healthy Living Environment</i>	Land uses such as open spaces and community facilities are required to create healthy communities, whereas the land uses causing nuisance or pollution need to be carefully monitored.
<i>Order</i>	Land uses that are not compatible need to be separated. People need to be certain when they buy or rent property, that their amenity and property values will be protected.
<i>Access of Land</i>	Provision of land and services to enable mixed use precincts to ensure access for marginalised communities and support for livelihood initiatives to fight poverty.
<i>Safety</i>	Land uses harmful to health need to be placed in areas where it can be controlled. Adequate space between neighbouring properties provide for storm-water and fire control.

FBDM & SPLUMA Implementation

The section below highlights how the District Municipality is aligning to SPLUMA from a Land Use Management Perspective:-

The President of RSA signed the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act no.16 of 2013 on the 02 August 2013, this is a National Planning Legislation which is intended to create a single and uniform approach towards Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Systems.

The main purposes of the SPLUM are as follows " To provide a framework for spatial planning and land use management in the Republic; to specify the relationship between the spatial planning and the land use management system and other kinds of planning; to provide for the inclusive, developmental, equitable and efficient spatial planning at the different spheres of government; to provide a framework for the monitoring, coordination and review of the spatial planning and land use management system; to provide a framework for policies, principles, norms and standards for spatial development planning and land use management; to address past spatial and regulatory imbalances; to promote greater consistency and uniformity in the application procedures and decision-making by authorities responsible for land use decisions and development applications; to provide for the establishment,

functions and operations of Municipal Planning Tribunals; to provide for the facilitation and enforcement of land use and development measures; and to provide for matters connected therewith.

SPLUMA provides a framework for spatial planning and land use management in South Africa. SPLUMA:

- Specifies the relationship between the spatial planning and the land use management system and other kinds of planning;
- Ensures that the system of spatial planning and land use management promoted social and economic inclusion;
- Provides for development principles and norms and standards;
- Provides for the sustainable and efficient use of land;
- Provides for cooperative government and intergovernmental relations amongst the national, provincial and local spheres of government; and
- Redresses the imbalance of the past and to ensure that there is equity in the application of spatial development planning and land use management systems.

SPLUMA applies to the whole of South Africa (urban and rural areas) and governs informal and traditional land use development processes.

General Guidelines Applicable to All Development

Any prospective applicant or developer is required to comply with the requirements of the Community Land Rights Act (CLARA) in terms of procedures and protocols described in Section 20.5. In all aspects they must fully inform the affected communities by means of advertisements in the press and public meetings where any development type as described below is contemplated. The following general guidelines apply:-

- The abstraction of water for any use from any river within the study area must have prior approval from DWAF and should require a full EIA to ensure that environmental impacts are negligible;
- The erection of tunnels for farming as well as the clearing of land where indigenous vegetation is affected is to be subject to an EIA.
- A suitable setback for development from any identified Sub Tropical Thicket Biome and/or indigenous vegetation corridors (conservation area) shall be determined in the EIA process; and

- Should rezoning and subdivision applications be submitted separately for the same property, environmental scoping/EIA's will be required.
- The Motivation Report of any application for development must motivate how the application complies with the principles of the Development Facilitation Act, the development principles, the conceptual framework and the guidelines contained in this framework plan;
- The motivation Report must be supported by a report confirming availability of a sustainable water supply must be submitted as part of any land use application, a storm water management plan, an agricultural assessment report which considers current and future agricultural potential, with written comment obtained from the Department of Agriculture (if applicable);
- Environmental Impact Assessment/Scoping Reports will be required.
- A Site Development Plan for all development (including subdivisions) must contain details of proposed development density, coverage, layout, landscaping, building design, position of all structures, stands, and the 100 year flood line above any water course, proposed parking and internal roads.

Defined Nodes Outside of the Urban Edge

These encompass the proposed rural service centres. Shops; service industries, offices and limited size tourist related businesses could be allowed at such nodes. In addition, social, health, education and safety and security facilities are to be encouraged to locate in these nodes. Standard provisions of approved policies, Town Planning controls, building by-laws, aesthetic and signage controls are in place for these areas as defined in municipal policy documents and this SDF.

1. Nature Tourism Areas

These are areas where limited development may occur subject to an environmental assessment and management plan, the STEP guidelines, and associated protocols.

- Limited and regulated tourism facilities; Small accommodation facilities that are low-key, low-impact and in harmony with the natural environment;
- Agricultural activities;
- Existing rural settlement.

Any development contemplated in the Nature Tourism Areas would need to adhere to the following guidelines:

- The development of a site must not be dependent on the creation of a new road. Existing roads may be upgraded to improve access but where there is no existing road, this should inform the type of tourism facility that is developed.
- The maximum carrying capacity for all development sites, until a SEA or EIA has taken place, is 36 beds or 20 small units. All development sites should be well located in the Nature Tourism buffer area to safeguard the sense of place and eco-tourism opportunities available to that site.
- Development of these sites requires a full EIA and a live Environmental Management Plan that addresses, inter alia, the disposal of solid waste.
- Full IEM procedures are to precede any development whereby the precautionary principle shall apply with approval conditions requiring rehabilitation of the environment and specifications regarding the use of the remainder (for example; conservation, private nature reserve etc);

2. No Development Areas

These areas are where no development is to be contemplated:

- No development is to be permitted on any nature reserves and the outer boundary of the vegetation of coastal forests and reserves.
- All river valleys and ground with slopes equal to or exceeding 1 in 3 should be demarcated as no-development zones.
- The locality of launching sites is to be determined by DEDEA.
- Areas below the 1 in 100-year flood line are excluded from development (including boundary walls and fences). The practice of raising the floor level of buildings above the 1:100-year flood line is not favoured from a flood risk point of view.
- Areas required for the rehabilitation of indigenous vegetation identified in the environmental management plan are excluded from development;
- Areas that are developable but cannot be accessed without going through undevelopable land are also regarded as undevelopable.
- Any other areas as determined by DEDEA (such as coastal grasslands).
- Access to rivers are only to be created after specialist evaluation and prior approval from the relevant authorities.

3. Subdivision of Agricultural Land

The subdivision of farms into multiple individual farms to avoid the rezoning process and/or to achieve de facto residential development is not considered desirable, as it negates the intention and spirit of the zoning categories provided in the Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act 70 of 1970.

The Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act 70 of 1970 (SALA), Scheme 8 Regulations, indicate that the minimum subdivision of agricultural land is 0.8 Hectares. Where no subdivision is involved, a density of 1 dwelling unit for every 10 Hectares, up to a maximum of 5 dwelling units, is permitted, subject to consent and proof that the farming programme is sustainable and economically viable.

Accordingly, and with due cognisance of the trends and pressures for land development on land currently zoned for agricultural purposes, it is proposed that the guidelines of Subdivision of Agriculture Land Act 70 of 1970 be applied within the Chris Hani District, but with a recommended minimum subdivision size of 10 Hectares for agricultural land.

Should an applicant wish to pursue intensive farming activities on land holdings smaller than 10 Hectares, the application for Subdivision of Agricultural Land must be accompanied by a full motivation, including an Agricultural Feasibility Report indicating sustainability of the proposed enterprise

The development of this land for non- agricultural purposes should only be allowed if:

- The land has already been subdivided to such an extent that it is no longer agriculturally viable; ^[1]_{SEP}
- The land has already been developed for non-agricultural purposes; ^[1]_{SEP}
- The proposed development does not compromise the primary agricultural activity of the property; ^[1]_{SEP}
- The proposed development comprises a secondary activity to supplement a landowner's income; ^[1]_{SEP}
- It will facilitate the implementation of the Land Reform Programme and Labour Tenant Projects. ^[1]_{SEP}

The Department of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries, does not consider anything less than 20 Ha as a viable unit, therefore it is proposed that subdivisions of less than 20 Ha should not be allowed. This information is also recommended for inclusion into the draft Land Use Management Guidelines.

Cooperative Governance Approach to Spatial Planning

The Constitution makes it clear that all the three spheres of governments are interdependent and interrelated. The Constitution therefore assigns planning responsibilities to the Provinces to undertake the following:

- Implementation of provincial and regional planning policies and regulations as enshrined in Schedules 4 and 5 of the Constitution;
- Implementation and regulations to monitor and support municipalities in exercising their municipal functions.

The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (SPLUMA) is a framework act for all spatial planning and land use management in South Africa, which seeks to promote consistency and uniformity in procedures and decision-making as well as addressing historical spatial imbalances and the integration of the principles of sustainable development into land use and planning regulatory tools and legislative instruments. SPLUMA, mandates the Eastern Cape Government to be responsible for the co-ordination, integration and alignment of the following:

- Provincial plans and development strategies with policies of National Government;
- The plans, policies and development strategies of Provincial Departments; and
- The plans, policies and development strategies of district and local municipalities.

The Eastern Cape's PSDF role is to facilitate the required coordination, integration and alignment that SPLUMA prescribes. Section 17 (2) prescribes that all provincial development plans, projects and programmes must be consistent with the PSDF

There should be inter-governmental relation (IGR) structures that should be used to facilitate implementation of the PSDF, that is, there should be co-operative approach to spatial planning and land use management to achieve sustainable governance system in the PSDF.

In the Eastern Cape, proposals for PSDF governance, amongst others, should include the following:

- A need to establish interdepartmental spatial coordination committee in the Office of the Premier with the necessary oversight to formulate the PSDF, resolve the responsibilities for spatial planning within the provincial government level, remove duplications and recommend that COGTA be responsible for overseeing spatial planning in the province.
- PSDF and MSDFs should ensure limiting peri-urban sprawl through strong local land use controls.
- Establish an integrated LUMS in the province involving all stakeholders
- Preparation of credible "wall-to wall" SDFs by LMs with both technical and tradition leaders / indigenous approach to land use management.

- Regular capacitating of municipal planners with guidelines from SACPLAN
- There should be CoGTA's capacity assistance to LMs in terms of co-operative governance

The above proposals should be implemented within the Frances Baard District as a way of alignment with the province and to guide efficient spatial planning within the Municipality.

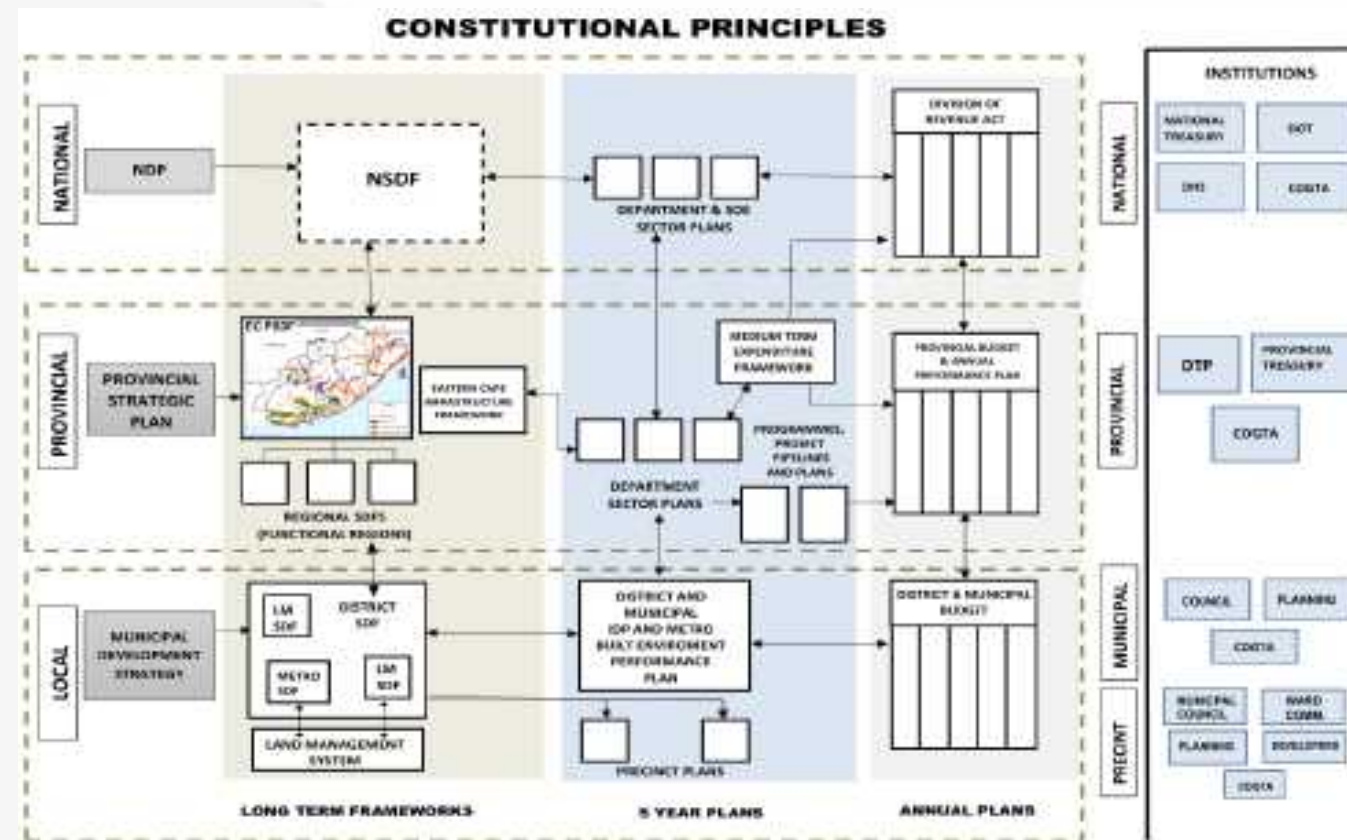


Figure 12: Constitutional Principles

In asserting the importance of wise land use and effective land use management in the Chris Hani district, it is necessary to accept that a fundamental challenge is the formulation of a Land Use Management System that draws together as active participants and administrators the parties most involved in land use decisions:

- Local municipalities, who are charged to carry out Municipal Planning and, as such, are acknowledged as Land Use Regulators;

- The traditional authorities (most likely in the form of duly constituted Traditional Councils) who most often regulate land use decisions in rural environments; and
- The communities themselves, who, in many instances, have developed “codes of practice” over generations that guide and inform land use “norms” in their areas.

Obviously, aside from the above role players, any functioning system must also draw in the existing role players (e.g. from an environmental perspective, an infrastructure perspective as well as relevant resource perspectives such as agriculture).

Accepting the above, it is strongly suggested that, in moving toward a situation where a commonly accepted Land Use Management System will be developed once enabling legislation is in place, it is necessary to start to explore the possibilities of formulating locally based Social Compacts in relation to establishing forums for the consideration and recommendation of land use and land development applications. In contemplating such arrangements, role players should be informed and guided by the Inter-Governmental Relations Framework Act (No. 13 of 2005).



CHAPTER 07

Implementation Plan

IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

The intention of this section is to prepare an 'Implementation Plan' with supporting implementation recommendations. The Implementation Plan depicts the projects reviewed and identified as part of this review process.

Proposed Catalytic Projects, (FBDM District Development Model, 2020)

Catalytic projects can be defined as those projects that when pursued, would have a significant positive impact on more than one area, community, sector and directly or indirectly improve the lives of the people within the district. The identified catalytic projects are linked to specific drivers of change to illustrate how this plan could potentially support the provincial strategic and spatial vision.

The NC Provincial Growth and development Plan outlines the following Catalytic Programmes:

- Driver 1: Economic Transformation, Growth and Development
- Driver 2: Social Equity and Human Welfare
- Driver 3: Environmental Sustainability and Resilience
- Driver 4: Accountable and effective Governance

The following table includes the top 25% of high impact/catalytic projects as identified in the Northern Cape Provincial Growth Development Plan 2018 applicable to the Frances Baard District Municipality:

PGDP Driver of Change	Project	Sector
Driver 4: Accountable & Effective Governance	Provincial mining strategy (Mining and beneficiation)	Mining
Driver 2: Social Equity & Human Welfare	Agri-Park Programme	Agriculture and agro-processing
Driver 1: Economic Growth, Development And Prosperity	New Industries in the manufacturing revolution	Innovation and the knowledge economy
Driver 3: Environmental Sustainability And Resilience	Supply chain centres in each REDZ – Springbok, Kimberley and Upington	Energy
Driver 2: Social Equity & Human Welfare	One Hectare One Household	Agriculture and agro-processing
Driver 3: Environmental Sustainability And Resilience	Promote small-scale and subsistence farming	Rural development, land reform and food security
Driver 2: Social Equity & Human Welfare	Logistics Hub / storage facilities for locally produced crops	Rural development, land reform and food security
Driver 1: Economic Growth, Development And Prosperity	SIP 16 SKA	Innovation and the knowledge economy
Driver 3: Environmental Sustainability And Resilience	Vaalharts Revitalisation Scheme	Agriculture and agro-processing
Driver 1: Economic Growth, Development And Prosperity	Relocation of the state diamond trader to the Northern Cape	Mining and mineral beneficiation
Driver 2: Social Equity & Human Welfare	SIP 15 Broadband Roll-out	Innovation and the knowledge economy
Driver 2: Social Equity & Human Welfare	Northern Cape Electricity Supply Company	Energy
Driver 1: Economic Growth, Development And Prosperity	Big Hole Tourism Precinct	Tourism
Driver 2: Social Equity & Human Welfare	Mega Housing Developments	Sustainable human settlements
Driver 2: Social Equity & Human Welfare	Traffic college development	Social Protection and Welfare
Driver 3: Environmental Sustainability And Resilience	A centralised SED and ED project implementation office, knowledge sharing, and databank	Energy
Driver 2: Social Equity & Human Welfare	Smart School and Distance Learning Initiative	Quality basic education

The Implementation Plan identifies likely funders for the different projects, budget estimates and the period of Implementation over a three to five (3-5) year period, linked to the Medium-Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF).

Project	Location	Total Budget	Budget 2021/22	Budget 2022/23	Source of funding	Priority
Provision of adequate and reliable infrastructure/services.	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 1 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DBSA IDC National Treasury DLM DMR 	Medium
Development of Public Transport Plan	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 700 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> NCP Department of Police, Roads and Transport NCP Department of Public Works 	High
Development of Neighbourhood Nodes	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 800 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DLM FBDM DRDLR (NC) 	Medium
Development of detailed Precinct Plans for Barkly West, Delportshoop and Windsorton	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 900 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DLM FBDM DRDLR (NC) 	High
Upgrading of local transport routes in all settlements	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 900 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> NCP Department of Police, Roads and Transport NCP Department of Public Works 	High
Provision of Social Services	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	Unknown	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DLM FBDM DEPT. OF EDUCATION DEPT. OF HEALTH DEPT. OF SOCIAL SERVICES AND POPULATION DEVELOPMENT 	High
Development and expansion of Industry	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> NCP DEPT. OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT, TOURISM AND ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS IDC 	Medium
Development and expansion of Agri- processing	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 2 300 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> NCP DPT. OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT, TOURISM AND ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRD IDC 	Medium
Industrial & Mining Development Plan for harnessing resources in the Development Rectangle	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 900 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DLM FBDM NORTHERN CAPE PROVINCE DMR DE & NC 	Medium
Improve Tourism Industry	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 600 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM NCP DEPT. OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT, TOURISM AND ENVIIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS 	High
Expansion of Tourism and Resorts/Eco Estates	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 700 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DLM PRIVATE SECTOR 	High

					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PROPERTY DEVELOPERS 	
Feasibility Study on the future of Longlands, Morrisdraai and Gong Gong	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 200 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DLM FBDM DoHS 	High
Feasibility and Land Availability Study for a Shopping Centre for each node	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 450 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM DLM PRIVATE INVESTORS DEVELOPERS 	Medium
Promoting the Tourism Potential in Riverton	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> NCP DEPT. OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT, TOURISM AND ENVIIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS 	High
Prepare and implement a Municipal environmental Management Plan that includes guidelines for development in environmental sensitive area, policy for conservation of all aquatic systems (EMP) and marketing of conservation areas. The possibility of establishment of a conservation area along the Vaalhart Dam should be investigated.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	Medium
Prepare and implement a MOSS policy for all urban areas that address the promotion of conservation of open space area with the municipality.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	Medium
Compile a Heritage register where all heritage site have been recorded.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	Low
Compile a Local Tourism Strategy highlighting tourism resources as well as opportunities including marketing strategy for the Municipality. The tourism strategy should be closely integrated with the LED of the municipality.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	Medium
Compile a disaster management plan that links with the flood line determination as well as other disasters	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High
A detail agricultural development strategy focusing on the potential of agricultural land should be development. Special emphasis should be placed on marketing opportunities as well as local economic development. Sustainable management of the municipal communal land as well as possible assistance from Municipality to small scale farmers should be included.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High
Compilation of a local LED for Magareng: A fully-fledged Economic Development Plan must be developed for the Municipality as a whole flagging the opportunities within the urban areas.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High
To compile a township revitalisation and urbanization plan: A detail plan for urban revitalization in all urban	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High

areas must be development with the aim to increase the since of place as well as visual ascetics of the area.						
Compile housing sector plan: A detail housing plan which addresses all issues related to housing and future development should be compiled. It is important that as part of this project a detail survey be conducted to reflect the true number of housing need as well as backlog within the Municipality.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	Medium
Compile integrated zoning plan: A detail interacted zoning scheme in accordance with SPLUMA and Northern Cape Planning Act must be compiled to manage development and land use in an effective manner.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High
Compile regulation and guidelines on for all precinct plans: A detail precinct/ urban design framework must be developed in order to set minimum requirement and give guidance for all future development.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High
Compile a tavern, bottle store and club policy: A detail policy addressing the implementation of above land uses must be compiled in order to give guidance to the municipality in allowing these land uses.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High
Develop an industrial precinct plan including opportunities to revive the existing infrastructure.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PRASA • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY • PRIVATE SECTOR 	Medium
Development of a Marketing strategy for the Municipality insuring the optimal utilisation of all existing buildings and facilities and to promote the urban area of Warrenton for future investors.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	Medium
Development of a mining plan identifying all possible areas for mining exploitation as well as the impact there off on the environment.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High
Conduct a feasibility study on the establishment of a Cultural Centre as part of N12 node	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY • PRIVATE SECTOR 	High
Conduct a detail feasibility study as well as business plan for development of N12 node	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY • PRIVATE SECTOR 	High
Provision of a water management plan to address the current issues of water shortage within the municipal area. Special emphasis should be placed on the upgrading of the water treatment works that is already at maximum capacity.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PROVINCIAL GOVERNEMNT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High

Provision of a sanitation plan as part of the water management plan must be compiled addressing future growth.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High
Provision of electricity management plan.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High
Provision and maintenance of sport and recreation facilities: A detail plan should be developed for the prioritisation of upgrading of existing sport facilities.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High
An Integrated Transport Plan must be developed in order to propose appropriate solutions for the transport, connectivity and movement systems in the municipality. In order to improve roads, inter-connectivity and accessibility.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High
Upgrading of internal streets: identification and prioritization of all internal streets to be upgraded.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • NATIONAL GOVERNMENT • PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High
Identification and costing of all connector roads to be upgraded in the municipality.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	Medium
Revive old railway facility and infrastructure; investigate the possibility of the revival of the existing railway network for freight and passengers between Northern Cape and Gauteng.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PRASA • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL GOVERNMENT 	High
Develop a waste management plan.	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT • DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY • LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 	High
Hartswater CBD Regeneration	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PHOKWANE LM 	High
Hartswater/Bonita Park Infill Residential Development	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PHOKWANE LM 	High
Multi-Purpose Sports Centre	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PHOKWANE LM 	High
Pampierstad Taxi Rank	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PHOKWANE LM 	High
Community Training Centre	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PHOKWANE LM 	High
Development of a Multi purpose Centre	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	-	-	-	Medium

FLEET REPLACEMENT	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 4 846 915.00	-	-	-	Medium
HOMEVALE UPGRADE 15 M1	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 14 920 188.00	-	-	-	Medium
LANDFILL SITE UPGRADE	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 10 348 495.00	-	-	-	Medium
NDPG TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 400 000.00	-	-	-	Low
TRANSPORT LINKS (GALESHEWE TAXI BUS LAY -BY'S)	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 7 500 000.00	-	-	-	Medium
Neighbourhood Development (technical assistance)	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality		R 500 000.00	R 500 000.00	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GURP • NDPG 	Medium
Upgrade of Indian Centre Local Taxi Rank	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 2 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GURP • NDPG 	Medium
Street scraping of activity corridors/secondary public transport links	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 2 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GURP • NDPG 	High
Building of long distance taxi rank at Indian Centre	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 3 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GURP • NDPG 	Low
Development of Intermodal transport at Craven Str Taxi Rank and stalls	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 7 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GURP • NDPG 	
Development of City Hall Precinct	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 10 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GURP • NDPG 	
Development of flea market at Roper Parking area	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 2 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GURP • NDPG 	
Township Establishment studies	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 2 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UP • CRR 	
Reselling of serviced erven	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 2 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UP • CRR 	
Diamond Park Phase 2	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality, Ward 25	R 2 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Elect Department • CRR 	
Highmast Street Lights	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 1 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Elect Department • CRR 	
Replacement of Pre-paid meters	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 3 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Elect Department • CRR 	

Zone Metering and Pressure Management	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 3 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CRR • W/S 	
Security of Plants and Infrastructure	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 2 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CRR • W/S 	
Electrification Colville	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality, Ward 14	R 1 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • INEP • Elect 	
Electrification Phomolong	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality, Ward 9	R 3 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • INEP • Elect 	
Electrification Jacksonville	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality, Ward 2	R 4 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • INEP • Elect 	
Replacement of water meters (Domestic & Business)	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 4 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CRR • W/S 	
Riverton water (High Lift Pumps)	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 1 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CRR/MIG • M/S 	
Homevale WWTW Upgrade (15 MI)	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 43 053 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RBIG/MIG • W/S 	
Lerato Park: Bulk Water Mains + Sewer mains	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 2 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MIG • W/S 	
Upgrade Carters Glen Sewer Pump	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 1 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CRR • W/S 	
Resealing of Roads	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 15 991 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R/S • CRR 	
IT Replacement programme: Hardware and software	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 4 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IT • CRR 	
Sol Plaatje Cemetery	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 1 211 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comm • MIG / CRR 	
Landfill Site - Upgrade	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality	R 12 885 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comm • MIG / CRR 	
Ritchie Augmentation of Bulk and Connector Water	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality, Ward 26 + 27	R 3 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Exec • CRR 	
Homevale Satellite Fire Station	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality, Ward 3	10 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Emerg • MIG 	
DEVELOP A MINING DEVELOPMENT PLAN	Frances Baard District Municipality	N/A	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • COGTA • DEVELOPERS 	High

					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> LM'S 	
REVIEW OF THE EXISTING FRANCES BAARD TOURISM PLAN	Frances Baard District Municipality	N/A	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM LM'S DBSA DEPT. OF TOURISM 	High
DEVELOP AN AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN	Frances Baard District Municipality	N/A	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM LOCAL AUTHORITIES DBSA 	-
REVISION OF THE EXISTING FRANCES BAARD DISTRICT MUNICIPAL LOCAL ECONOMIC STRATEGY	Frances Baard District Municipality	N/A	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM RELEVANT AUTHORITY 	-
PROVISION, MAINTENANCE AND MANAGEMENT OF EDUCATIONAL FACILITIES	Frances Baard District Municipality	N/A	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM DEPT OF EDUCATION LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	-
SUPPLY AND MAINTAIN HEALTH FACILITIES	Frances Baard District Municipality	N/A	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM LOCAL AUTHORITIES DEPT. OF HEALTH 	-
The provision and maintenance of sport and recreational facilities	Frances Baard District Municipality	N/A	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	-
Protection of all conservation sites including terrestrial land and aquatic systems.	Frances Baard District Municipality	N/A	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	-
To create an open space system throughout the municipal area that promotes ecological ecosystems	Frances Baard District Municipality	N/A	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	-
To address social decay by provide sustainable infrastructure including buildings, education, recreation facilities and social services to the entire municipal area.	Frances Baard District Municipality	N/A	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM DEPT. OF EDUCATION 	-
The stimulation of the local economy by exploring and development of new economic development opportunities within the municipality	Frances Baard District Municipality	N/A	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	-
Business and agricultural capacity building for farmers	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 900 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM LOCAL AUTHORTIES 	High
Capacity building towards disaster and agricultural risk Management	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 1 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	High
Feedlots for large livestock that would align towards the food basket requirements	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 2 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Medium
Access towards Livestock handling facilities along collection routes	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 4 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Medium
Establishment of a Fencing cooperative to develop local manufactured mesh fencing for sheep/goat and game farmers	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 2 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FBDM LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	High

Livestock production through the development of large and small livestock banks	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 10 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	High
Storage facilities for locally produced crops	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 4 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Low
Development of agricultural Incubators	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 4 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	High
Development of Hatcheries	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 1 800 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	High
Establishment of Pecan Nut and Olive Tree orchards within the Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 25 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Medium
Development of Seedling banks	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 2 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Medium
Mobile Agricultural Power Solutions	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 2 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	High
Establishment of a local Tannery and or Taxidermist to serve both the cattle and game sector	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 3 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Medium
Establish a dry / wet milling plant for grain processing	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 15 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Medium
Development of an Aquaponics farm in Magareng to link towards the existing/proposed Catfish farm	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 15 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Low
Establishment of local fresh produce markets	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 5 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Low
Development of a Chips Factory, which targets the potato, sweet potato markets	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 8 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Medium
Establishment of cold storage facilities	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 3 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Medium
Development of Logistical support facilities within the District	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 2 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Medium
Charcoal production utilising invader trees evident in the District	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 5 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Medium
Collection & Distribution points	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 3 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Medium
Mining Rehabilitation Plan for Agricultural and Sustainable Human Settlements	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 3 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Low

Establishment of a Jewellery Cooperative within close proximity of Kimberley	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 4 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Medium
Establishment of Small Mining cooperatives close to existing mines with the cooperation from the Mining Sector	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 4 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	High
Development of an Agri-Tourism strategy	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 1 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • DEPT OF AGRICULTURE 	Medium
Development of a district wide Eco –Tourism strategy	France Baard District Municipality	R 1 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • DEPT. OF TOURISM 	Medium
Improved ICT Infrastructure access	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 2 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • DEPT. OF INFRASTRUCURE 	High
Development of a Tourism centre and marketing strategy	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 1 500 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • LOCAL AUTHORITIES • DEPT OF TOURISM 	Medium
Establish agricultural and business support centres	Frances Baard District Municipality	R 3 000 000.00	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBDM • DEPT OF AGRICULTURE • LOCAL AUTHORITIES 	Medium

FRANCES BAARD DISTRICT INFRASTRUCTURE PLAN (2020-2021)

PROJECT	LOCATION	TOTAL BUDGET	BUDGET 2021/2022	BUDGET 2022/2023	SOURCE OF FUNDING	PRIORITY
WATER SUPPLY SERVICES						
Development of Masterplan, NRW Reduction Plan and WC/WDM Strategy	Magareng Local Municipality	R2 500 000.00	-	-	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Implementation of Water Conservation / Water Demand Management initiatives such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Baseline data collection Physical water loss reduction initiatives (Zonal Isolation of WDS, New Pressure Reducing Valves, New Bulk Meters) New zonal boundaries New residential water metres Revenue enhancement strategies Capacity Building Monitoring & evaluation technologies 	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short term solution-Sighting and Drilling of 10 X Boreholes Installation of elevated 1 ML steel water tank complete with steel tankstand, new booster centrifugal pump and uPVC pipeline (rising main to elevated tank) Medium Pressure pipeline to 7 X 10 000L and 3 X 5000L tanks Bulk Earthworks Excavation in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Soft and Hard Material Pipeline Fittings 	Magareng Local Municipality	R6 871 000.00	-	-	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Replacement of Aesbestos Cement pipes	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R15 000 000.00	R32 000 000.00	Magareng Local Municipality	MEDIUM
New Infrastructure	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R2 685 000.00	R6 991 078.00	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Recruitment of suitably qualified staff Enhance financial literacy and education of managers in the technical department	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-		HIGH
Procurement new white and yellow fleet	Magareng Local Municipality	R2 857 636.30	-	-		MEDIUM
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Boreholes and Reticulation system in Rabaki informal settlements New reticulation in Ditshotshwaneng Refithilt settlements New reticulation in Majeng informal settlements 	Magareng Local Municipality	R3 800 500.00	-	-	-	MEDIUM

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> New reticulation in Msettlements New reticulation in Molekos Farmsettlements 						
Development of Masterplan, NRW Reduction Plan and WC/WDM Strategy	Phokwane Local Municipality	R4 500 000.00	-	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	HIGH
Review of Water Licence	Phokwane Local Municipality	R3 000 000.00	-	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	HIGH
Implementation of Water Conservation / Water Demand Management initiatives such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Baseline data collection Physical water loss reduction initiatives (Zonal Isolation of WDS, New Pressure Reducing Valves, New Bulk Meters) 	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R11 397 000.00	R17 095 500.00	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Replacement of asbestos pipes and Realignment of network	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R10 076 183.07	R15 114 274.61	Phokwane Local Municipality	LOW
Completion of Project and Realignment of Reservoir into the pampierstad network	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R7 500 000.00	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Short term solution- Augmentation of Water Supply with new boreholes and storage reservoirs	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R6 871 000.00	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
New Infrastructure	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R6 748 679.90	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	HIGH
New Infrastructure	Phokwane Local Municipality	R8 526 306.25	-	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	HIGH
New Infrastructure	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R2 685 000.00	R6 991 078.00	Phokwane Local Municipality	HIGH
Refurbishment and Replacement of asbestos pipes in the WDS	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R15 000 000.00	R32 000 000.00	Phokwane Local Municipality	HIGH
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Boreholes and Reticulation system in Sarelela informal settlements in Pampierstad Extension of the Valspan water reticulation to Sonderwater, Kingston and Angela King informal 	Phokwane Local Municipality	R2 745 510.00	-	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Development NRW Reduction Plan and WC/WDM Strategy	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 1 500 000.00	-	-	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Implementation of Water Conservation / Water Demand Management initiatives such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Baseline data collection Physical water loss reduction initiatives (Zonal Isolation of WDS, New Pressure Reducing Valves, New Bulk Meters) New zonal boundaries New residential water meters Replacing conventional domestic water meters with prepaid water meters Revenue enhancement strategies Capacity Building Monitoring & evaluation technologies 	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	R 1 000 000	R 5 000 000	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH

Short term solution- Sighting and Drilling of 4 Boreholes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Resealing of existing elevated 0.8 ML steel water tank. <p>or</p> Medium Term solution- Connecting the DWS (for COVID-19) supplied water tanks to the existing water network <p>or</p> Long term solution- -Completion of the upgrading of the Windsorton water treatment plant <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recruitment of suitably qualified staff. • Training of staff operating capital assets • Fast-tracking procuring of materials and equipment to ensure municipal store are fully stocked 	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R5 072 422	-	-	-	MEDIUM
Procurement new white and yellow fleet Bakkies Water Tankers Mobile Generators	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	R 3 000 000	R 5 000 000	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH
	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	R 3 000 000	R 5 000 000	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH
SANITATION SERVICES						
Development of Masterplan	Magareng Local Municipality	R800 000.00	-	-	Magareng Local Municipality	LOW
New bulk sewer line for Ikhuseng and Ditshotshwaneng	Magareng Local Municipality	-		R15 000 000.00	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Decommissioning of the Vacuum Sewer System	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R20 500 000.00	R15 000 000.00	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Relocation and Construction of New WWTW in Warrenton	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R35 000 000.00	R40 000 000.00	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Refurbishment of Waste water Pumpstations in Warrenton and Ikhuseng	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R20 000 000.00	R20 000 000.00	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Procurement of the following goods : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace / Repair Carousel Aerators • Replace / Repair Clarifier Mechanical units 	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R5000 000.00		Magareng Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Refurbishment of Pumpstations in Warrenton	Magareng Local Municipality	-			Magareng Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Upgrade of bulk outfall lines in Warrenton	Magareng Local Municipality		R7 397 403.08	R11 096 104.62	Magareng Local Municipality	
Asbestos pipes in network						
Development of Masterplan	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R800 000.00	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
New bulk sewer line for Nkandla	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R21 750 000.00	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM

Upgrading of existing bulk sewer line in Bonitapark, Thagaedipelayang and Utlwanang	Phokwane Local Municipality	R14 573 882.90		-	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Upgrading WWTW in Hartswater	Phokwane Local Municipality	R35 000 000.00		-	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> General workers operate major capital assets such as WWTW. As a result, the Municipality currently has two pollution directives issued by DWS. The Jankempdorp WWTW was refurbished for ±R28m in 2017/18 FY. The facility has literally collapsed. Irregular and wasteful expenditure is continuously incurred due to reactive O&M protocols 	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	-	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Refurbishment of Pumpstations in Jankempdorp and Pampierstad	Phokwane Local Municipality				Phokwane Local Municipality	HIGH
Upgrade of bulk outfall lines in Pampierstad	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	-	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	
Asbestos pipes in network						
Development of Operation and Maintenance Plans as well asset management plans	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R 1 000 000	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	HIGH
Installing zonal valves Fast tracking the collection of onsite sewerage (emptying septic tanks) Development of Operation and Maintenance Plans as well asset management plans and training of officials in applying these plans	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R 1 000 000	R10 000 000.00	Phokwane Local Municipality	HIGH
Completing Oxidation Ponds Project in Windsorton	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R15 050 000.00			Dikgatlong Local Municipality	LOW
ROADS AND STORMWATER						
Development of Masterplan	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R1 500 000.00	-	Magareng Local Municipality	LOW
Regravelling and Maintenance of Gravel Roads	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R5 000 000.00	R5 500 000.00	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Rehabilitation and Reseal of the internal roads in Warrenton	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R10 000 000.00	R11 000 000.00	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Patching of potholes	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R1 000 000.00	R1 100 000.00	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Establishment of Storm water Catchment areas	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R4 600 000.00	R5 060 000.00	Magareng Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Procurement new white and yellow fleet such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2 X Grader 3 X Bakkies 1 X TLB 	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R2 000 000.00	R2 200 000.00	Magareng Local Municipality	MEDIUM
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recruitment of suitably qualified staff Enhance financial literacy and education of managers in the technical department 	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	Magareng Local Municipality	MEDIUM

Development of Masterplan	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R2 500 000.00	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Regravelling and Maintenance of Gravel Roads	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R5 000 000.00	R5 500 000.00	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Rehabilitation and Reseal of the internal roads in Hartswater, Jankempdorp & Pampierstad	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R10 000 000.00	R11 000 000.00	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Patching of potholes	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R1 000 000.00	R1 100 000.00	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Establishment of Storm water Catchment areas	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R4 600 000.00	R5 060 000.00	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Development of Operation and Maintenance Plans as well as asset management plans. Referring to the RRAMS report to assess the extent and condition of the road networks	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	-	R 2 000 000	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Re-gravelling and Maintenance of Gravel Roads	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	R4 000 000.00	R6 000 000	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Rehabilitation and Reseal of the internal roads in Dikgatlong	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	R 3 000 000	R15 000 000	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH
Patching of potholes	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	R1 500 000.00	R2 500 000	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH
Establishment of Storm water Catchment areas	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	R2 500 000	R11 000 000	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH

ELECTRICITY SERVICES

Development of Masterplan	Magareng Local Municipality	R1 000 000.00	-	-	Magareng Local Municipality	LOW
Highmast lighting in Warrenton X14	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R6 000 000.00	R3 000 000.00	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Upgrade Electrical Bulk Supply, Internal Reticulation and Service Connections in Rabaki, Majeng, Ditshotshwaneng and Moleko Farm	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R6 738 750.00	R11 231 250.00	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Acquisition of new electricity infrastructure to ensure reliability of electricity supply	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R2 368 200.00	R3 947 000.00	Magareng Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Recruitment of suitably qualified Electrical Engineer	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	Magareng Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Development of Masterplan	Phokwane Local Municipality	R1 000 000.00	-	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Highmast lighting in Pampierstad X5, Guldenskat Kingston X3, Ganspan X3, Thagadiepayang X2 & Plakkerskamp X2	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R6 000 000.00	R3 000 000.00	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Upgrade Electrical Bulk Supply, Internal Reticulation and Service Connections in Guldenskat (608 stands), Magogong (32 stands), Kingston (338 stands), Ganspan (290 stands), Thagadiepayang (310 stands), Pampierstad (219 stands)	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R6 738 750.00	R11 231 250.00	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM

Acquisition of new electricity infrastructure to ensure reliability of electricity supply to Conroy Extension (Hartswater), Hospital View Phase 2 (Hartswater), End Street (Jankempdor), Land Huise (Jankempdor), Industrial Area (Jankempdor), Ganspan	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R2 368 200.00	R3 947 000.00	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Recruitment of suitably qualified Electrical Engineer	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	-	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Reviewing and redevelopment of Masterplan	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	-	R 1 800 000	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Development of operation and maintenance place as well as asset management plans	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	-	-	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Installation of 14 highmast lights throughout entire Dikgatlong area to be funded by MIG (approval granted)	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	R5 300 000	R5 300 000	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH
Procuring of street light bulbs, contactors and daylight switches for all street lights						
Electrification of 103 households in Sewende Laan	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	R 2 600 000	-	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH
Electrification of 140 households in Sandton	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	-	-	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH
Electrification of 200 households in Rooikoppies	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	-	-	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH
Upgrading and refurbishment of bulk infrastructure	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	-	R 5 000 000	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH
Recruitment of suitably qualified Electrical Engineer	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	-	-	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH
SOLID WASTE MANAGEMENT						
Development of Masterplan	Magareng Local Municipality	R1 500 000.00	-	-	Magareng Local Municipality	
Restoration and Upgrade of solid waste disposal sites in Warrenton	Magareng Local Municipality	-	R3 125 000.00	R3 125 000.00	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Application of Landfill site license	Magareng Local Municipality	R2 000 000.00	-	-	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recruitment of suitably qualified staff Enhance financial literacy and education of managers in the technical department 	Magareng Local Municipality	-	-	-	Magareng Local Municipality	HIGH
Development of Masterplan	Phokwane Local Municipality	R1 500 000.00	-	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	HIGH
Restoration and Upgrade of solid waste disposal sites in Jankempdor, Hartswater and Pampierstad	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	R3 125 000.00	R3 125 000.00	Phokwane Local Municipality	HIGH
Application of Landfill site licence	Phokwane Local Municipality	R2 000 000.00	-	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recruitment of suitably qualified staff Enhance financial literacy and education of managers in the technical department 	Phokwane Local Municipality	-	-	-	Phokwane Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Development of Masterplan	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	-	R 3 000 000.00	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	MEDIUM

Development of the Integrated Waste Management Plan						
Restoration and Upgrade of solid waste disposal sites in Barkley West, Windsorton and Delporthoop	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	R6 000 000.00	R2 000 000.00	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Construction of dedicated waste transfer stations						
Application of Landfill site license	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	R 1 500 000.00	-	-	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	MEDIUM
Procurement new white and yellow fleet such as:						
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Skip bins Front end loader Tipper trucks Compactor trucks 	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	-	R 7 000 000.00	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recruitment of suitably qualified staff Enhance financial literacy and education of managers in the technical department 	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	-	-	-	Dikgatlong Local Municipality	HIGH

Table 16: Implementation Plan

5.BB. Capital Investment Framework

The Spatial Development Framework is a crosscutting plan which encompasses most of the activities of the District and gives direction to the decision-making on land use and direction of development within the district. Consequently, it must be viewed as a key strategic document and embraced both at the political level as well as the technical level.

In order to integrate the Spatial Development Framework into the everyday workings of the Municipality's Directorates, it is proposed that appropriate programmes and budgets be undertaken to ensure co-ordination and communication on critical development issues that have spatial implications.

The term "Capital Expenditure Framework" (CEF) became a municipal mandate with the promulgation of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA) section (21)(n). A Capital Expenditure Framework is a consolidated, high-level view of infrastructure investment needs in a municipality over the long-term (10 years) that considers not only infrastructure needs but also how these needs can be financed and what impact the required investment in infrastructure will have on the financial viability of the municipality going forward.

The term "Capital Expenditure Framework" (CEF) became a municipal mandate with the promulgation of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA) section (21)(n). However, the concept of a Capital Investment- or Capital Expenditure Framework has been eluded to in several other preceding legislative and policy instruments.

The role of a CEF is to provide a framework which coordinates the outcomes of a multitude of planning initiatives and documents within the municipality, in order to ensure that capital investment and project / programme implementation on the ground is guided by an over-arching long-term strategic, spatial, financial and socio-economic logic. Key informants to the CEF national and provincial strategies and policies.

MIG Programme Performance

The following table indicates how the municipalities in the Frances Baard District performs in the MIG Programme. The table is based on December 2019 spending of each municipality. One of the main conditions in the MIG programme is that municipalities need to spend 40% of the total allocation by December each year. This serves as an indication how MIG funding is managed within the local municipal space. Follow-up engagements in January the

next year normally occur, which determines if the municipalities succeeded in reaching conditions set in December of the previous year and if grant money will be stopped in terms of second and future transfers in the MIG programme.

Municipality	Allocated (R'000)	Transferred to date	Transfers as % allocation	Expenditure to date	Cumulative Exp incl. Rollover	Expenditure as % allocation Excl. Rollover	Expenditure as % transferred Exc. Rollover
Sol Plaatjie	-	-		-	-		
Dikgatlong	19 527	15 500	79,38%	12 366	12 366	63,33%	79,78%
Magareng	28 163	10 672	37,89%	2 407	2 407	8,55%	22,55%
Phokwane	26 265	10 506	40,00%	-	-	0,00%	0,00%
Frances Baard District Municipality	-	-		-	-		

Table 17: MIG Programme Performance



